Revue
d'Etudes Tibétaines

Revue d'Etudes Tibétaines

numéro quarante-huit — Avril 2019

Périodicité
La périodicité de la *Revue d'Etudes Tibétaines* est généralement bi-annuelle, les mois de parution étant, sauf indication contraire, Octobre et Avril. Les contributions doivent parvenir au moins six (6) mois à l'avance. Les dates de proposition d'articles au comité de lecture sont Novembre pour une parution en Avril, et Mai pour une parution en Octobre.

Participation
La participation est ouverte aux membres statutaires des équipes CNRS, à leurs membres associés, aux doctorants et aux chercheurs non-affiliés.
Les articles et autres contributions sont proposés aux membres du comité de lecture et sont soumis à l'approbation des membres du comité de rédaction. Les articles et autres contributions doivent être inédits ou leur réédition doit être justifiée et soumise à l'approbation des membres du comité de lecture. Les documents doivent parvenir sous la forme de fichiers Word, envoyés à l'adresse du directeur (jeanluc.achard@sfr.fr).

Comptes-rendus
Contacter le directeur de publication, à l'adresse électronique suivante : jeanluc.achard@sfr.fr

Langues
Les langues acceptées dans la revue sont le français, l'anglais, l'allemand, l'italien, l'espagnol, le tibétain et le chinois.

❖

Revue d'Etudes Tibétaines

numéro quarante-huit — Avril 2019

Compte-rendu

❖

Tibetan zero nominalization

Nathan W. Hill
(SOAS, University of London)

everal researchers draw attention to the ability of Tibeto-Burman languages to use nominalized verb forms in finite contexts (Matisoff 1972, Coupe, ed. 2008, DeLancey 2011), but the reverse pattern—morphologically finite forms occurring in nominal contexts—has received less attention. Here I collect a few examples from Classical Tibetan and Old Tibetan texts of affixless verb forms occurring in syntactically nominal contexts.

In example (1) the nominalized present verb stem *ḥdzin-pa* 'taker' is coordinated with *gzuṅ*, the finite future stem of the same verb. The meaning of *gzuṅ* in this passage is unequivocally 'that which is taken', as if the form were *gzuṅ-pa* or *gzuṅ-bya*. The choice of *-daṅ* as coordination marker guarantees the interpretation of *gzuṅ* as a nominal form, since *-daṅ* occurs only after nouns and never after verbs (Schwieger 2008: 161, 274-276). The expected phrase *gzuṅ-pa-daṅ ḥdzin-pa* is attested, as seen in example (2).

(1) *gzuṅ-daṅ ḥdzin-paḥi sgrib gñis bral*
    'free from the two obscurations of 'taken' and 'taker'.
    (Marpa 67a)
(2) *de ltar yoṅs-su sbyaṅs-nas gzuṅ-pa-daṅ ḥdzin-pa-las rnam-par grol-źiṅ*
    'being thus completely purified, one is liberated from 'taken' and 'taker' (Tenjur, vol. 13, p. 229)

One might suppose that in example (1), although the form in question looks verbal, in fact it is a noun derived from a verb just as 'a run' derives from 'to run' in English or *gnas* 'place' form *gnas* 'to stay' in Tibetan. Although 'zero nominalization' is a fine term for this type of derivation of nouns from verbs, it is a derivational rather than an inflectional process and may not be synchronically productive. Nonetheless, there are other examples in which the zero-nominalized form functions verbally to the left and nominally to the right, just as in the case of productive inflectional nominalization such as *-pa* suffixation.

The noun phrase *rtse-la dgaḥ daṅ sdug-pa* 'amorous play and

beauty' of example (3) consists of two component phrases *rtse-la dgaḥ* 'amorous play' and *sdug-pa* 'beauty', coordinated by the associative case -*daṅ*. The first constituent of the coordination, *rtse-la dgaḥ* 'play and love', itself clearly consists of two finite verbs coordinated by the converb -*la.* Thus, *dgaḥ* functions as a verb to the left (taking the verbal coordinator *la*) and a noun to the right (taking the nominal coordinator *daṅ*).

> (3) *nad-kyis ḥjigs-pa ḥdi ltar śin-tu mi bzad-pa // skyes-bu mkhas-*
> *pas gnas ḥdi mthoṅ-nas ji lta-bur // rtse-la dgaḥ daṅ sdug-paḥi*
> *ḥdu-śes bskyed-par ḥgyur //*
> The threats of illness are thus quite unbearable. The wise
> man, having seen this circumstance, how will he
> engender the notion of amorous play and beauty? (D. 96,
> vol. 46, p. 94a)

To my taste the passage should have read *rtse-la dgaḥ-źiṅ sdug-paḥi*, with the verbal coordinator-*źiṅ* in place of the nominal coordinator case -*daṅ*. Tshogs drug raṅ grol (1781-1851) shares this preference, as seen in his quotation of the passage in example (4).

> (4) *nad-kyis ḥjigs-pa ḥdi ltar śin-tu mi bzad-pa / skyes-bu mkhas-*
> *pas gnas ḥdi mthoṅ-na ji lta-bur // rtse-la dgaḥ źiṅ sdug-paḥi*
> *ḥdu-śes ci phyir skye //*
> The threats of illness are thus quite unbearable; the wise
> man, if he sees this circumstance, how will the notion of
> amorous play and beauty arise? (Tshogs drug raṅ grol
> 2002, vol 4, p. 413)

In example (5) the phrase *ma rig* looks like a finite 'didn't know', but functions as an attribute 'ignorant' as if the text had *gsuṅ ma-rig-pa.* The presence of the negation marker *ma* ensures that *rig* is acting verbally to the left.

> (5) *bla-maḥi gsuṅ // ma-rig min-pa dbyiṅs-su dag /*
> The words of the guru, which are not ignorant, are as
> pure as space. (Marpa 67a)

The expected phrase **ma-rig-pa min-pa* appears not to be attested. The ninth Karmapa Dbaṅ phyug rdo rje (1556- c. 1603) employs the finite equivalent *ma-rig-pa min* (example 6). The non-occurrence of **ma-rig-pa min-pa*, together with the use of *gzuṅ-daṅ ḥdzin-pa* (example 1) in place of *gzuṅ-pa-daṅ ḥdzin-pa* (example 2), suggest that the Tibetans do not like a construction to contain too many *pa*'s and omit the first

when two appear in quick succession.

(6) *gal-te bu ṅan-pa-la bu ma-yin zer-ba bźin-du śes-rabs ṅan-pa ni ma rig-paḥo źe-na | śes-rab ṅan-pa ni ma rig-pa min-te| ñon-moṅs-can-du gyur-paḥi lta-ba yin-paḥi phyir*
If one says 'evil knowledge' is ignorance, like one says to an evil son 'he is not (my) son', evil knowledge is not ignorance because it is a view that gives rise to kleśas. (Dbaṅ phyug rdo rje 2001)

Analogous to the *ma-rig* 'ignorance' of example (5) is *ma-dad* 'lack of faith' in example (7); the negation of the verb stem suggests it must be understood verbally to the left, but the use of the noun coordinator -*daṅ* requires it to be understood nominally to the right.

(7) *ṅa-rgyal-daṅ ni ma-dad-daṅ // don-du gñer-ba-med-ñid-daṅ // phyi-rol-rnam-g.yeṅ-naṅ-bsdus-daṅ // skyo-ba-ṅan-paḥi dri-ma yin //*
Pride and lack of faith, lack of interest and being distracted outward, being withdrawn inward and dejection, (these) are flaws of listening. (Bu ston 22b)

Example (7) offers a second more interesting case of zero nominalization, viz. *don-du gñer-ba-med-ñid*. The clitic -*ñid* typically follows a noun phrase; a phrase *don-du gñer-ba med-pa-ñid* 'non-existence of searching after meaning' would pose no problem. This example is in meter, but a *causa metri* explanation for the lack of -*pa* is unsatisfying, since one could have swapped the -*ñid* with a -*pa* and thereby improved the syntax without substantially changing the meaning.

   In example (8) *bźugs* looks like a finite verb 'sits', but in context it means 'those who sit', as if the form were *bźugs-pa*. Because *bźugs* 'sit' governs the *ḥdir* 'here' to its left, it cannot be analyzed as a noun. Example (9) is exactly analogous, but with the verb *tshogs* 'assemble'. The expected phrases *ḥdir bźugs-pa* (10) and *ḥdir tshogs-pa* (11) also occur. In these cases, the explanation for the zero-nominalized forms is certainly that the passages in examples (8) and (9) are verse whereas examples (10) and (11) are prose.

(8) *ḥdir bźugs gsan-cig !*
    'listen, O you who sit here !' (Marpa 50a)
(9) *ḥdir tshogs grwa-pa bu-slob kun //*
    'O all you monks and disciplines gathered here!' (Marpa 83a)

(10) *dkyil-ḥkhor chen-po ḥdir bźugs-pa-la snod-du gyur-pa-daṅ /*
     snod-du ma gyur-pa brtag mi ḥtshal-lo
     There is no need to examine whether or not those sitting
     at this great maṇḍala are suitable for taking prātimokṣa
     vows. (Tenjur, vol. 29, p. 300)

(11) *bdag-cag mched-lcam-dral ḥdir tshogs-pa rnams-kyis mchod-*
     paḥi źal-zas ḥdi-dag tshul bźin-du byin-gyis brlabs-nas
     We siblings assembled here, having blessed in this way
     these victuals which we offer (D 846, vol. 99, p. 192a)

In example (12) the verb *lta* 'watch' acts verbally to the left, governing
gar 'dance' in the allative case, and it acts nominally to the right, as an
argument of *mtshuṅs* 'be similar'. A nominalized form *lta-ba*, as seen
in example (13), would have been expected.

(12) *ḥgro-baḥi skye-ḥchi gar-la lta daṅ mtshuṅs //*
     The birth and death of creatures is like watching a dance.
     (D.96, vol. 46, page 88a)

(13) *pha-mas bu gcig-pa la lta-ba daṅ mtshuṅs //*
     Like parents looking at their only child (D.120, vol. 53,
     page 130b)

Zero-nominalization is also attested in Old Tibetan, although the
smaller size of the corpus limits one's abilities to find closely parallel
passages with and without the zero-nominalization. In example (14)
the word *dṅos-grub* 'siddhi' is modified by the verb phrase *srid-pa*
gsum-la dbaṅ byed 'rule over the three worlds'.

(14) *srid-pa gsum-la dbaṅ byed dṅos-grub gsuṃ //*
     The three siddhis (which) rule over the three worlds
     (Rama C l. 12).

One would usually expect a nominalized clause to modify its head to
the right, i.e. *dṅos-grub gsuṃ srid-pa gsum-la dbaṅ byed-pa*, or, if the
modifier is to the left of its head, one expects both nominalization
and the genitive case, i.e. *srid-pa gsum-la dbaṅ byed-paḥi dṅos-grub*
gsuṃ.
    The examples given above suffice to demonstrate the existence of
zero-nominalization in Classical and Old Tibetan.

Primary sources

Bu ston = *Bu ston chos ḥbyuṅ*, Bkra-śis lhun-po edition, 244 folios, kept in The Library of Otani University (Zogai no.11842). Online at http://web1.otani.ac.jp/cri/twrpw/results/e-texts/ (accessed 30 August 2017).

D = Derge Kanjur

Marpa = *Mar paḥi rnam thar* by Gtsaṅ smyon he ru ka rus paḥi rgyan can (Lhasa (bsTan rgyas gling) edition (wood block print), kept in Tibetan Works Research Project of Otani University SBCRI.) Online at http://web1.otani.ac.jp/cri/twrpw/results/e-texts/ (accessed 30 August 2017).

Rama = de Jong 1989

Tenjur = *Bstan ḥgyur: dpe bsdur ma*. Beijing: Kruṅ goḥi bod rig paḥi dpe skrun khaṅ, 1994-2008.

References

Coupe, Alec, ed. (2008). *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 31.2. Special Issue on Nominalization in Tibeto-Burman.

Dbaṅ phyug rdo rje (2001). *mṅon pa mdzod kyi ḥgrel pa chos mṅon rgya mtshoḥi sñiṅ po*. Cambridge: Tibetan Buddhist Resource Center. (W10919).

DeLancey, Scott. (2011). "Finite structures from clausal nominalization in Tibeto-Burman languages." in Yap, Foong Ha, Karen Grunow-Hårsta & Janick Wrona, eds. *Nominalization in Asian Languages: Diachronic and Typological Perspectives*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins. 343-62

de Jong, Jan Willem (1989). *The story of Rāma in Tibet: text and translation of the Tun-huang manuscripts*. Stuttgart: F. Steiner.

Matisoff, James A. (1972). "Lahu nominalization, relativization and genitivization." In Syntax and Semantics I, J. Kimball (ed.), 237-257. New York: Seminar Press.

Schwieger, Peter (2009). *Handbuch zur Grammatik der klassischen tibetischen Schriftsprache.* Second edition. Halle (Saale): International Institute for Tibetan and Buddhist Studies.

Tshogs drug raṅ grol (2002). *Rje źabs dkar tshogs drug raṅ grol gyi gsuṅ ḥbum*. Xining: mtsho sṅon mi rigs dpe skrun khaṅ.

❖

Amdo politics and religion—Tuken Losang Choki Nyima (Thu'u bkwan Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma, 1737-1802)[1]

Paul K. Nietupski

Introduction

Chinese and Tibetan deities are believed to be able to influence human affairs, and bestow blessings and rewards on many levels. Qualified or at least well guided humans are in turn able to invoke and control deities. Given this, deity invocation, control, and place-identification were parts of a religious, social, and political process asserted by Chinese and Tibetan emperors, local elites, and common Chinese and Tibetans. Gods were subject to rituals performed by qualified individuals, who invoked and controlled deities for religious merit (*puṇya*), victory in battle, expressions of political fealty, economic prosperity, and cure of disease.

One of the most famous Chinese deities was Guan Yun Chang (關雲長, ca. 162-220), also known as Guandi (關帝), Guanyu (關羽, 关羽), in Tibetan Kwan Lo Ye, Kwan Yun Chang, and Kwan Sprin Ring, or by one of his very many other names and titles, to this day still well

---

known in China.[2] He is believed to have been a general in the Eastern Han Dynasty who went on to develop an illustrious career, or careers in China's military, political, and religious institutions. Over time, Guan Yun Chang, in a redefinition or "superscription" process played different roles in history. Prasenjit Duara showed how Guandi in different times and places in China served as a validating source for victory in war, for Buddhist benefit, and for the acquisition of wealth and power. Here, the argument is that when invoked and controlled by Tibetans, Guandi/Guan Yun Chang would reward Tibetans with territorial definition and protection, political autonomy, religious authority, and rewards of any description.

Over time—like many other Chinese and Tibetan (Gesar, for example) mythic heroes, Guandi became deified and venerated in temples in Chinese communities around the world. There are today books, plays, movies, and video games about Guandi. Besides being associated with warfare, he represents loyalty (*zhong*, 忠) to the community and country, righteousness (*yi*, 義), and other traditionally Chinese, and "Confucian" values. To this day, he is an important figure in Chinese folk religion, in Confucianism, Daoism, Chinese Buddhism, and in modern Chinese national sensibilities, noted in detail by Duara.[3] But Guandi was not the only iconic deity in the Tibetan and Chinese worlds. For the Chinese, the Southern Song general Yue Fei (岳飛, 1103-1142), the goddess Mazu (媽祖, 妈祖), perhaps the modern Lei Feng (雷锋, 1940-1962), or even Chairman Mao Zedong, became deified and venerated in Chinese communities around the world.

This malleability however allows for continuity of identity, resulting in a situation where myths are both continuous and discontinuous. This is relevant to our present project in several Amdo Tibetan communities, which have maintained their own interpretations of the status, roles, and capabilities of deities, and at the same time, in a number of places engaged foreign powers, in this case, Guandi. This is what Duara, drawing on Malinowski and others, argues is the adoption of a foreign myth: in the process losing some of the original details, but where ". . . extant versions are not totally wiped out. . . but by adding

---

[2] For a detailed outline of Guandi, his many names, related legends, etc., see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Guan_Yu (accessed 26 December 2014). This source is however not very useful for the present project.

[3] Duara, Prasenjit. "Superscribing Symbols: The Myth of Guandi, Chinese God of War." *The Journal of Asian Studies*, 47.4 (Nov., 1988): 778-795. For a study of local deities in another context see Günther-Dietz Sontheimer (tr. Anne Feldhaus), *Pastoral Deities in Western India*. (New York: Oxford University Press, 1989).

or 'rediscovering' new elements or by giving existing elements a par-
ticular slant, the new interpretation is lodged in place."[4]

Thus, imperial Guandi is the Chinese—and Tibetan—god of war,
the god of Confucian loyalty to state and family, a Buddhist door
guardian, a Daoist protector, a god of wealth, a Han loyalist,[5] and more.
But acceptance and worship of Guandi and at the same time redefini-
tion and control of the deity, is arguably the situation with the Tibetan
adoption of this Chinese "God of War."[6] Here, however, in the hands
of Tuken and others cited below, our protagonist Guandi is drawn into
the service of Amdo Tibetans by a translation of his story, and espe-
cially by a ceremony and liturgy that bind the deity to the service of
the Tibetans.[7]

This is how we can understand the Tibetan adoption of the Chinese
deity Guandi, who appears in a number of Tibetan contexts. In Duara's
words, "[s]uperscription thus implies the presence of a lively arena
where rival versions jostle, negotiate, and compete for position. . . . to
establish its own dominance over the others." Guandi lives in Tibet,
and is absorbed into the already massive Tibetan divine realms, and
superscripted or interpreted or accepted, on Tibetan terms.[8]

Adopting foreign deities was a symbolic process, but it had concrete
results. The Tibetan adoption of Guandi constituted recognition and
acceptance, but we hasten to add that it did not mean full acceptance
of Chinese authority. Again, in Duara's rendering, "historical groups
are able to expand old frontiers of meaning to accommodate their
changing needs . . . [but] the legitimacy of the old is drawn upon."[9]
Writing of the Qing Dynasty, and here very resonant with seventeenth
century and centuries following in Amdo, Duara argues that

> The struggle to survive within this arena may be desperate, and so
> also to dominate, as with the Qing. But although the Qing was able
> to reorder the interpretive arena of the myth, its hegemony was never

---

[4]   Duara 780.
[5]   For example against the Manchus, Duara 787.
[6]   Duara 783-4.
[7]   [Thu'u bkwan] Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma. "*Khams gsum bdud 'dul rgyal chen bkwan
       yun chang gi lo rgyus dang gsol mchod bya tshul 'phrin las char rgyun bskul ba'i 'brug
       sgra*." "Thunder that calls down a deluge of good deeds: The history of the great
       king Guan Yun Chang (關雲長, 关云长), who overcomes the demons of the three
       realms, and the way to invoke him." In *Gsung 'bum*, Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma
       (Lhasa: Zhol par khang gsar pa, 2000). Volume 5 (ca), ff 783-796. Work W21507.
       http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O00CHZ0102865|O00CHZ01028652870$W21507.
[8]   Duara 780.
[9]   Duara 791.

absolute. . . . In the end it had to be satisfied with a nominal acceptance of the official version by particularly defiant subaltern groups.[10]

In this essay our focus is on Tibetans and Chinese in the eighteenth century, the Qing Dynasty period, in which Duara suggests that for the Chinese Guandi, "Emperor Guan," was prominent. For some the implication might be that the peoples of Tibet were under the actual rule of the Manchu emperors. Our primary Tibetan source texts, however, present a scenario in which Guandi, the Chinese "God of War," is appropriated and used by Tibetans.

The very short Tibetan text translated below has two main parts; first, an historical sketch of the mythological "emperor" of China Guandi/Guan Yun Chang, in Tibetan, Kwan Phrin Rings, and several other names, and second, a liturgy for invoking and controlling him. The text was composed by Tuken Losang Chokyi Nyima (1737-1802), a scholar from Amdo who was well connected in the Qing court, well connected in Lhasa at Gomang College of Drepung Monastery, and not the least, well connected in a network of prominent scholars and religious leaders in Amdo.

The inclusion of China and a well-known Chinese deity who exemplifies loyalty to the Chinese state government in these Tibetan liturgies and art objects attests to the close involvement and self-assertion of the Tibetans in the Qing court. The liturgies are thus remarkable for the Tibetan assertions of local Tibetan sovereignty and at the same time their acknowledgement of the outside authority of the Qing emperors and their armies.

Communities of the Faithful

Drawing on central Tibetan religious heritage and social models, Amdo Tibetan monastic estate owners in this period amassed much of their often enormous wealth and political authority from local nomad and farming communities. Internal sovereignty and regional economic control were often validated by Lhasa religious pedigrees and endorsed by powerful outside forces, in this period, and in the case of Tuken, especially the Mongols and Manchus. These internal monastery-centered networks and effective engagement with external powers were crucial to the well-being of the Amdo "monastic" consortium.

---

[10]   Duara 791.

Like the Chinese deities, including Guandi, the Tibetans have their own pantheons of deities, including Buddhist, Bon, local Tibetan deities, important Indian deities, and Guandi, altogether in an arguably even more complex pantheon than the Chinese. These include many historical figures transformed, or apotheosed, and widely recognized Tibetan adepts in lineages of reborn scholars and practitioners. Common Tibetan deities include very many local inhabitants, and, noted in the texts under study here, many well-known bodhisattvas and tantric deities, including Vajrapāṇi, Avalokiteśvara, Vajra Bhairava, and Mahākāla.

These deities and their followers, the human communities of believers, were not isolated from one another. This is very much the case in advanced meditations for individuals and their primary objects of meditation (*iṣṭadevatā*). Katia Buffetrille has noted that deities, in this respect like humans, have relationships with each other, as spouses or lovers, offspring, or competitors,[11] often in close physical proximity to one another.

Briefly, in Buddhist technical language, Tibetan and Chinese deities engaged in human-like, mundane *laukika* religious (*mi chos*) matters, and in transcendent *lokottara*, often tantric concerns (*lha chos*).[12] The former worldly matters were important in establishing local political sovereignty, less concerned with matters of religious insight and Buddhist enlightenment. However, knowledgeable lay Tibetan and Chinese people and even well-educated lamas did not strictly differentiate between the categories of the religions of gods and humans. Epstein & Peng noted that Tibetan, and might add, Chinese lay faithful did not hesitate to ask the Buddhist tantric deities for mundane favors:

> . . . as Samuel and others have pointed out, the Tibetan folk and more formal religious traditions have interpenetrated each other to the extent that it is difficult to disentangle them. Monks, for example, often perform readings of religious texts for laymen, which, in the eyes of the latter, accomplish the same this-worldly ends as do, say, folk rituals of purification. They also confer some degree of otherworldly

---

[11] Katia Buffetrille, "Reflections on Pilgrimages to Sacred Mountains, Lakes and Caves," in *Pilgrimage in Tibet*, ed. Alex McKay (Surrey: Curzon Press, 1998), 20-23. Again, how this "competitiveness" or territorial prominence manifests in actual communities is evident in specific places and events, for example when the Second Jamyang Zhepa moved and re-installed a deity in Dngul rwa. See also Katia Buffetrille, "Le jeu rituel musical (*glu/klu rol*) du village de Sog ru (Reb gong) en A mdo)." *Études mongoles et sibériennes, centrasiatiques et tibétaines* 35 (2004): 3.

[12] R.A. Stein, *Grottes-Matrices et Lieux Saints de la Déesse en Asie Orientale*. (Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1988), 37-49.

merit on them. Similarly, Buddhist or Bon rituals and texts are often employed in folk rituals.[13]

The point here is that even if formally separated there is a conflation of the categories of religions of gods and humans into what might be a third category, a fusion of religious deities (tantric and non-tantric, *lokottara* and *laukika*) and religious goals (apotropaic and transcendent).[14] Religious and political, temporal motives and goals are not separate in these communities. The religious vision of the unity of human and divine realms in Amdo, and the applications of divine power to the physical realities of Amdo economics, weather, territorial sovereignty and warfare were, as above, arguably very real. Evidence of these visions and concerns are in Tuken's text under study here, and in the texts of his Amdo contemporaries noted below.

Competition between communities and their respective deities are expressions of territoriality, even on national levels. Deity invocation and place-identification are a political process asserted by local lay chieftains and Buddhist leaders, who derive their authority not only from the central Tibetan or other governments, but also from more local resident deities.[15] These deities are subject to rituals performed by qualified individuals, like Tuken, who can invoke and control deities like Guandi. This process was an invisible political agency located in living communities that defined ownership of land, boundaries, and the community's territorial and political autonomy.

These scholars demonstrate a strong sense of history, perhaps better described as Brown's "intervisibility," or even better, an intersubjectivity by which Tibetan and Chinese peoples and histories were mutually cognizant of one another. Again, considering Waugh, the importations of Guan Yun Chang into Tibetan communities were instances of

> ". . . movement, resettlement, and interactions across ill-defined borders . . . also the story of artistic exchange and the spread and mixing of religions, all set against the background of the rise and fall of polities which encompassed a wide range of cultures and peoples . . ."[16]

---

[13]   Epstein and Peng 1998, 121.

[14]   See R.A. Stein, 37-49. The material in these paragraphs is taken in part from Paul K. Nietupski, "Understanding Sovereignty in Amdo." In *Trails of the Tibetan Tradition: Papers for Elliot Sperling*. Edited by Roberto Vitali, with assistance from Gedun Rabsal and Nicole Willock, 217-232.

[15]   Buffetrille 1998, 22-23.

[16]   Waugh, Daniel C. "The Silk Roads in History." *Expedition* 52.3 (2010): 9-22.

And similarly, echoing Brown, the engagement of Guan Yun Chang by these Tibetans was ". . . juxtaposition of the known and the exotic," a kind of "archaic globalization."[17]

Liturgy as Literature

The short text translated below has two parts: first an historical sketch of the mythological "God of ar," and "emperor" of China Guandi, aka Guan Yun Chang, and second, a liturgy for invoking and controlling him. The text was composed by Tuken Losang Chokyi Nyima (1737-1802), again an Amdo Monguor scholar educated in Lhasa, well connected in the Qing court, and highly regarded in Amdo. In addition to this text by Tuken, this project references altogether six works by five major figures in Tuken's network, all with similar religious and academic pedigrees, with similar political orientations and assumptions of sovereignty. The five authors are (1) Tuken himself, (2) Chahar Géshé (Cha har dge bshes Blo bzang tshul khrims, aka Cha phring 'jang gsar bstan 'dzin, 1740-1810), author of two liturgies to Guandi, (3) the Second Jamyang Zhepa ('Jam dbyangs bzhad pa Dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po, 1728-1791), (4) the Third Jangkya, Rolpé Dorjé (Lcang skya Rol pa'i rdo rje, 1717-1786), and (5) the Sixth Panchen Lama, Losang Pelden Yeshé (Slob bzang dpal ldan ye shes, 1738-1780). The six liturgies are remarkable for the assertions of local sovereignty and at the same time for their diplomatic acknowledgement of the outside authority of the Qing emperor and his armies.

Tibetan liturgical (*gsol mchod*) literature is very scripted, and more like screenplays or dramatic programs than prose narratives. The texts here signal religious and community events. They typically involve the exercise of procedures and processes and are often preceded by prayers, invocations of deities, and acknowledgements of teachers and teachings.

All texts include breaks for ritual processes and explanatory asides: offerings of herbs, fragrant plants, foods, recitation of spells, music, and so on. The texts give the impression of being notes taken at, or in preparation for an actual ritual, in the example translated here likely with Tuken officiating, contributing the central texts and prayers, but not writing out everything in the actual sequence, leaving this to assis-

---

[17]   Brown, Peter. "The Silk Road in Late Antiquity," in *Reconfiguring the Silk Road: New Research on East-West Exchange in Antiquity*, ed. Victor H. Mair & Jane Hickman. 15-22. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2014.

tants in the community. Tuken includes prayers and mantras from canonical texts, quoted passages, and some references to historical documents, evidencing a broad literary education.

The style and genre of Tuken's selection here is also reflected in the works of other Tibetan writers, perhaps in this respect part of the necessary repertoire for Tibetan writers. Tuken's text colophon tells us that our present piece was given in the presence of the Mongol Khalka Jinong Beisi, at Jis bu, in the country of Kwachu. It was requested (*bskul*) by one Darhan Choje Yeshe Dragpa Sangpo (Chos rje ye shes grags pa bzang po), assembled, or edited (*sbyar*) by Ku swa yi [UNCLEAR] Dharmavajra, and the writer (*yi ge pa*) was Ngag dbang phun tshogs. The performance was likely attended by many local monks and laypersons. These details speak to the process of "writing" or "composition" of Tibetan texts and are similar to those found in all of the texts under study here, and in much of Tibetan literature in general.

In terms of literary structure and content, two of the five authors under study here, Tuken and Chahar Géshé, began their liturgies with brief historical or better mythological accounts of Guan Yun Chang. The histories here are mixed with myth. Descriptive titles of kings, generals, and lamas are defined in their own respective terms, and assumptions of sovereignty asserted by each writer. But for all of the mixing and vision, the liturgies were grounded in very real persons and places. The network of scholars is marked by Chahar Géshé in his colophon, where he notes that the first of his two compositions to Guandi/Guan Yun Chang is "based on Tuken's oral composition (*zhal snga*), and a little expanded according to models in other propitiation rituals."[18]

Interaction, or networking, is clearly evident in the historical sections of Tuken's and Chahar Géshé's liturgies. In a comment that signals some historical blending, or perhaps Brown's "juxtaposition" or a signal of "archaic globalization," Tuken notes that the deity Guandi/Guan Yun Chang is "of the same mind" (*thugs rgyud gcig pa yin te*) as Begtsé Jamsing (*beg tse lcam sring*). Tuken explains further that in ancient texts (*sngon gyi yig rnying rnams su . . .*) it is said of Begtsé that "he was a Chinese demon (*dam sri*)." He goes on to say that Lālitavajra (Rolpé Dorjé) orally translated this into modern Indian language.[19] Chahar Géshé makes no mention of Beg Tsé's supposed Chinese origins or Rolpé Dorjé's use of ancient texts, but both authors state

---

[18]   *Zhal snga nas thu'u bkwan rin po ches mdzad pa bzhin byas kyi steng du bskang gso'i cho ga gzhan la rigs 'gres kyis cung zad rgyas su btang nas . .* , 10b2). Chahar Géshé has two liturgies to Guan Lo Ye/Yun Chang, full details noted in the bibliography. Here, the first is abbreviated "*Gsol mchod*" and the second "*'Dod rgu 'gugs pa'i lcags kyu.*"

[19]   *Gsol mchod,* (fol. 2b3-4).

that Beg Tsé Jamsing/Guan Yun Chang is the "owner" (*bdag po*) of all of China, and that he has many donors of food and drink in Tibet, and in particular, that ". . . a great venerable being (*bla chen sku gres po*) in Tsang, . . . [is] the chief of our donors."

Chahar Géshé concurs with two quotations similar in content, but not literal renderings of Rolpé Dorjé's text, alluding to "the great being of Tsang, who, it is said, is in the lineage of the Panchen Rinpoche [and] . . . relied on Beg Tsé. . . . And, it says in the biography of the designated Prince Don grub (*gsungs pa'i rgyal bu kyi rtogs brjod der . . .*) that when the omniscient [6ᵗʰ/3ʳᵈ] Panchen Lobzang Yéshé (1738-1780)[20] was young,

> a red man came and said 'I am called Beg Tsé.' In the future I vow to be your protector, and so on. It is clear that this is the deity, [and] it is certain that this very one is identical to Beg Tsé (*beg tse dang ngo bo gcig yin par nges so*). Furthermore, the minister Dorjé Dudul also said that they are identical. . . . (fol. 3a2-4)

Chahar Géshé continues that since the time of Srongtsan Gampo and Princess Wencheng, Tibet sent ministers to China and that previous Tibetan kings paid their respects to Guandi/Guan Yun Chang, naming him in Chinese and in Tibetan "The great emperor who defeats the demons of the three realms (*khams gsum bdud 'dul rgyal po chen po*)." He mentions that when Wencheng went to Tibet she was followed by Guandi/ Guan Yun Chang, who was installed in a fortress in the Grib region of Lhasa, in the Crystal Cave in Yarlung, today known as Btsan bshan, and subsequently in many other places.

Chahar Géshé closes his historical account by crediting the *Yig Tshang*, presumably the *Rgya Bod Yig Tshang Chen Mo* of the 15th century writer Dpal 'byor bzang po,[21] citing "the testimony of many erudite people (*tshad ma'i skyes bu*), and the writings of many previous meditators (*sngon gyi hwa shang*)." These two historical accounts, by Tuken and Chahar Géshé again attest to the interaction between Tibetan and Chinese deities, their visions, and their roles in Tibetan culture.

---

[20]   I understand that this passage refers to the 6th (3rd in the Bkra shis lhun po system) Panchen Lama Losang Palden Yéshé, 1738-1780, author of a *Collected Works* that contains a liturgy to Guan Yun Chang, and not the 5th Panchen Lama, Losang Yéshé (1663-1737). The text reads Blo bzang ye shes (3a2), the 5th, but the 6th (3rd) wrote the liturgy. The 5th Panchen received novice vows from the 5th Dalai Lama (1617-1682), and went on to give novice vows to the 6th Dalai Lama. Both Panchens were in contact with the Qing court.

[21]   *Gsol mchod,* (fol. 3a6-3b4).

Of the six Tibetan liturgies to Guandi, these two, our present text by Tuken and the other by Chahar Géshé, contain historical introductions, as above. Three of the six compositions are quite different, very short, and include mostly verses of invocation to Guandi. These three short pieces are, with colophons, (1) the very brief verses by Rolpé Dorjé, (2) a brief composition by the 6th [3rd] Panchen Lama Losang Palden Yéshé, and (3) the second liturgy by Chahar Géshé, the *'dod rgu 'gugs pa'i lcags kyu*," very different from his long liturgy appended to his history, which he credits in part to Tuken.

In addition to these three short writings, three others (of the six) liturgies are more detailed, longer compositions. These include visualization instructions, use of ritual materials, and notes of sequences of the rituals. These three are (4) Tuken's liturgy, translated here below, (5) Chahar Géshé's piece appended to his history (again, credited in part to Tuken), and (6) the Second Jamyang Zhepa's composition. Altogether these make six liturgical works, including two with attached historical sketches.

Religious Contexts

These detailed writings contain much description of religious ritual and mention of philosophical contexts (*stong pa nyid tu 'gyur . . .*), deity families and hierarchies, historical persons (Tsong kha pa, etc.), and not the least, the idea of the Tibetan "unity of religion and worldly matters." Outside of the fact that he intends to invoke and control invisible deities, the Sixth Panchen Losang Pelden Yéshé has little to say about religious or metaphysical contexts. In his similarly brief writing Rolpé Dorjé, however, instructs one to begin the liturgy after emerging from meditation on the "superior deities (*lhag pa'i lha*) Guhyasamāja, Cakrasaṃvara, or Vajrabhairava," and continue to recite the six mantras, the six mūdras,[22] and the three seed syllables (*oṃ aḥ huṃ*).

Tuken gives more detailed information taken from tantric ritual contexts about how to approach Guandi/Guan Yun Chang. At the opening of his historical section he invokes Hayagrīva, and in the actual liturgy he begins with a mention of the necessary material offerings--refined alcohol, medicinal substances--and, like others of the liturgies, notes when musical instruments are to be sounded. Tuken goes

---

22   The six mantras and six mūdras are "used especially in the contemplative generation from Emptiness of ransoms or substitutes," in Stephan Beyer, *The Cult of Tārā: Magic and Ritual in Tibet* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1973), 346-347; see the list in Dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po, *Collected Works of Kun mkhyen dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po*. Vol. *tha*, 44b2-4.

on to describe how one is to visualize a gold and silver vessel appearing from the letter *hūṃ*, on top of which are three vajras from which one offers an oblation of nectar. One recites *Oṃ aḥ huṃ* three times and proceeds with the oblation. The other authors are even more explicit; in his eloquent work the Second Jamyang Zhepa clearly uses ritual processes from the tantric traditions as preliminaries to his invocation of Guandi/Guan Yun Chang, including a fire offering fueled by precious substances, all absorbed and answered by hosts of deities, where appearance and emptiness are not mutually obstructive (*snang stong ma 'gag*). This type of language and ritual process is elaborated in even more detail in Chahar Géshé's liturgy.

These brief compositions are one very small example of a dynamic and rich religious culture, an important part of the broad expanse of Tibetan religious practices. The liturgies display the Tibetan religious worldview, densely populated by invisible spirits of broad description. Guandi/Guan Yun Chang is variously described as a regional deity (*gzhi bdag*), an enemy deity (*dgra lha*), and a Dharma protector (*bstan bsrung*). In all cases, Guandi/Guan Yun Chang represents forces to pay attention to, to control, and at best, manipulate to one's own advantage. In this regard Guandi/Guan Yun Chang and similar spirits are very involved in human affairs, both for better and for worse, and are accessible to religious experts, who through various means, including liturgy recitation and ritual, can bridge the normally impenetrable barrier between gods and humans.[23]

The Network

With so many liturgies and so many deities, one might suppose that such studies and performances become repetitive and boring. The tedious generic qualities are, however, quickly lost in the specific contexts, which in our case include a group of five prominent religious and political leaders, specific places in Amdo, and local constituents. Liturgies have an important role as a dynamic contact point between high level religious figures, political leaders, their own extended communities, and outside forces, which here include especially the Manchus and Mongols, all with their own vested interests.

---

[23] See Paul K. Nietupski, "Understanding Sovereignty in Amdo," in *Trails of the Tibetan Tradition: Papers for Elliot Sperling*, ed. Roberto Vitali, with assistance from Gedun Rabsal and Nicole Willock. (Dharamshala (H.P.), India: Amnye Machen Institute, 2014), 217-232. For a thorough study of local deities in another context see Günther-Dietz Sontheimer (tr. Anne Feldhaus), *Pastoral Deities in Western India*. (NY: Oxford University Press, 1989).

The five authors are remarkable for their Amdo roots (except for the Sixth Panchen Lama Losang Pelden Yeshé, 1738-1780, from central Tibet, but who had extensive contacts with Amdo lamas, and wrote liturgies to deities from Kokonor/Mtsho sngon po /Qinghai, etc.), their Lhasa-derived religious education, their proximate Mongol neighbors, their engagement with the Qing court and Qing authorities, and their compositions focused on Guandi/Guan Yun Chang. One particular point noted in the works by Tuken and Chahar Géshé that seems revealing is the episode of the mysterious "red man" who appeared in a dream, and is identified as Begtsé/Guandi, and fully described, but not as clearly identified, in the Second Jamyang Zhepa's liturgy. The deity advises Rolpé Dorjé to go to Tsang, where he has many loyal followers and supporters. This seems to indicate the importance of Tsang, home of the Panchen Lamas, to Guandi/Guan Yun Chang, who describes himself as the "owner" of all of China. The identification of Tsang as a support base for the Chinese deity Guandi/Guan Yun Chang seems to be a telling episode, given that our writers are mostly from Amdo, but perhaps signaling a close connection to central Tibet.

A Community of Scholars

Guandi/Guan Yun Chang, a Chinese-originated deity and his mythic stories, was a "God of War," appropriated and manipulated by Amdo Tibetans. Such deity invocation and manipulation was widespread across Amdo and all of Tibet, at all levels of society. This example is especially interesting for its cross-border movement between Tibet and China. In addition to Tuken, the invocation and manipulation of Guandi/Guan Yun Chang appears in the writings of several of his colleagues, several mentioned above.[24] These well-known and prolific

24 See [Thu'u bkwan] Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma. "Rgyal chen bkwan yun chang gi lo rgyus dang gsol mchod bya tshul 'phrin las char rgyun bskul ba'i 'brug sgra" ["Khams gsum bdud 'dul rgyal chen bkwan yun chang gi lo rgyus dang gsol mchod bya tshul 'phrin las char rgyun bskul ba'i 'brug sgra"]. In *Gsung 'bum, Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma* (Lhasa: Zhol par khang gsar pa, 2000). Volume 5 (ca), ff 783-796. Work W21507. http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O00CHZ0102865|O00CHZ0102 8652870$W21507. Dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po, "Ma hA tsi na'i yul gyi dgra lha chen po dmag dpon bye ba 'bum gyi sde dpon kwan lo ye gyi mchod gtor/" ["Mthu stobs kyi mnga' bdag ma hA tsi na'i yul gyi dgra lha chen po dmag dpon bye ba 'bum gyi sde dpon kwan lo ye gyi mchod gtor/]. In *Gsung 'bum, Dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po.* (Bla brang par ma), 683-687, Volume 10 of Work W1KG9560. Location: ff. 21b-23b (pp.672-676). TBRC W1KG9560. (New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1971). http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O4C Z28036|O4CZ280364CZ298014 CZ2 9843$W1KG9560; Lcang skya Rol pa'i rdo rje. "Kwan lo ye'i gsol mchod." In *Gsung 'bum, Rol pa'i rdo rje.* TBRC W28833. 5: 473-476. (Beijing: Krung go bod brgyud mtho rim nang bstan slob gling nang bstan zhib 'jug khang, 1995).

scholars in part made up a network of scholars in teacher-student re-
lationships, and often in tantric guru-disciple relationships. All were
in the Gelukpa order, and were celibate Tibetan Buddhist monks; in
this they were very different from their famous pupil and supporter,
the Qianlong emperor.[25] Outside of literary compositions, other evi-
dence of Tibetan appropriation of Guandi/Guan Yun Chang in central
Tibet include the Guandi statue, with Gesar in the ca. 1793 temple near
Chakpori in Lhasa. This temple is credited to the Reting Regent,
Losang Yeshe Tenpa Rabgye (1759–1815). The list of associations goes
on, and signals an important component of Tibetan religious and po-
litical sensibilities, far beyond the scope of this short essay.

Finally, a word about our Monguor Amdo scholar-politician-en-
lightened bodhisattva, the Third Tuken (1737-1802). Briefly, his reli-
gious biography begins with his studies with the Third Jangkya, Rolpé
Dorjé and the Second Jamyang Zhepa. He was educated at Gonlung
Monastery and at Gomang in Lhasa. He was identified as the rebirth
of the Second Tuken by Rolpé Dorjé, by the Second Jamyang Zhepa,
and by other prominent Tibetan teachers. He was ordained (*dge tshul*)
by Rolpé Dorjé. After the passing of the Second Jamyang Zhepa, one
of his primary teachers in Lhasa, the Third Tuken went on to validate
the rebirth of the Third Jamyang Zhepa (Blo bzang thub bstan 'jigs med
rgya mtsho, 1792-1855), and later granted him renunciate (*rab byung*)

---

http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O00PD107753|O00PD1077537934$W28833; Blo bzang
tshul khrims, Cha har dge bshes blo bzang tshul khrims (Cha phring 'jang gsar
bstan 'dzin). "Bkwan lo ye'i gsol mchod 'dod don kun stsol (na)." ["Bstan srung
rgyal po chen po bkwan lo ye'i gsol mchod 'dod don kun stsol"]. In *Gsung 'bum,
Blo bzang tshul khrims*. TBRC W23726. 6: 219-238. (Sku 'bum byams pa gling, 2002).
http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O2CZ5408|O2CZ54082CZ5704$W23726; Blo bzang
tshul khrims. "Bkwan lo ye la gser skyems 'bul tshul 'dod rgu 'gugs pa'i lcags dkyu
(na phyi ma)." ["Dbang phyogs tsi na'i yul gyi dgra lha'i rgyal chen bkwan lo ye
la gser skyems 'bul tshul 'dod rgu 'gugs pa'i lcags dkyu"]. In *Gsung 'bum, Blo bzang
tshul khrims*. TBRC W23726. 6: 239-244. (Sku 'bum byams pa gling, 2002).
http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O2CZ5408|O2CZ54082CZ5705$W23726; Blo bzang
tshul khrims. "Dgra lha'i gsol mchod 'dod dgu'i char 'bebs (pa)." In *Gsung 'bum,
Blo bzang tshul khrims*. TBRC W23726. 6: 245-270. (Sku 'bum byams pa gling, 2002).
http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O2CZ5408|O2CZ54082CZ5706$W23726. In addition,
Guandi appears in a ca. 1793 temple with Gesar, near Chakpori in Lhasa, credited
to the Reting Regent, Losang Yeshe Tenpa Rabgye (1759–1815). Thanks to Gray
Tuttle for reminding me of this temple. The Sixth Panchen Lama Pelden Yeshé
(1738-1780) also composed a liturgy to the deity; see Dpal ldan ye shes. "rgya yul
gyi gzhi bdag kwan lo ye'i gsol mchod/." In gsung 'bum/_dpal ldan ye shes. TBRC
W2046. 4: 342-343. New Delhi: Mongolian lama gurudeva, 1975-1978. http://tbrc.
org/link?RID=O00EGS103132|O00EGS1031324CZ346914CZ347784CZ347854CZ
348274CZ348384CZ348494CZ34860$W2046.

25 See Evelyn S. Rawski, *The Last Emperors: A Social History of Qing Imperial Institutions*.
Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998, 142.

vows. The Third Tuken went on to serve as executive administrator of Zhalu Serkang, Gonlung Jampa Ling, and Kumbum monasteries.

In addition to his Amdo roots, his education in Lhasa, and his prominence in his home institutions, Tuken and his network of Amdo teachers and scholars also shared strong involvement with the Qing and Mongol courts. The Third Tuken spent a good deal of time travel-ing between Beijing, Mongolia, and Lhasa. He made three trips to Bei-jing, the first for five years, and the others much shorter. He spent much time with the Qianlong Emperor, serving as one of his closest Buddhist teachers. He was honored by the Lhasa government, the Chi-nese Emperor, and was highly regarded by Mongol, and not the least, Tibetan nobility.[26] The similarities in homeland, education in Amdo and in central Tibet, and involvement in the Chinese imperial court are evidence of political and religious institution building.

Conclusion

The discussion of Guandi/Guan Yun Chang and the Tibetan lamas and deities becomes more relevant when one considers that social and political authority were very often understood as integrated with reli-gious ideologies and institutions.[27] Ideologies, including interactions

---

[26] See the biographical entry at http://www.treasuryoflives.org/biographies/view/Lobzang-Chokyi-Nyima/3008. See Rawski 1998; Gray Tuttle, *Tibetan Bud-dhists in the Making of Modern China*. (New York: Columbia University Press, 2005); et al.

[27] For decentralized governance in pastoral nomadic societies see Bat-Ochir Bold, *Mongolian Nomadic Society: A Reconstruction of the 'Medieval' History of Mongolia* (New York: St. Martin's Press, 2001); David Sneath, *Imperial Statecraft: Political Forms and Techniques of Governance in Inner Asia, Sixth-Twentieth Centuries* (Belling-ham: Western Washington University Center for East Asian Studies, 2006); David Sneath, *The Headless State: Aristocratic Orders, Kinship Society, & Misrepresentations of Nomadic Inner Asia* (New York: Columbia University Press, 2007); Paul K. Nietupski, "Understanding Religion and Politics in A mdo: The Sde khri Estate at Bla brang Monastery." In *Monastic and Lay Traditions in North-Eastern Tibet*. Edited by Yangdon Dhondup, Ulrich Pagel and Geoffrey Samuel, 67-86. Leiden: Brill, 2013. For issues of nationalism see Georges Dreyfus, "Proto-nationalism in Tibet," in *Ti-betan Studies: Proceedings of the 6th Seminar of the International Association of Tibetan Studies, Fagernes 1992*, ed. P. Kvaerne (Oslo: Institute for Comparative Research, 1994) 1: 205-218; Paul Nietupski, "Nationalism in Labrang, Amdo: Apa Alo/Huang Zhengqing." In *Studies in the History of Eastern Tibet. [PIATS 2006: Pro-ceedings of the Eleventh Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies. Kö-nigswinter 2006.].* Edited by Wim van Spengen & Lama Jabb, 179-208. Halle: Inter-national Institute for Tibetan and Buddhist Studies GmbH, 2010. For early perspec-tives on the Tibetan world view, see Dan Martin, "'Ol-mo-lung-ring, the Original Holy Place," in *Sacred Spaces and Powerful Places In Tibetan Culture: A Collection of*

with deities, were the groundworks of ethical, legal, political, and religious behavior. Put simply, Amdo monastic authorities, in the name of divine beings, exercised authority over farm and pasture land, received tax revenues, corvée, and profits from livestock, and received a wide range of donations. They were recognized and respected by their neighbors. In return, deities were believed to be capable of "eliminating outer and inner obstacles, fulfilling the community's wishes, providing for their long and prosperous lives, healthy livestock, not too much or too little rain, and bountiful crops."[28] They were thought to expedite Buddhist practice and merit-making activities, and here most importantly could, in the eyes of local Tibetan communities, provide grounds for political sovereignty in their designated fields of control.

Translation

"Thunder that calls down a deluge of good deeds: The history of the great king Guan Yun Chang,
who overcomes thedemons of the three realms and the way to invoke him"[29]

Tuken Losang Chokyi Nyima (1737-1802)

Homage to the teacher Hayagrīva,
Who binds all beings tightly with the noose of compassion,
Who pulverizes[30] legions of demons with his wrathful dance,
And is the great wrathful king[31] who terrifies with all fearsome things.
I bow with respect to the feet of Great Lotus[32] [Hayagrīva]
Who by merely raising the banner of his inexhaustible power
Destroys [even] the name of evil.

Essays, ed. Toni Huber (Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1999), 258-304.

[28] There are many different kinds of local deities in Amdo, including *yul lha*, *gzhi bdag*, *gnyan*, *gdon*, *bgegs*, *rbad 'dre*, *rbod gtong*, *klu*, and others.

[29] [Thu'u bkwan] Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma. "*Khams gsum bdud 'dul rgyal chen bkwan yun chang gi lo rgyus dang gsol mchod bya tshul 'phrin las char rgyun bskul ba'i 'brug sgra.*" In *Gsung 'bum*, Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma (Lhasa: Zhol par khang gsar pa, 2000). Volume 5 (ca), ff 783-796. Work W21507. http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O00CHZ0102865|O00CHZ01028652870$W21507.

[30] The text is unclear here; I read provisionally "*thal mar rlog,*" to smash, crush, pulverize.

[31] *Khro rgyal chen po bzhi*, four wrathful kings, protectors of the four directions: Vijaya, Yamāntaka, Hayagrīva, Amṛtakuṇḍali.

[32] Padma dbang chen is an epithet of Hayagrīva.

Let us gently proclaim with a storm of praise
To invoke a deluge of the great king's wish fulfilling goodness.

Here is the method for offering tormas of praise to the one known as
King Yun Chang, who controls the demons of the three realms. In this
there are two parts, the history of the great king and the actual expla-
nation of the method for offering tormas of praise.

First,
Long ago, in the great country of China, there was a Han (*han gur*) em-
peror named Xuande 玄德 (also known as Liu Bei 劉備, 刘备, 161-223).
His minister, named [Guan]Yu (*yu'u*; 羽) (ca. 160-220),[33] was of noble
birth and courageous [in battle]. [Guan Yu's] power was great; he was
appointed military commander. He conquered different hostile enemy
countries, and brought innumerable regional emperors (*sa steng gi
rgyal po*) and lesser kings under his control. And, when arrogant per-
sons, proud of their bravery gathered around him they became like
garudas and little birds. Everywhere, just by hearing his name there
was not even one among them who did not bow. Moreover, it is said
that he was one of unwavering righteousness in any circumstance,
peaceful or violent, without the ferocity that does not discriminate be-
tween those to be protected and those to be subdued. He was like
Aśoka, king of the Buddhist teachings (*dharmarāja*), a wheel turning
king (*cakravartirāja*) who protects a great country in accordance with
the Buddhist teachings. Further, as it is said, he quickly bypassed men-
tal delusions (*thugs mug pa'i rnam pas*) and then assumed a birth as a
great dragon (*nya mid chen po*).[34] At the end of his life, when there were
battles with others, he appeared as if angry, and afterwards, there was
[only] a light rain [remaining]. (. . . *'og rol tu zi khron gyi sa'i char*).

At Yuquan Mountain[35] there is a high peak today called Zhang
Ling. There, [Guan Yu] became Shu po che, a spirit of the nāga class.
He is extremely disruptive. Mere travel by others in sight of that
mountain was difficult.[36]

---

[33] These identifications are tentative. The text is *Sya na dhI . . . yu'u*, the king and
      minister. This could be Xiandi 獻帝 (181-234), but Xuande is connected to Guan
      Yu/Guandi.
[34] Unclear text; *nya mid chen po'i skye bslangs par . . ,* 2a1.
[35] See note 13.
[36] The text here is unclear. I tentatively read: 2a2: *klu'i rigs kyi mi ma yin shu po che zhig
      tu gyur pa shin tu tsub drag pas . . .*

Then, after about four hundred years passed, the great master Zhiyi (智顗),[37] who upheld the lineage of Protector Nāgārjuna [and Ārya-deva], the father and son, came to that place for retreat (*sgrub pa la*).[38] It is said that even though the local people were extremely hostile, he didn't go back [home], and meditated on that mountain. Then, by the machinations of local spirits a giant snake appeared and wrapped it-self around that mountain three times, leading (*drang*) many tens of millions of armies of gods and nagas. The great mountain shook (*brdegs*). The sun and moon crashed (*brdeb*) together. A deluge of weap-ons fell. A blizzard raged above. [However,] whatever kinds of terri-fying apparitions and so on appeared were not able to distract him from his concentration (*ting nge 'dzin*).

At that moment, the great general [Guan Yu], decorated with armor and ornaments appeared with eight military battalions (*sde*). He pros-trated to the master, apologized for trying to inflict harm, and said "In the past I was a great general. Because I was able to get over my anger I changed into this type (*rnam pa can*) of snake. Doing good deeds gave rise to this great power and apparition." [Then,] the master lectured extensively on the teachings of karma and its effects.

[Guan Yu] vowed that "Now, I will be a protector of the Buddha's teachings. Wherever there is an image of the Buddha, I will install my image in whatever kind of entry gate or left and right antechamber, and I will protect the monastic community and the Buddhist teachings (*chos 'khor*)." From that time on he became a protector of the Buddhist teachings.[39]

---

[37] Thanks to Zhang Linghui 张凌晖, who provides us with a reference to Ti ce da shi, and his identification as Zhiyi (538–597): "*rGya nag hwa shang gi byung tshul grub mtha'i phyogs snga bcas sa bon tsam smos pa yid kyi dri ma dag byed dge ba'i chu rgyun*," by Kaḥ-thog-Rig-'dzin Tshe-dbang-nor-bu (1698–1755), In *Kaḥ thog rdo rje gdan gyi rig 'dzin chen po tshe dbang nor bu'i zhabs kyi gsung 'bum* (6 vols). Dalhousie, H.P.: Damchoe sangpo, 1976–1977, vol. 5, pp. 419–450. See p. 439, "ṭi ce dā shi'a thwa wan," a transliteration of the Chinese 智者大师德安, a biographical description of Zhiyi 智顗. He is called Ti ce da shi; Zhiyi is also called Zhizhe dashi 智者大师.

[38] Text unclear, 2a3.

[39] This speaks to Guandi / Guan Yu / Guan Yun Chang's wide range of roles in China. From the internet, with a similar story of Guan Yu, but with very different contexts; compare with Duara's version, and the present Tibetan version. "In Chinese Bud-dhism, Guan Yu is revered by most practising Buddhists as Sangharama Bodhi-sattva (simplified Chinese: 伽蓝菩萨; traditional Chinese: 伽藍菩薩,; pinyin: Qíelán Púsà) a heavenly protector of the Buddhist dharma. . . . The term Sangharama also refer to the dharmapala class of devas and spirits assigned to guard the Buddhist monastery, the dharma, and the faith itself. Over time and as an act of syncretism, Guan Yu was seen as the representative guardian of the temple and the garden in which it stands. His statue traditionally is situated in the far left of the main altar, opposite his counterpart Skanda. According to Buddhist legends, in 592, Guan Yu manifested himself one night before the Zen master Zhiyi, the founder of the

In that way (*de lta bu'i*) this very great emperor (*rgyal po chen po*) is of the same mind (*thugs rgyud*) as Begtse Chamsing (*beg tse lcam sring*).[40] In ancient (*sngon gyi yig rnying rnams su*) accounts it is said that "he was a Chinese demon (*dam sri*)," and that Begtse is red colored. His weapons include a scorpion-shaped lance (*ral gri'i yu pa*) and others as in the ancient histories. These are the spoken words of Lālitavajra, our excellent leader, the Lord protector of the teaching (*'khor lo'i mgon po*), who translated it 'into modern Indian language'."

Then, on the way to U and Tsang in Tibet, he stayed at the approach to that place [mentioned] above. One day (*zhag mdzad pa'i tshe*), in a dream, a huge red man appeared. He said "The peak of this mountain is my home. I will lead you there." Taking one step he arrived at that mountain peak. He saw a beautiful house in the middle of many unbelievable ones (*chog mi shes*). He was offered all different kinds of food and drink. He said [introduced] "This is my daughter and son," and many came to meet and greet him. From here on down is the country of China. "I am the owner of all of this, from the center to the borders. I also have lots of donors of food and drink in Tibet. In particular, there is a great old being (*bla chen*) in Tsang who continuously offers food. He will come here to meet you and will be your guide. Briefly, he is the chief of our donors. He will protect and shelter you from any unexpected harm. Your longevity, merit, prosperity, and possessions (*yegs tshogs*) will increase. Your old friends and good deeds will not decline over time."

> Give praise and increase your good deeds in this way.
> You, Conqueror, with your retinue, who controls the demons of the three realms
> Today, go [return] to wherever you live.

Tiantai school of Buddhism, along with a retinue of spiritual beings. Zhiyi was then in deep meditation on Yuquan Hill (玉泉山) when he was distracted by Guan Yu's presence. Guan Yu then requested the master to teach him about the dharma. After receiving Buddhist teachings from the master, Guan Yu took refuge in the triple gems and also requested the Five Precepts. Henceforth, it is said that Guan Yu made a vow to become a guardian of temples and the dharma. Legends also claim that Guan Yu assisted Zhiyi in the construction of the Yuquan Temple (玉泉寺), which still stands today." http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ Guan_Yu (accessed 26 December 2014).

[40] For a brief mention, and extended analysis of the phenomenon of deities like and including Beg tse lcam sring as non-Buddhist deities, see José I. Cabezón (ed.), "Introduction," in *Tibetan Ritual*, (Oxford University Press, 2009), 10, 1-34, passim. Beg tse lcam sring has a Mongolian connection, but perhaps Indian origins. As above, it is related to Hayagrīva, and to the Dge lugs pa order. From the many sources see for example http://huntingtonarchive.osu.edu/Exhibitions/sama/ Essays/C95.013Begtse.html (accessed 27 December 2014).

Then, whenever I call you forth as guests, come quickly without delay and
Carry out good deeds.

Saying that, praise their departure and ornament the ending with these good luck verses. Recite:

The leader of all atmospheric demons, divinities, spirits, aggressive demons
The divinity diligent in practice, like protecting a child.
[Is like] a butcher who cuts to the heart of enemies of the teachings

This liturgy for generating the happiness of Guan Yun Chang is based on valid (*tshad ma*) oral instructions, and on histories. And, there is no contradiction with the techniques for invoking divinities and guardians by excellent ancient ones (*sngon*). I think that there are no mistakes. However, these days there are some extremists *(dpang gyur skye bo zad)* who disagree. There are incorrect practices of Buddhism everywhere. Therefore, it is like scolding a blind person (*dmus long mig ldan 'phya ba bzhin*). Let those who delight in senseless banter do what makes them happy.

"Ethical behavior [like] tens of thousands of sun rays
The Buddhist teachings spread into a garden of white lotuses.
Happiness is an unceasing honey[-sweet] festival
Embodied beings, bees and others; come and play!"

This great protector of the teachings who rules in this powerful country is known as Emperor Long Cloud, who conquers the demons in the three realms. This method for invoking and worshipping him is titled "Thunder that calls down a deluge of good deeds." These days, the engagement between most people and the wisdom deities, who protect the teachings, has deteriorated. From this, at this time, for every (re la? Unclear text, 6b1) spirit (*mi ma yin*) and malevolent being (*gdug pa can*), lamas, places of refuge more precious than jewels, have increased [works] like this. This is to be avoided (*dgag bya che na'ang*), but because it was requested by some interested persons, and for some other reasons, the one called [Thu'u bkwan] Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma, composed [this]. [He] is the one who was titled by order of his excellency, the authentic, wise [Qianlong Emperor][41] as "Tuken: Pure, Wise

---

[41] The titles given to the Jamyang Zhepas and others by the Manchus were rather indiscriminate. See for some of the many examples Erdeni nominhan (Dharma king) to the first, Jamyang hu tuk tu (Emanantion Body), nominhan (dharmarāja) and jasagh to the second, Samati pakṣi (a Sanskrit term) to the third, see Ngag

Master of Meditation" (*rnam dag bslab ldan bsam gtan gyi slob dpon*, 靜修禪師 *jing xiu chan shi* Thu'u bkwan Hu thog thu),"[42] an honorable figure who has travelled far. He composed this in the Garden of Solitude [at] Dechen Rabgye Ling (*dben pa'i dga' tshal bde chen rab rgyas gling*).

Best wishes to all.

The Way to Invoke [Guan Yun Chang]

I bow to all teachers.

When one is worshipping and offering to Emperor Long Cloud and wants to offer a libation, put powder of precious medical seeds into alcoholic spirits (*chang rgod kyi nying khu*). Pour it into an offering cup and put it in front of you. From BHRUM there are large vessels of gold, silver, and so on. A person with the five qualities (*yon tan*)[43] for offering a libation of nectar conferred (*byin brlabs*) with three vajras becomes capable of satisfying guest [deities].

OM AH HUM (Recite three times)

Then, taking the cup in your hand [recite]:

KYAI!

Once, long ago, there was an imperial general. Because of karma and conditions he became a powerful spirit. At that time he realized the ultimate (*chos nyid mngon gyur pa*) and in front of the Hwa shang master Master Zhiyi he promised to protect the teachings. His name is Emperor Long Cloud, a warrior deity (*dgra lha*) of the local protectors (*sa*

---

dbang thub bstan rgya mtsho,*'Jam dbyangs bzhad pa gsum pa'i rnam thar*, 270-271. For the Second 'Jam dbyangs bzhad pa, see Gung thang bstan pa'i sgron me, *'Jam dbyangs bzhad pa gnyis pa'i rnam thar*, 137 (jasagh), 138 (nominhan). Gung thang bstan pa'i sgron me, *Kun mkhyen 'jam dbyangs bzhad pa sku 'phreng gnyis pa rje 'jigs med dbang po'i rnam thar* (Lanzhou: Gansu Minorities Publishing House, 1990). See Grupper, "Manchu Patronage and Tibetan Buddhism during the First Half of the Ch'ing Dynasty," 66n15.

[42] *Rnam dag bslab ldan bsam gtan gyi slob dpon*, 靜修禪師 *jing xiu chan shi*, 6b2-3. The quotation: *gnam bskos 'jam dbyangs gong ma chen po'i bka'i lung gis jing zi'u Chan shi Thu'u bkwan Hu thog thu zhes rnam dag bslab ldan bsam gtan gyi slob dpon du bsngags pas mthar 'khyams pa'i btsun gzugs*. *Huthuk tu* means *sprul sku, nirmanakaya* but is here used for *slob dpon*.

[43] Five qualities for offering, in one rendering: Buddhafields, celestial palaces, pure rays of light, thrones, enjoyment.

skyong). His powerful emanations are all pervasive; he controls the entire country of China. His many emanations, Rdo rje bdud 'dul chen po, Srog bdag zangs kyi Beg tse can,[44] Rdzong btsan bshan, and so on, protect Tibet and guard the Buddhist teachings.

His religious (*dharma*, *chos*) activities are magnificent; he engages in virtuous activities (*'phrin las sgrub*). He subdues harmful enemies of the teachings and government (*bstan srid*).

He is the Lord, he gives refuge for honor and praise.

KYAI!

"Oh deity, to generate your (*khyod*) happiness, with a faithful attitude I offer this most pure libation, with reverence, and with pleasant, melodious sounds."

This wonderful, excellent libation actuates (*phabs sbyar*) the medical potency in the essence of good fruit. It extracts jewels and gold and releases their potency. The physical strength and luminosity of whoever drinks this will increase. It brings a contented happiness to the heart (*snying la dga' bde'i sim pa ster*). Drinking this wondrous nectar satisfies Kwan Yun Chang, the emperor of the warrior deities, his queen and children, the clan (*tshang*) of Kwan Phing gro'u, and so on. [It also satisfies] the officials, the messengers, the servants, and the divisions of armored and weapons-bearing [soldiers]. This fearsome group of military heroes completely fills the earth and sky.

We offer! We praise! Be content and pleased!

May those who offer this excellent libation, who spread the teachings, and uphold the teachings have stable lives and expand good works. May the leaders of the country guide us to the dharma. In particular, when I and our community hope and are confident, please don't turn your good works away from whatever undeceiving friends think of, according to their wishes.

Saying that, pour the libation and play music.

Further, this narrative (*zhes pa*), was given in the presence of the faithful Khalka Jinong Beisi, at Jis bu, in the country (*yul*) of Kwachu. It was requested by Dar han Chos rje Ye shes grags pa bzang po and written

---

44   For images and general descriptions of Beg tse chen, see http://www. himalayanart.org/image.cfm/484.html; http://www.himalayanart.org/search/_set.cfm?setID=3013; http://www.himalayanart.org/search/set.cfm?setID=137. (Most recently accessed 11 January 2015).

down by Ku swa yi [UNCLEAR] Dharmavajra. The scribe was Ngag dbang phun tshogs.

References

Blo bzang tshul khrims, Cha har dge bshes blo bzang tshul khrims (Cha phring 'jang gsar bstan 'dzin). "Bkwan lo ye'i gsol mchod 'dod don kun stsol (na)." ["Bstan srung rgyal po chen po bkwan lo ye'i gsol mchod 'dod don kun stsol"]. In *Gsung 'bum, Blo bzang tshul khrims*. TBRC W23726. 6: 219-238. Sku 'bum byams pa gling, 2002. http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O2CZ5408|O2CZ54082CZ5704$W23726.

Blo bzang tshul khrims. "Bkwan lo ye la gser skyems 'bul tshul 'dod rgu 'gugs pa'i lcags dkyu (na phyi ma)." ["Dbang phyogs tsi na'i yul gyi dgra lha'i rgyal chen bkwan lo ye la gser skyems 'bul tshul 'dod rgu 'gugs pa'i lcags dkyu"]. In *Gsung 'bum, Blo bzang tshul khrims*. TBRC W23726. 6: 239-244. Sku 'bum byams pa gling, 2002.

Blo bzang tshul khrims. "Dgra lha'i gsol mchod 'dod dgu'i char 'bebs (pa)." In *Gsung 'bum, Blo bzang tshul khrims*. TBRC W23726. 6: 245-270. Sku 'bum byams pa gling, 2002. http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O2CZ5408|O2CZ54082CZ5706$W23726.

Bold, Bat-Ochir. *Mongolian Nomadic Society: A Reconstruction of the 'Medieval' History of Mongolia*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 2001.

Brown, Peter. "The Silk Road in Late Antiquity," in *Reconfiguring the Silk Road: New Research on East-West Exchange in Antiquity*, ed. Victor H. Mair & Jane Hickman. 15-22. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2014.

Buffetrille, Katia. "Le jeu rituel musical (*glu/klu rol*) du village de Sog ru (Reb gong) en A mdo)." *Études mongoles et sibériennes, centrasiatiques et tibétaines* 35 (2004): 1-23.

Buffetrille, Katia. "Reflections on Pilgrimages to Sacred Mountains, Lakes and Caves." In *Pilgrimage in Tibet*. Edited by Alex McKay, 18-34. Surrey: Curzon Press, 1998.

Buffetrille, Katia. "Some remarks on mediums: The case of the *lha pa* of the musical festival (*glu rol*) of Sog ru (A-mdo)." In *Mediums and Shamans in Central Asia*. Edited by Daniel Berounský, 13-66. Mongolo-Tibetica Pragensia, Volume 1.2, 2008.

Cabezón, José I. "Introduction." In *Tibetan Ritual*. Edited by José I. Cabezón, 1-34. Oxford University Press, 2010.

"Chankya-Rolpai-Dorje" (Lcang skya rol pa'i rdo rje). http://www.treasuryoflives.org/biographies/view/Chankya-Rolpai-Dorje/3141, accessed 17 May 2014.

de Nebesky-Wojkowitz, René. *Oracles and Demons of Tibet: The Cult and Iconography of the Tibetan Protective Deities*. The Hague: Mouton, 1956.

Dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po. "Ma hA tsi na'i yul gyi dgra lha chen po dmag dpon bye ba 'bum gyi sde dpon kwan lo ye gyi mchod gtor/" ["Mthu stobs kyi mnga' bdag ma hA tsi na'i yul gyi dgra lha chen po dmag dpon bye ba 'bum gyi sde dpon kwan lo ye gyi mchod gtor/]. In *Gsung 'bum, Dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po*. (Bla brang par ma), 683-687, Volume 10 of Work W1KG9560. Location: ff. 21b-23b (pp.672-676). TBRC W1KG9560. New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1971. http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O4CZ28036|O4CZ280364CZ298014CZ298 43$W1KG9560

Dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po. *Collected Works of Kun mkhyen dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po*. Labrang edition, Vol. *tha*, no. 60, fols. 1a-98a. New Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1971.

Dreyfus, Georges. "Proto-nationalism in Tibet." In *Tibetan Studies: Proceedings of the 6th Seminar of the International Association of Tibetan Studies, Fagernes 1992*. Edited by P. Kvaerne, 205-218. Oslo: Institute for Comparative Research, 1994.

Duara, Prasenjit. "Superscribing Symbols: The Myth of Guandi, Chinese God of War." *The Journal of Asian Studies*, 47.4 (Nov., 1988): 778-795.

Epstein, Lawrence and Peng Wenbin, "Ritual, Ethnicity, and Generational Identity." In *Buddhism in Contemporary Tibet: Religious Revival and Cultural Identity*. Edited by Melvyn C. Goldstein and Matthew T. Kapstein, 120-138. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998.

Grupper, Samuel M. "Manchu Patronage and Tibetan Buddhism during the First Half of the Ch'ing Dynasty," *Journal of the Tibet Society* 4 (1984): 66n15; 47-75.

"Guan Yu." http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Guan_Yu#General_worship, accessed 17 May 2014.

"Guandi." *Encyclopædia Britannica Online*, s. v. "Guandi," accessed April 23, 2014, http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/324162/Guandi.

Gung thang bstan pa'i sgron me. *Kun mkhyen 'jam dbyangs bzhad pa sku 'phreng gnyis pa rje 'jigs med dbang po'i rnam thar*. Lanzhou: Gansu Minorities Publishing House, 1990.

Hansen, Mette Halskov. *Frontier People: Han Settlers in Minority Areas of China*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 2005.

'Jigs med phrin las rgya mtsho. *Zhwa ser ring lugs pa skal bzang thub bstan dbang phyug gi rtogs pa brjod pa rin chen phreng ba*, 2 vols. Labrang Monastery reprint, 1916.

Kelsang Norbu. "The A mdo Tibetan Rdo sbis *lab tse* Ritual." *Asian Highlands Perspectives* 10 (2011): 9-40.

Kun mkhyen dkon mchog 'jigs med dbang po. *Kun mkhyen 'jam dbyangs bzhad pa'i rnam thar*. Lanzhou: Gansu People's Publishing House, 1991.

Lcang skya Rol pa'i rdo rje. "Kwan lo ye'i gsol mchod." In *Gsung 'bum, Rol pa'i rdo rje*. TBRC W28833. 5: 473 - 476. Beijing: Krung go bod brgyud mtho rim nang bstan slob gling nang bstan zhib 'jug khang, 1995. http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O00PD107753|O00PD1077537934$W28833.

Li An-che, "Our Pilgrimage to a Tibetan Sacred Mountain," *Asian Horizon* 2 (Summer, 1949): 39-48.

Martin, Dan. "'Ol-mo-lung-ring, the Original Holy Place." In *Sacred Spaces and Powerful Places In Tibetan Culture: A Collection of Essays*. Edited by Toni Huber, 258-304. Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1999.

Mkhar rtse rgyal. *'Jig rten mchod bstod: Mdo smad Reb gong yul gyi drug pa'i lha zla chen mo'i mchod pa dang 'brel ba'i dmangs srol rig gnas lo rgyus skor gyi zhib 'jug*. Beijing: Krung go'i bod rig pa dpe skrung khang, 2009.

Ngag dbang thub bstan rgya mtsho. *Kun mkhyen 'jam dbyangs bzhad pa sku phreng gsum pa'i rnam thar.* Beijing: Chinese Tibetology Publishing House, 1991.

Nietupski, Paul K. "Understanding Sovereignty in Amdo." In *Trails of the Tibetan Tradition: Papers for Elliot Sperling*. Edited by Roberto Vitali, with assistance from Gedun Rabsal and Nicole Willock, 217-232. Dharamshala (H.P.), India: Amnye Machen Institute, 2014. http://himalaya.socanth.cam.ac.uk/collections/journals/ret/pdf/ret_31_15.pdf.

Nietupski, Paul K. "Labrang Monastery's Jamyang Zhepa Invokes Protective Deities." In *Sources of Tibetan Tradition*. Edited by Kurtis R. Schaeffer, Matthew T. Kapstein, and Gray Tuttle, 600-604. New York: Columbia University Press, 2013.

Nietupski, Paul K. "Nationalism in Labrang, Amdo: Apa Alo/Huang Zhengqing." In *Studies in the History of Eastern Tibet. [PIATS 2006: Proceedings of the Eleventh Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies. Königswinter 2006.]*. Edited by Wim van Spengen & Lama Jabb, 179-208. Halle: International Institute for Tibetan and Buddhist Studies GmbH, 2010.

Nietupski, Paul K. "Understanding Religion and Politics in A mdo: The Sde khri Estate at Bla brang Monastery." In *Monastic and Lay Traditions in North-Eastern Tibet*. Edited by Yangdon Dhondup, Ulrich Pagel and Geoffrey Samuel, 67-86. Leiden: Brill, 2013.

Nietupski, Paul K. *Labrang Monastery: A Tibetan Buddhist Community on the Inner Asian Borderlands1709-1958*. Lexington/Rowman & Littlefield, 2011.

Rawski, Evelyn S. *The Last Emperors: A Social History of Qing Imperial Institutions*.

Rock, Joseph F. *The Amnye Ma-chhen Range and Adjacent Regions: A Monographic Study*. Rome: Is.M.E.O., 1956, map sheets.

Samuel, Geoffrey. *Civilized Shamans: Buddhism in Tibetan Societies*. Washington: Smithsonian Institution Press, 1993.

Sneath, David (ed). *Imperial Statecraft: Political Forms and Techniques of Governance in Inner Asia, Sixth-Twentieth Centuries*. Bellingham: Western Washington University Center for East Asian Studies, 2006.

Sneath, David. *The Headless State: Aristocratic Orders, Kinship Society, & Misrepresentations of Nomadic Inner Asia*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2007.

Stein, R.A. *Grottes-Matrices et Lieux Saints de la Déesse en Asie Orientale*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1988.

Thu'u kwan Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma. "Rgyal chen bkwan yun chang gi lo rgyus dang gsol mchod bya tshul 'phrin las char rgyun bskul ba'i 'brug sgra" ["Khams gsum bdud 'dul rgyal chen bkwan yun chang gi lo rgyus dang gsol mchod bya tshul 'phrin las char rgyun bskul ba'i 'brug sgra"]. In *Gsung 'bum, Blo bzang chos kyi nyi ma*. Lhasa: Zhol par khang gsar pa, 2000. Volume 5 (ca), ff 783-796. Work W21507. http://tbrc.org/link?RID=O00CHZ0102865|O00CHZ01028652870$W21507.

Tuttle, Gray. *Tibetan Buddhists in the Making of Modern China*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2005.

Waugh, Daniel C. "The Silk Roads in History." *Expedition* 52.3 (2010): 9-22.

Yeh, Emily T. 2008. "Living together in Lhasa: Ethnic relations, coercive amity, and subaltern cosmopolitanism." In *The Other Global City*. Edited by Shail Mayaram, 54-85. Routledge, 2008.

❖

A collection of Spiti songs sung
at village festivals and private gatherings

Veronika Hein
(Solothurn)

he following five songs have been recorded on various occasions in different villages of central and lower Spiti, Himachal Pradesh (India) and transcribed with the help of the local singers on the one hand and my long-term assistant and interpreter Sonam Tsering from Tabo on the other hand.

The five songs presented here are all very well known in the villages of Spiti and are therefore often sung at dances (the two *shabro, ɕɑ̱brō,* WT *zhabs bro*[1]) or at informal gatherings in private houses (the sitting songs, *de̱tlū,* WT *bsdad glu*). What links them is the theme of material wealth which is either collected as symbols of the religious path or offered to the lama or god in order to follow the *dharma.* The natural beauty of the Himalayan environment is also seen as wealth that makes all the sentient being happy.

1. Shabro: Dzambulingna

Recorded at Tabo (April 2002) and Po (October 2009)[2]

The first *shabro* presented here might well be the most popular *shabro* song in the villages of lower Spiti. It is a simple counting song[3] that enumerates a precious substance in each of its four stanzas. It is set in the human world and is about material wealth on a concrete level.

dzɑ̱mbūlīŋna tɕīi pɑ̱ŋdzɵ̄t jɵ̱t *dzɑ̱mbūlīŋna sēri pɑ̱ŋdzɵ̄t jɵ̱t*	In the human world what is there a storeroom of? In the world there is a store of gold.

---

[1] In this article the text given in IPA renders the spoken Tibetan dialect of central and lower Spiti, some special terms or names are also given in their Written Tibetan form (WT).

[2] All the recordings have been put into the Phonogramme Archive of the Austrian Academy of Sciences in Vienna.

[3] Cf. Hein, Veronika. 2011.

sērte tei̯ sērŋō māɕena *sērtāŋ rān ɲīːla ndzo̱lsō⁴ jo̱t*	If you do not recognize the gold of that one, between gold and brass there can be a mistake.
dza̱mbūlīŋna tɕīi pa̱ŋdzōt jo̱t *dza̱mbūlīŋna mūli pa̱ŋdzōt jo̱t* *mūlte tei̯ mūlŋō māɕena* *mūldāŋ sīsō ɲīːla ndzo̱lsō jo̱t*	In the world what is there a storeroom of? In the world there is a store of silver. If you do not recognize the silver of that one, between silver and aluminium there can be a mistake.
dza̱mbūlīŋna tɕīi pa̱ŋdzōt jo̱t *dza̱mbūlīŋna jūi pa̱ŋdzōt jo̱t* *jū ta̱ŋ tei̯ jūŋō māɕena* *jūdāŋ to̱wār ɲīːla ndzo̱lsō jo̱t*	In the world what is there a storeroom of? In the world there is a store of turquoise. If you cannot recognize real turquoise, between real and false turquoise there can be a mistake.
dza̱mbūlīŋna tɕīi pa̱ŋdzōt jo̱t *dza̱mbūlīŋna tu̱ŋki pa̱ŋdzōt jo̱t* *tu̱ŋte tei̯ tu̱ŋō māɕena* *tu̱ŋtāŋ pa̱sō ɲīːla ndzo̱lsō jo̱t*	In the world what is there a storeroom of? In the world there is a store of conch shell If you cannot recognize conch shell between conch and ivory there can be a mistake.

Chart 1: First shabro song.

The first precious substance mentioned is of course gold. Gold is very rare in Spiti. It is used in some women's necklaces (in the form of beads) together with coral and turquoise. Otherwise gold is mainly worn in small jewelry such as finger rings.

Gold is so precious that people are warned in the song not to mix it up with brass, which is much more common and cheaper. It is used for plates, vases and jugs.

The second precious substance is silver. Silver is very common in Spiti for head and breast jewelry of the women. But also the men wore amulet boxes made of silver in the old days. Although silver is more affordable than gold, there is also a warning, not to mistake aluminium for more expensive silver. Aluminium is commonly used for cooking pots, ladles and spoons.

The third precious substance is turquoise. This mineral is first of all used in the head ornaments of the women (*pe̱rāk,* WT *be rag?*), but also in necklaces and rings of both men and women. The false turquoise which the text warns of is probably just a cheap quality of turquoise sometimes used in jewelry.

The fourth precious substance is conch shell. This substance was

---

⁴   In Tabo *no̱rsō* is used instead.

also used for ornaments in the old days as it can still be found as part of the costumes of the *Buchen*[5] (*puṯcēn*, WT *bu chen*), the religious performers of Pin Valley / Spiti. What is interesting in this stanza is the fact that the substance mentioned as an alternative that should not be mixed up with conch shell is ivory. In western materialistic understanding ivory is more valuable than conch shell. That is why the symbolic meaning of conch must be taken into account. And then, in the Tibetan Buddhist context, conch is the really precious substance, because the conch is one of the eight auspicious symbols. As a wind instrument it is blown at the monastery to call the people or as a signal to the gods at certain moments of a ritual performed by the monks.

The last stanza shows most clearly the fusion of material and symbolic significance of the substances mentioned in the song. Looking at the song as a whole, it starts with the most valuable substance in terms of material value and it ends with the most precious substance in terms of spiritual or religious importance.

2. Sitting song 1: Hangpa Dela

This song was recorded and worked on several times:
    — in Tabo with Ane Thimet and Ane Phuntsok Dolma (2002),
    — in Dhankar in 2003 with a comment by the local singers,
    — in Po in 2009 and in Solothurn with Sonam Tsering in February 2011.

The song of Hangpa Dela is a sitting song (*deṯlū*, WT *bsdad glu*). Hangpa Dela is a local young man from Hango, a village in the Hangrang Valley of upper Kinnaur, on the western side of the Spiti River near Liu.

The young man in the song has been given everything he needs for a good life of a family man, but he is more inclined towards a religious life and wants to leave all the worldly wealth and pleasures in order to follow the *dharma*.

There are a number of parallels between this local sitting song and a similar song about the girl Naksa Oebum[6].

The beginnings are different, though. In *Hangpa Dela* the situation and beauty of Hango village is praised. It is situated high up in the mountains, well protected by the local deity and rich in sunlight, clear water and young people.

In this place full of natural beauty, the boy Dela sees a white cer-

---

[5]   Cf. Christiane Kalantari's work on the materials used for the costumes of the *Buchen* of Pin Valley.
[6]   The Naksa Oebum song is another Spiti song sung by the *Buchen*, who also perform a play of the same title.

emonial scarf (*kʰātāk*, WT *kha btags*) in his dream. He reads this as an auspicious sign that he should not settle down as a householder but follow the *dharma.* And he is well equipped for a life away from home, the strong boy with 35 arrows, putting the rope around his waist, getting ready to leave.

The song then enumerates all the gifts the parents give to their boy: a bride, lots of dowry, white conch ornaments, a rich house full of barley, a strong and healthy white horse.

But Dela puts all the presents aside and only whishes that the horse may carry him away to the place where his heart wants to go, to the *dharma.*

ɲi̱mā ɕērnai ɕāra *ɕēri ṯǭndzām ɲi̱mā* *ɲi̱mī ø̱sēr lāmō* *jṵli tsēla ɕērdzuŋ* *ɲi̱mī ø̱sēr lāmō* *hāŋkār tsēla ɕērdzuŋ*	The sun, which rises from the east The pleasant sun The beautiful light of the sun It rises on the top of the village The beautiful light of the sun It rises on the top of Hango.
jṵli pʰūru zṵːwa *jṵli jṵlsā ɲēnpō* *hāŋkār pʰūru zṵːwa* *jṵli jṵlsā ɲēnpō* *jṵldzūŋ tākɕēr dzǭnpā* *lāi dzuŋcōŋ za̱t tɕīk*	The one who lives at the top of the village Is our very happy protector The one who lives at the top of our beautiful Hango Is our very happy protector The strong youths of the village They may get the protection of the deity.
jṵli dɥntu ɟṵwa *tɕʰūmō jērtɕʰū ta̱ŋ ka̱ŋtɕʰū* *hāŋkār dɥntu ɟṵwa* *tɕʰūmō jērtɕʰū ta̱ŋ ka̱ŋtɕʰū* *jṵli tākɕēr dzǭnpā* *sāɲi sīŋtɕʰū ji̱n* *jṵli tākɕēr dzǭnpā* *cēmi cēmtɕʰū ji̱n*	What is flowing in front of the village Is the water of summer and snow mountain What is flowing in front of Hango Is the water of summer and snow mountain The youth of the village – Is completely purified water The youth of the village – It is like offering water.
tsʰān sūm ɲāli mīklām *kʰātāk kārwō mīːjoŋ* *pu̱tsā tɕʰø̱ːla d̪ǫwi* *za̱ɲi za̱ŋtā ji̱nd̪o* *de̱la tɕʰø̱ːla d̪ǫwi* *za̱ɲi za̱ŋtā ji̱nd̪o*	In my night's sleeping dream I saw a white ceremonial scarf For the boy going to the *dharma* It might be an auspicious sign For Dela going to the *dharma* It might be an auspicious sign.

pu̱tsā tɕʰāktu nāma *da̱mūi sūmtɕū sōŋā* *cētla sātāk nāmkēn* *pu̱tsā ŋa̱ rāptɛī ji̱n* *cētla sātāk nāmkēn* *de̱la ŋa̱ rāptɛī ji̱n*	The boy holding in his hand Thirty-five arrows The one putting the rope around his waist I am a strong boy The one putting the rope around his waist Dela, I am strong.
pʰāmā ɲī:su sāla *tsʰērōk ma̱ptɕā dzo̱lmō* *dzo̱lmō jēru ɕa̱ktɕe* *pu̱tsā ŋa̱ni tɕʰō̱:la ḏo̱* *dzo̱lmō jōndu ɕa̱ktɕe* *de̱la ŋa̱ni tɕʰō̱:la ḏo̱*	What the parents, the two, offered The beautiful life partner Putting the beautiful one to the right side I, the boy, am going to the *dharma* Putting the beautiful one to the left side I, Dela, am going to the *dharma*.
pʰāmā ɲī:su sāla *pʰōŋte ɹa̱pʰōŋ tōŋpʰōŋ* *tōŋpʰōŋ jēru ɕa̱ktɕe* *pu̱tsā ŋa̱ni tɕʰō̱:la ḏo̱* *ɹa̱pʰōŋ jōndu ɕa̱ktɕe* *de̱la ŋa̱ni tɕʰō̱:la ḏo̱*	What the two parents offered Hundreds and thousands of pieces of dow-ry Keeping the thousands to the right I, the boy, am going to the *dharma* Keeping the hundreds to the left I, Dela, am going to the *dharma*.
pu̱tsī tɕʰāktu nāma *tu̱ɲi tʰēplūŋ kārtɕūŋ* *tʰēplūŋ jēru ɕa̱ktɕe* *pu̱tsā ŋa̱ni tɕʰō̱:la ḏo̱* *tʰēplūŋ jōndu ɕa̱ktɕe* *de̱la ŋa̱ni tɕʰō̱:la ḏo̱*	What the boy is holding in his hand White conch ornaments Keeping the conch ornaments to the right I, the boy, am going to the *dharma*. Keeping the conch ornaments to the left I, Dela, am going to the *dharma*.
ma̱kāŋ cīpzī: du̱ŋɹȳtu *o̱sāl na̱ŋtu zu̱: tɕīk* *gotʰēm tʰēmpā jērntsāk* *sērmō ne̱:si tēmtēm* *lo̱ŋɕōt tɕʰāŋla tɕe̱:cāŋ* *si̱npā ḏu̱la mi̱ndūk*	Inside the great house Please, let the light stay inside! The doorstep where we climb up from the right It is full of golden barley (Even if) you offer a lot of local beer The grain will not finish.
pu̱tsī jāptɕēn sāla *tāwōi wu̱ɕūŋ ɟ̄īŋkār* *pu̱tsā sēmpā ka̱rsāmtu* *lu̱:wō cālṯō nāŋtāŋ* *de̱la sēmpā ka̱rsāmtu*	What the boy's father offered A strong and healthy white horse Wherever the boy's heart goes Please, take the body as well Wherever Dela's, my heart goes

lüːwō cālṭō nāŋtāŋ	Please, take the body as well.

Chart 2: First sitting song.

The song of Hangpa Dela is like a local equivalent to the story of Naksa Oebum, which is well known all over the Tibetan-speaking area. A daughter or a son of devoted parents, who want to give everything to their children to provide for a good future. But the child shows to the world/ the religious community that the most important aim in life is to devote oneself to the religious path and not get distracted by wealth and gifts and not even by well-meaning parents.

3. Sitting song 2: Lari Palkyit Lu

This version of the text was first collected in 2003 at Gyu Village (by Dechen Lundup of Tabo). In 2011 the text was dictated to me and checked in Khar, Pin, by Meme Puchen.

The Lari Palkyit song is about a girl called Palkyit from the village of Lari in lower Spiti. Palkyit's village is praised in the same way as Hango in Hangpa Dela's song above. There is also a connection between the mountains above the village and the local deity residing there.

Then the people in the village are described as having a lot of wealth. And finally, Palkyit herself prays for wealth for the village of her parents and for herself as she has left Lari and moved to Mane (a village higher up in central Spiti) and got married there. But her prayer is for both villages and the people's prosperity and happiness.

ɲimā ɕārna ɕāra	The sun rises in the east
ɕāri ṭǫndzām ɲimā	The pleasant rising sun from the east
ɕārsūm ɕārnai ɕāra	The sun rises from the east
ɕāri ṭǫndzām ɲimā	The pleasant rising sun from the east
jāi nēːɕēn zaŋpō	The pure holy place above
jārāŋ tsēla ɕārdzuŋ	It has risen at the top and above
laɾī kaṃēn ɹaḻmō	The deity Kamen Gyalmo of Lari
pʰōṭāŋ tsēla ɕārdzuŋ	It has risen at the top of (her) palace
jṵli pʰūru zṵkpi	The one who lives at the top of the village
laɾī kaṃēn ɹaḻmō	That is the deity Kamen Gyalmo of Lari.
jṵldzūn tākɕār dzǫnpāla	To the young people of the small village
lāi ṣūŋwā dzǫt	

laɾī tākɛār dzø̄npāla *kaɪnēn goɲcōŋ dzø̄t*	Please, give the deity's protection To the young people of Lari Please, give Kamen's protection.
mātsī tsīkpāru tsīdzuŋ *tsʰīkpōi ɕīldēn tsīdzuŋ* *guŋkār tʰø̄npōi tsʰūɕīŋ* *wo̱: mɛmē tɕīktɕīk* *guŋkār tʰø̄npōi tsʰūɕīŋ* *mɛmē no̱nō tɕīktɕīk* *jу̱ldzūŋ ɻaptsȳn ɻa̱:tāŋ* *sērʈʰāŋ sērpōi ɻɛnsā* *ŋu̱rdzīn jūi tsēpūm* *wo̱: ūmdzēt tɕīk* *ŋu̱rdzīn jūi tsēpūm* *wo̱: tɕaŋdēn tɕīk*	We put up a wall We put up the foundation wall The (tall grown) tree of the high sky You, only one old man The tall tree of the high sky Old man, the king, one only (I am) All the monks of the small village They are the golden wealth What we see as a turquoise vase That is our one *Umdzet*[7] What we see as a turquoise vase That is our one and only Changden.
jу̱ldzūŋ cʰōktōŋ ɻa̱rāŋ *sāŋtɕʰū ka̱ŋki da̱ɪnō* *da̱ɪnō sērla jø̄do̱n* *tsʰēwāŋ da̱ɪndу̱l ɲi̱:wō* *jу̱ldzūŋ cʰīmpā dzo̱mpō* *tɕa̱tɕʰāŋ o̱māi loŋɕø̄t* *laɾī cʰīmpā dzo̱mpō* *tɕa̱tɕʰāŋ o̱māi loŋɕø̄t* *loŋɕø̄t ɻуntɕēt ma̱sāl* *no̱nō tāwī mø̄nlām* *loŋɕø̄t ɻуntɕēt ma̱sāl* *pālcīt tāwī mø̄nlām*	All the young people of the small village Are the arrows of the pure snow mountain water Arrow Serla Yödrön The two of us, Tsewang and Dimdrül The small village's gathered married women (are like) Plentiful tea, beer and milk The gathered married women of Lari like Plentiful tea, beer and milk The plenty should not decrease This is my, the girl's prayer The plenty should not decrease This is my, Palkyit's prayer.
ɲa̱ɪnkā cāŋēn pālcīt *ma̱nē dzuŋla cōtsoŋ* *no̱nō mi̱ jу̱lla do̱la* *sēmpā tu̱ŋdūŋ mi̱gū* *ra̱ŋsēm tu̱ŋdūŋ mi̱gū* *lu̱hār jītla sōl* *no̱nō mi̱ jу̱lla do̱la* *pu̱nōr loŋɕø̄t sōl*	Palkyit, who is enjoying (her life) She went to Mane Village The girl, I go to a village of other people Don't feel bad! You don't feel bad either! Sing in your heart The girl, I am going to a village of other people Please, give the wealth of plenty of sons

---

7   *Umdzet* (WT *dbu mdzad*) is the monk who leads the recitation of prayers.

pālcīt māptɕā dzǫlmōla	To Palkyit, beautiful like a peacock
pu̜nōr loŋɕōt sōl	Please, give the wealth of plenty of sons.

Chart 3: Second sitting song.

In the first stanza the rays of the morning sun light up the mountain above Lari, which is also the dwelling place of Kamen Gyalmo, the local deity of Lari Village. The sun rises on the rock which is her castle. The singer of the song then prays for Kamen Gyalmo's protection of the young people of the village.

The second stanza turns to the village, where the people have put up their houses. The link between the high sky (of the first stanza, the realm of the gods) is formed by the tall tree. The tree represents the old man, the local king. He praises the golden wealth of the village, the most precious element symbolizing the monks. And another precious substance is used to describe the first one of them, the *Umdzet*. He is compared to one of the eight symbols of fortune, the turquoise vase.

In stanza three all the young people of the village are described as arrows, fast like another wealth of the village, the pure water coming from the snow mountains.

Now Palkyit prays for plentiful tea, beer and milk, substances which are meant to represent the wealth of married women.

The final stanza reveals some facts about Palkyit's own life. She tells herself to be happy and keep singing, although she has left Lari, her parents' village, and now lives at Mane with strangers, her husband's family. And beautiful Palkyit finally prays for herself and for the wealth of plenty of sons to make her in-laws happy.

4. Shabro 2: E mola ri (Sipki Angmo)

This song was recorded in October 2009 at Po Village, Spiti.

The next song presented here is a *shabro* whose text follows a different pattern. The structure has been worked on in the publication of festival (namken) songs[8] but there is also a connection with the Naksa Oebum song mentioned above. It is also about a girl and her mother, who are seen in the religious and cultural symbolism of their physical surrounding.

The song consists of six stanzas, each of which shows the girl and her mother in one of the most common natural or cultural settings of their Himalayan environment.

---

[8]   Hein, Veronika (2007) PIATS.

The first stanza sets the girl under the high, blue sky lit by sun and moon. Like this the setting is shown with its cosmic dimension. The second stanza shows the snow mountains as the background for the snowlion to be happy. The snowlion can be seen as the animal that lives in the highest mountains and also represents Tibet. The third stanza mentions the high rocks, where the great vulture lives. The *tɕaɾʝāl gøʈpō* is understood to be the king of birds, the eagle, who dominates the air and the high mountains. In stanza four, the setting is a mountain pasture, where a deer family is grazing happily. In this context the deer might also symbolize the spreading of the *dharma*.
After the general mountain scenery, the last two stanza focus on the human realm. In stanza five, it is the monastery with its assembled monks and in the last stanza it is the festival ground, where the young people of the village gather for dances.
Like this the six parts of the song move from the high sky past the mountains with their animal life to the places of human habitation and set the scene for the girl to be happy and enjoy the dance. So she appears to be well settled in her environment and protected by cosmic and natural forces.

ē: mo̱la ʂī	He!, you, mother's girl
gu̱ŋēn tʰōnpō	At the high blue sky
zi̱:tāŋ āmīla no̱mō	Please, you, mother's girl, have a look.
ē: mo̱la ʂī	
gu̱ŋēn tʰōnpō	He!, you, mother's girl
zi̱:tāŋ ʂīpkī̆ āŋmō	In the high blue sky
gu̱ŋēn tʰōnpōna	Have a look, Princess Angmo.
ɲi̱ldā ɲī:wō tʰōŋwōi	In the high blue sky
tʰōŋsana du̱kpa	The sun and moon, the two
gu̱ŋēn tʰōnpōna	They are where we can see them.
	In the high blue sky
ɲi̱ldā ɲī:wō cītpōi	
cītɕāŋna du̱kpa	The sun and moon, the two, happily
	Enjoying, they are there.
ē: mo̱la ʂī	He!, you, mother's girl
ka̱ŋtøt tʰōnpō	On the high snow mountain
zi̱:tāŋ āmīla no̱mō	Please, you, mother's girl, have a look.
ē: mo̱la ʂī	He!, you, mother's girl
ka̱ŋtøt tʰōnpō	On the high snow mountain
zi̱:tāŋ ʂīpkī āŋmō	Have a look, Shipki Angmo.

---

9   The version known at Tabo says *sērki āŋmō*.

kaŋtǿt tʰǿnpōna *taṟsāŋ kārmō tʰǿŋwōi* *tʰǿŋsana duḳpa* *kaŋtǿt tʰǿnpōna* *taṟsāŋ kārmō cītpōi* *cītɕāŋna duḳpa*	On the high snow mountain The white snow lion He is where we can see him. On the high snow mountain The snow lion is where He can enjoy happily.
ē: moḷa ʂī *ṭaḳtǿt tʰǿnpō* *ziͅːtāŋ āmīla noͅmō* *ē: moḷa ʂī* *ṭaḳtǿt tʰǿnpō* *ziͅːtāŋ ʂīpkī āŋmō* *ṭaḳtǿt tʰǿnpōna* *tɕaṟɹāl gǿṭpō tʰǿŋwōi* *tʰǿŋsana duḳpa* *ṭaḳtǿt tʰǿnpōna* *tɕaṟɹāl gǿṭpō cītpōi* *cītɕāŋna duḳpa*	He!, you, mother's girl On the high rock Please, you, mother's girl, have a look. He!, you, mother's girl On the high rock Have a look, Shipki Angmo. On the high rock The great vulture He is where we can see him. On the high rock The great vulture Is where he can enjoy happily.
ē: moḷa ʂī *pāŋtǿt tʰǿnpō* *ziͅːtāŋ āmīla noͅmō* *ē: moḷa ʂī* *pāŋtǿt tʰǿnpō* *ziͅːtāŋ ʂīpkī āŋmō* *pāŋtǿt tʰǿnpōna* *ɕāwā meͅmēt⁺¹⁰tʰǿŋwōi* *tʰǿŋsana duḳpa* *pāŋtǿt tʰǿnpōna* *ɕāwā meͅmēt cītpōi* *cītɕāŋna duḳpa*	He!, you, mother's girl On the high mountain pasture Please, you, mother's girl, have a look. He!, you, mother's girl On the high mountain pasture Have a look, Shipki Angmo. On the high mountain pasture The deer family Is where we can see them. On the high mountain pasture The deer family are Where they can enjoy happily.
ē: moḷa ʂī *goͅndzēn tɕʰēnmō* *ziͅːtāŋ āmīla noͅmō* *ē: moḷa ʂī* *goͅndzēn tɕʰēnmō* *ziͅːtāŋ ʂīpkī āŋmō*	He!, you, mother's girl The great monastery Please, you, mother's girl, have a look. He!, you, mother's girl The great monastery Have a look, Shipki Angmo.

---

[10]   Variation at Tabo: *juͅmō* 'female'.

goṇdzēn tɕʰēnmōna *ʈiptsȳn dzoṃpō tʰōŋwōi* *tʰōŋsana duḳpa* *goṇdzēn tɕʰēnmōna* *ʈiptsȳn dzoṃpō cītpōi* *cītɕāŋna duḳpa*	At the great monastery The assembled monks Are where we can see them. At the great monastery The assembled monks are Where they can enjoy happily.
ē: moḷa ʂī *toŋrā tɕʰēnmō* *ziːtāŋ āmīla noṃō* *ē: moḷa ʂī* *toŋrā tɕʰēnmō* *ziːtāŋ ʂīpkī āŋmō* *toŋrā tɕʰēnmōna* *dzoṇḍō dzoṃpō tʰōŋwōi* *tʰōŋsana duḳpa* *toŋrā tɕʰēnmōna* *dzoṇḍō dzoṃpō cītpōi* *cītɕāŋna duḳpa*	He! you, mother's girl The great performance ground Please, you, mother's girl, have a look. He!, you, mother's girl The great performance ground Have a look, Shipki Angmo. At the great performance ground The assembled youngsters Are where we can see them. At the great performance ground The assembled youngsters are Where they can enjoy happily.

Chart 4: Shabro 2.

5. Sitting song 3: Chhukpo Poloi Lu/ Dhangkar Panma

The third sitting song was also worked on with Meme Puchen of Khar Village in October 2011. Another version of this sitting song was recorded in Po in 2009 and its text transcribed in Tabo with Sonam Tsering and Ane Phuntsok Dolma.

As the title indicates, this sitting song focuses on Dhangkar Village in central Spiti. The former capital of Spiti is situated on a white rock which is compared to a white lotus flower at the beginning. The song is about different parts of Dhangkar. First, at the top, there is the monastery with the lama who guides the people and lights up their path.

In the second stanza there is another well-built house. This is the castle[11] of the local king, who leads the people.

Then there is the house where the brothers and sisters were born. In the second half the song focuses on the eldest sister and her husband, who appears to be like a *Bodhisattva* leading a religious life and helping people on their way.

---

[11]   The name Dhangkar can be understood as White Rock (WT *brag dkar po*) or Rock Fort (WT *brag mkhar*).

The song concludes by linking the two, the eldest sister Dawa Putit and her husband with the sun and moon, who never stay in the same place but go round the world and give light to the human beings. And like sun and moon, we should also go around and on our way spread the *dharma*.

The last stanza, which calls upon people to be like the sun and the moon and go around the world, is a very unusual ending of a song. There are a great number of songs that begin with the sun and the moon circling the earth in the high blue sky. From there the songs normally proceed downward towards the realm of the humans as illustrated in this paper with the first sitting song (Hangpa Dela) and the second *shabro* (E mola ri).

By ending the song with the sun the moon circling the world and the appeal to the people to follow their example the whole place (Dhangkar) is set into the well-established cosmic order and the people put under its laws.

ṭakār pānmī tāŋna *gǫndzūŋ dȩːkār pūŋḍā* *naŋna lāmākun zuː jǫt* *ḍǫwā ḍȩnpī lāmā* *lāmā lōbzāŋkun zuː jǫt* *miṇpā sīli lāmā*	On the top of the lotus flower of the white rock There is a small monastery like a heap of white rice Inside the Lama lives The Lama of all the sentient beings Lama Lobzang lives there The Lama who lights up the darkness.
kʰāte ɕārla ziːwa *raṗsāl gǫ nḍịkpī naŋnai* *ziṇkʰāŋ ɕārla ziːwa* *raṗsāl gǫ nḍịkpī naŋnai* *naŋna pǭnpōkun zuː jǫt* *ŋgǫnāk cōŋwōi pǭnpō* *maḵʰāŋ cīldu cēːwa* *ŋōzāk pūnla zipō* *ɕāpṭā lᶷisī taŋmā* *wǫi ātɕē tɕīktɕīk* *ɕāpṭā lᶷisī taŋmā* *ātɕē ḍạwā puṭīt*	Facing east From well-fitted windows and doors His holy bedroom facing east From well-fitted windows and doors Inside the king lives The king who leads all the people. The ones who were born in the central room We, the four brothers and sisters The one who was born first Is our only elder sister The one who was born first Is our elder sister Dawa Putit.
sēmkār kʰēːwa duŋwā *golṭɕāk ṭʰ̥lki diṇīk*	The very skillful blacksmith, what did he make?

	A key to the magic lock
goltɕāk naɲi zemā	The inside bar of the lock
ātɕē dạwā puɟīt	Is sister Dawa Putit
jāi ʈaŋpōi lātɕʰō:la	To the very true *dharma*
ḍenken ɲuŋdzām duḳpa	There are very few followers.
mị tā ɟuɲī noɾsela	The very precious wealth of the people
ḍenken maŋtsām duḳpa	There are many who follow
cạwō tɕaŋtɕūp sēmpā	The layman *Bodhisattva*
nomō ŋōi mākpā	Is my, the girl's husband
cạwō tɕaŋtɕūp sēmpā	The layman *Bodhisattva*
dạwā ŋōi mākpā	Is my, Dawa's husband.
guŋnām tōŋla zụːwa	The ones who live in the empty sky
ɲimā dạwā ɲīːwō	Are the sun and the moon
kāt tɕīk tsāmla mazụːwa	Do not stay in one place as a word[12]
ndzạɲlīŋ kōrtu cōt tɕīk	Please, come to look after the world!

Chart 5: Sitting song 3.

5. Conclusion

The five texts presented here are all light-hearted songs for happy occasions like dances or family celebrations. They are all in a cheerful mood and encourage the people to celebrate and enjoy the event. But they also create an atmosphere of a well organized order, in which the people can feel protected and safe in their natural and social environment. An additional dimension comes in with the the Hangpa Dela and the Chhukpo Polo songs. They not only describe the setting of human life in the Himalayan environment, but also remind the people of the metaphysical dimension of life and show examples of how the people integrate spiritual values in their lives.

References

Bielmeier, R. *et al.* 2002. *Comparative Dictionary of Tibetan Dialects.* University of Berne. Preprint.

Dollfus, P. 2004. The Great Sons of Thang stong rgyal po: The Bu

---

[12] People should really go round and spread the *dharma* like the sun and the moon, which circle the world and give light to us. (Sonam, oral communication, 9/2/2012).

chen of the Pin valley, Spiti. In *The Tibet Journal* XXIX (1), 9-32.

Hein, V. 2007. A Preliminary Analysis of some Songs in Tibetan Language Recorded in Spiti and Upper Kinnaur. *In* D. Klimburg-Salter, K. Tropper, C. Jahoda (eds) *Text, Image and Song in Transdisciplinary Dialogue.* PIATS 2003. Brill's Tibetan Studies Library, Vol. 10/7. Leiden-Boston-Köln: Brill, 235-47.

_____2011. Oral and Festival Traditions of Western Tibet. A first look at some counting and alphabet songs from Spiti. *In* Jahrbuch 2 des Phonogrammarchivs der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Göttingen: Cuvillier, 42-51.

Jäschke, H.A. 1992 (1881). *A Tibetan English Dictionary: with Special Reference to the prevailing Dialects.* Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.

Kalantari C. 2010. Attired for the Blessing: Carpets, Textiles and Costumes of the Buddhist Buchen performances in Pin-Valley – A comparative study with Buddhist rituals and wall- paintings in Historical Western Tibet. Unpublished paper. IATS Conference, Vancouver.

❖

The Mingled Melody:
Remembering the Tibetan March 10th Uprising [1]

Lama Jabb [2]

> Suffering ages, but can never be forgotten [3]
> Tibetan Proverb

A decade of fierce resistance and rebellion on the Tibe-tan plateau against the Chinese Communist forces, personnel and ideology culminated in a huge uprising on 10 March 1959 in the Tibetan capital Lhasa.[4] Seasoned Chinese soldiers brought the uprising to a swift end leaving carnage and destruction in its wake. Avoiding death and capture the Dalai Lama managed to escape to India along with around 80,000 Tibetans, thus giving rise to the now global Tibetan exilic presence. This bloody suppression consolidated Chinese power and sealed the fate of Tibet under "the red flag" (*dar dmar*) of the Chinese Communist Party. More than any other date the 10th of March has come to define the modern Tibetan nation. It marks the complete occupation of Tibet and has come to symbolise a national tragedy, but it also stands for national unity, resistance and survival. Since 1960, March 10th has been unfailingly observed as the Tibetan National Uprising Day in Tibetan exile commu-

---

[1] This essay is dedicated to my late beloved friend and colleague Tsering Dhundup Gonkatsang (1951-2018), a passionate lover and teacher of Tibetan language and poetry.

[3] *sdug rnying rgyu yod ra brjed rgyu med.*

[4] For a detailed account of the Tibetan national uprising of March 10th 1959 visit the March 10th Memorial website launched by Jamyang Norbu: http://m10memorial.org.

nities around the world. State security measures and the threat of serious reprisals from the Chinese authorities make such commemorations impossible inside Tibet, but March 10th looms large in both political action and poetic language. Even though Tibetans are forbidden to undertake open public commemorations of this date inside Tibet, many observe it both privately and collectively. Groups of people, both large and small, actively remember it by carrying out audacious protests coinciding with the month of March. The large-scale protests of the 1980s and 2008 are obvious illustrations of such commemorative acts.[5] Privately, Tibetans observe the anniversary through a variety of acts, such as lighting butter-lamps, making *bsang* offerings (the popular Tibetan ritual of purification involving fire, incense and foodstuff), visiting holy mountains, sponsoring special prayers and rituals in monasteries or at sacred sites, reciting what could be called their national mantra - *Oṃ maṇi padme hūṃ*, composing and performing songs, and writing poetry.

Obvious references to this highly sensitive date are mostly confined to underground politico-poetic literature. However, more and more there are bold mentions of it in contemporary Tibetan poetry published online and on social media. In this paper, I will present a critically acclaimed and widely circulated commemorative poem by Sangdhor (Seng rdor), a celebrated contemporary Tibetan poet. The poem is known by two titles. When it first appeared on Sangdhor's private literary website, now closed down, it was entitled "The Anniversary and the Melody" (*dus dran dang rol dbyangs*). As it began to circulate via social media it has acquired the more forthright title "March 10th and the Melody" (*gsum pa'i tshes bcu dang rol dbyangs*). Composed in 2010 to mark the 51st anniversary of the Lhasa Uprising, the poem stands out not only because of its daring subject matter but also its style, cadence, image construction, technical excellence and layers of allusion. Through an analysis of these qualities I will show how traditional metric forms, recurrent motifs in classical Tibetan literature and oral traditions, formulaic figurative expressions and religious concepts are used in novel ways in order to convey contemporary political ideas and aspirations. The paper will also offer a brief reflection on the popular reception of the poem in the age of social media. The attraction power of the emotive content embedded within the fine arrangement of words is circulated through both conventional and modern communication technologies, the extent of its reach owing to the rise of the Tibetan language social media. Such internet enabled computer mediated means of communication helps to undermine political authoritarianism as well as orthodox literary views.

---

[5]   On these protests see Schwartz, Ronald D. 1994 and Smith, Warren W. 2010.

The Melody of March 10th

"The Anniversary and the Melody" is a long poem. In order for it to speak to the reader directly, without being diluted by interpretation and contextualisation, I present it here in its entirety at the outset. Having said this, the very medium of translation entails interpretation and inevitably alters the aesthetic and semantic qualities of the text. Shelley goes as far to speak of "the vanity of translation" when he posits: "It were as wise to cast a violet into a crucible that you might discover the formal principle of its colour and odour, as seek to transfuse from one language into another the creations of a poet. The plant must spring again from its seed, or it will bear no fruit—and this is the burthen of the curse of Babel."[6] While taking heed of this notion of the untranslatability of poetry, it is also a simple fact that without the labour of translation there cannot be much poetic communication across cultures divided by languages—let alone any possibility of overcoming the perennial linguistic confusion captured by the Tower of Babel story. Indeed, Tibetan scholars acknowledge the illuminating role of translation in opening one's eyes to a foreign world when they (following Indian classical scholars) reverentially address the accomplished translator as Lotsāwa (*lo tsaA ba*), "the eyes of the world" (*'jig rten mig*). It might be impossible to transport "a certain uniform and harmonious recurrence of sound"[7] within a specific poem in a specific language over into another language. However, it is still possible to communicate some of its sense, tone, imagery, subtleties and general meaning. With this in mind, I suggest that the reader first appreciates the poem on its own, albeit mediated through my translation. The Tibetan text is provided in Appendix One for those who read Tibetan—even with only a rudimentary level one should be able to get a sense of the poem's sheer lyrical beauty, plaintive yet assertive cadence and unique Tibetan sound patterns.

The Anniversary and the Melody[8]

> Tonight is the Tenth of March,
> Right now, Wednesday past midnight.
> This year how many living things will die?
> How many living things of this mountainside will die?

---

[6] Shelley, Percy Bysshe. [1821] 1968: 107-108.

[7] *Ibid*: 107.

[8] The poem is subtitled: "My first representative poem of the Iron Tiger Year". For the Tibetan original see Appendix One. This specific version was downloaded from a highly popular Tibetan WeChat literary forum on 29 April 2015. The name of this forum is left anonymous so as to avoid unwelcome attention.

The story of that time, that place and that month;
The cause of that day, that family and that year.
Roll them into a song of stringed peas scattering,
Roll them into a dance of pulsing minds boiling.

"All the people who come are people who must go;
This perishable world has many a high and a low."
Sing the tune of *Khache Phalu* far into the distance,
From the horizon something bounces back as an echo.

Each and every single goose that solitary flies,
Each and every lone grouse that solitary cries.
Let them be heard in the inner space of our minds,
Let them permeate the utter depth of our minds.

If snow and blizzards swirl and rage, let it be;
If seasonal winds blow and blast, let it be.
Let's meditate upon the boulder of conquering peace,
Upon the thunderbolt boulder of conquering peace.

A band of mist breaks away and journeys to the south,
A band of cloud breaks away and journeys to the north.
That is the offensive attack by the south,
That is the violent suppression by the north.

Something of the mind convulses to the innermost core,
Something of the psyche shakes with myriad motions.
To be beaten in the east and driven to the west is our karma,
To be beaten in the west and driven to the east is our fate.

On the other side of this mountain of a distant land
And on this side of this mountain of a great wilderness,
There is a sacred vow kept with fervent holy tears;
There is a solemn promise kept within choked throats.

"From here over towards the regions where the sun sets,"
Thus is it written in a passage of an early *dharmic* text.
Despair is the circling of vultures with wings flapping,
Defeat is the spreading of *muthak* with tassels flipping.[9]

---

[9]   *Muthak* (*rmu thag*) is a long cord of loosely spun predominantly white wool with tassels running along the entire length of it. *Muthak* has great mythic and symbolic significance and it is believed that it bridges death and afterlife as well as the earth

From somewhere a song surges out with gentle pace,
Gradually it demolishes cells of silence and isolation.
That is the ideal that we can behold;
That is our own great renaissance.

Beneath a thousand layered sheath of flesh and skin
Laughs an innate, natural tune with deep resonance.
Deep within a hundred thousand encased bones and veins
Sobs and sobs a masterful, primordial melody.

What is to be done with these cheekbone tears?
What is to be done with these heated liquids?
Let's reveal them by turning them into sounds!
Let's sing them by changing them into a melody!

That melody is the way that sand flows;
It is the way that sand and dust flow.
The year when the wisdom wings of mountain peaks beat
The torrential flow of sand is the command.

That melody is how one breaks into a gallop;
It is how one leaps and breaks into a gallop.
The year when the *tummo* of mountain peaks burns
Breaking into a wild gallop is the sacred helmet.

That melody is the crunching sound of smashing stones;
It is the crunching sound of smashing plastic and stones.
The year when the manes of mountain peaks stand on end
The crunching smashing of the stones is the strategy.

Now let's practise within the melody,
Let's practise within the measure of the melody.
Let's strike every string of the mind with great force
And strum each note of the psyche with great power.

Now let's train the mind within the melody,
Let's train the mind within the cadence of the melody.
Let's press every spring of the senses with great strength

---

and the sky. Indeed, old Tibetan historical texts often state that some of the earliest Tibetan kings used *muthak* to travel to the heavens after their death thus leaving no corporeal remains. To this day such ropes are stretched out on the ground when performing sky burials for the dead.

And turn each screw of the intellect with great might.

Now let's seek respite within the melody,
Let's seek respite within the harmony of the melody.
Let's wipe clean all the parts and joints of the soul
And wash well each component of the life force.

Now let's write *repa* within the melody,
Let's write thought-provoking *repa*.
Each *repa* is a billion interrogations,
Please strum the guitar and play the flute!

Now let's draw dreams within the melody,
Let's draw dreams swarming with illusions.
Each dream is a billion pistols,
Please strum the guitar and play the flute!

Now let's draw steeds within the melody,
Let's draw cantering steeds with beating hooves.
Each steed is a billion prisoners,
Please strum the guitar and play the flute!

Now let's be immersed within the stream of the melody;
Let's reflect upon each fusion of tunes
Like the process of water flowing into water,
Please strum the guitar and play the flute!

Sometimes bend the upper string and release,
Sometimes loosen the lower string and tighten.
Each and every musical note is anguish,
Each and every vocal tone is sadness.

Recognise every pause of the melody within the mind,
Reveal each activity of the mind through the melody.
Let's call out "mum and dad" from the back of the throat,
Let's weep "kith and kin" from the depths of the vocal cords.

Place your ear against the mat of the melody,
Place it with precision and without wavering.
Ever so gently close the eyelids and slow down,
The seal of our tribe will appear from the flank of the liver.

Rest your head against the ground of the melody,
Rest it with precision and without dreading.

Place your hands on the chest and slow down,
The sword of our tribe will emerge from the side of the bowels.

Seat your body within the depths of the melody,
Seat it with precision and without fretting.
Breathe out at a measured pace and slow down,
The edict of our tribe will come rolling off the lungs.

Thus, having realised the deep imprints of the melody
And having dissolved all obscurations of the tune,
The mango of the bones has gradually ripened.[10]
So, let's sing the distance of fifty years with voice!

Thus, having perfected the liberation paths of the melody
And having extinguished all illusions of the tune,
The knotted rope of the throat has gradually unravelled.
So, let's measure the stretch of fifty years with sound!

Thus, having roamed through the *bardo* of the melody
And having been conceived through the union of the tune,
The joints of the mind have gradually dovetailed,
So, let's utter the reach of fifty years through speech!

A Tibetan proverb tells us that "suffering ages, but can never be for-gotten". This gives distilled utterance to the lasting suffering inflicted by the loss of life. It is specifically referring to grief that changes over time in its sense of immediacy and felt intensity but never goes away. When suffering is collective, within the durability of suffering encap-sulated by the Tibetan proverb lies a potent cohesive force. In his in-fluential lecture *What is a Nation*?, Ernest Renan is acutely aware of this force and states that "suffering in common unifies more than joy does." He goes on to stress: "Where national memories are concerned,

---

[10] In Tibetan dialectics mango (*A mra*) is used as an image for representing four con-trasting conditions of a thing or four logical possibilities known as *mu bzhi*. In Sang-dhor's poem the gradually ripened mango stands for a state of perfect maturation. For instance, (1) a mango could be ripe in the inside but unripe on the outside, or (2) unripe on the inside but ripe on the outside, or (3) unripe both inside and out-side, or (4) ripe both inside and outside. Here the case is the fourth. Bone (*rus*) is highly significant for the formation of Tibetan identity in that one's descent is traced to the bone of an ancestor or ancestors. As such Tibetan terms for family or tribal lineage often feature the word *rus* as in bone: For instance, *rus* (family line-age, clan) *rus pa* (family lineage) *rus rgyud* (ancestry, lineage), *bod kyi rus chen bzhi* (The Four Great Tribes of Tibet). Bone is also a main tester of the strength of a person's character as in *mi ru pa can*—"one who has the bones"—meaning someone who possesses backbone, courage, integrity and loyalty.

griefs are of more value than triumphs, for they impose duties, and require a common effort."[11] The present poem is informed by this unifying potency of collective pain and defeat. It captures, amongst other things, that aspect of nationalism Isaiah Berlin calls the "bent twig" phenomenon, a reaction to wounds or a strong sense of collective humiliation brought on by forms of injustice, oppression and military conquest.[12] The poem bears out this observation, but it also shows that such unifying collective emotions and their remembrance are redoubled and mediated by other cohesive dynamics such as age-old cultural and historical memories, established forms of poetic expression and the present socio-political situation.

The Goose and the Grouse in Mourning

In the famous 1800 preface to the second edition of *Lyrical Ballads* Wordsworth declares: "For all good poetry is the spontaneous overflow of powerful feelings: and though this be true, Poems to which any value can be attached were never produced on any variety of subjects but by a man who, being possessed of more than usual organic sensibility, had also thought long and deeply."[13] For Wordsworth the writing of poetry entails both an extempore dimension and a prolonged conscious meditation. Later on, in the same preface he describes this creative process as "emotion recollected in tranquillity."[14] The fluidity, directness and raw emotive energy of "The Anniversary and the Melody" make it come across as a product of spontaneous inspiration. At the outset, the poem declares: "Tonight is the Tenth of March/ Right now, Wednesday past midnight". During one of our many conversations on Tibetan literature, Sangdhor confirmed that: he had indeed written the poem in one sitting in the small hours of Wednesday morning, 10 March 2010.[15] Such extemporaneity underscores the poet's natural flair and exceptional "organic sensibility".

However, the poem's technical brilliance, verbal intensity, nuanced historical consciousness and heightened political awareness also indicate deliberate contemplation. The poet "thought long and deeply" while processing the initial feelings aroused by the long memory of March 10th for the finished poem.[16] This date of defeat and suffering

---

[11]   Renan, Ernest. [1882] 1990: 19.
[12]   Berlin, Isaiah. 1972: 11-30.
[13]   Wordsworth [1800] 1968: 5.
[14]   *Ibid*: 22.
[15]   Skype conversation, 17 April 2015.
[16]   One of the numerous constituents of this long memory is the annual March 10 Statements delivered by the Dalai Lama between 1961 and 2011. These statements and the speeches that accompanied them on the day were staple material for the

lodged deep within the Tibetan psyche had haunted the poet over a long period of time—leading right up to the midnight moment when it triggered the actual composition of the poem. Although the physical act of writing was spontaneous the powerful feelings, memories and thoughts that fuelled the poetic outburst had long, deep roots in the past. The use of vivid language, imagery, rhythm, cadence and overall musicality add to the pull of patriotism inherent within the poem and widens its appeal to the contemporary Tibetan reader. In spite of this popular appeal and seeming accessibility it is not an easy poem. As it is a poem wrought of passion and reflection one needs to read it several times in order to appreciate its emotional depth, niceties of imagery and its many oral and textual allusions. Each reading seems to peel away one layer of meaning to reveal yet another. There are too many layers and nuances to explore in a single essay but allow me to focus on at least three principal features of the poem.

First and foremost, as I have already pointed out, "The Anniversary and the Melody" is a poem that commemorates a particular historic day of the Lhasa Uprising. The 10th of March has come to be regarded as a singular historic moment, but it is important to be aware of the long-term forces and complex events that gave rise to it. Moreover, history did not stand still but has continued to complicate the Tibetan life ever since that momentous occurrence. This popular revolt was the culmination of armed insurgencies that had greeted the Chinese communist forces and personnel as soon as they set foot on Tibetan soil in the eastern Tibetan regions of Kham and Amdo. The Lhasa uprising met the same brutal fate as the eastern Tibetan rebellions against what Tibetans call "the gun-toting uninvited guests" (*me mda' thogs pa'i ma bos mgron po*)[17] and their sweeping communist reforms that sought to upend traditional Tibetan society and long-established worldviews. For many Tibetans, the military suppression of the Lhasa Uprising marks the complete establishment of Chinese rule over Tibet and thus March 10th symbolises the unprecedented social trauma and political persecution that had preceded it as well as that which followed in its long wake stretching to the present day. Sangdhor is tapping into this historical significance and the distilled symbolism of the day when he begins the poem announcing the specific time of writing:

---

politically conscious Tibetans both inside and outside Tibet. For English translations of these statements see The Dalai Lama 2016.

[17] For instance, the Dalai Lama (i.e. unpublished speeches delivered on 24 December 2002, 7 March 2014) often traces the root of the current Tibetan plight to the arrival of uninvited new guests (*gdan zhu gang yang med pa'i sku mgron gsar pa zhig*) wielding guns (*me mda' khyer nas yong*). Also see Jangbu's subtle poem on this gun-wielding uninvited guest (Ljang bu 2001: 32-33). Heather Stoddard's English translation of this poem can be found in Jangbu 2010: 18.

> Tonight is the Tenth of March,
> Right now, Wednesday past midnight.
> This year how many living things will die?
> How many living things of this mountainside will die?

No attempt is made to conceal such a politically sensitive date in the coded language or metaphorical garb that many Tibetan writers usually employ to fend off Chinese state censorship and serious reprisals. The pregnant significance of the date and precarious moribund existence of the present link the recent past and the here and now in an instant of recollection and contemplation. Conscious observation of the historic date and reflection upon the current situation of Tibet present the Tibetan collective experience under the Chinese rule as a continuum of repression, death and tragedy. From the present moment of the small hours of Wednesday 10 March 2010 the poem jumps back over five decades to recall: "The story of that time, that place and that month; / The cause of that day, that family and that year." These are obvious references to the tragedy that befell the "family" of Tibet on 10 March 1959. Tibetans inside Tibet and China are forbidden to mention this source of many sufferings, including their ongoing plight, let alone relate its story and reflect upon its causes. While many dare not even hint at it, the poet resolves to sing it, and celebrate it. Thus, at the very outset the poem seethes with death, destruction, angst, an active remembrance, and paints a modern Tibetan nation in unending pain.

What also becomes apparent right from the start is that the poem is not merely preoccupied with remembering a single significant date—10 March 1959—and its unaccounted and unmourned casualties. It is a subtle yet fluid narrative poem that channels accounts of historical happenings and the current political situation into its overall torrential flow whilst also communicating the awakening of a new political consciousness. It comingles and simultaneously commemorates the sufferings inflicted upon the Tibetan people over fifty years of colonial rule. The poem was composed two years after the suppression of the 2008 pan-Tibetan uprising that resulted in arrests, political re-education, increased militarisation and heightened surveillance across the Tibetan plateau. [18] For many Tibetans, this nationwide Tibetan rebellion was reminiscent of the 1950s resistance to CCP rule in terms of its

---

[18]   For reports on the crackdown of the 2008 protests see the International Campaign for Tibet (ICT) 2009; Human Rights Watch 2009, 2010; Smith 2010. For audacious contemporary Tibetan accounts of the 2008 protests and their suppression see Shokdung 2016 and the banned 2008 issue of *Shar dung ri* (*The Eastern Snow Mountain*), an acclaimed Tibetan language journal of social and literary criticism (sGrol

sheer intensity, geographical reach and participant diversity, as well as violent reprisals, which included thousands of arrests, and the detention and political re-education and relocation of thousands of monks. Accordingly, Sangdhor's poem records this uprising with allusions to the raw "stone-smashing" protest scenes, interrogations, imprisonments, deaths and the ongoing repercussions in the form of acts of self-immolation.

One historical event segues into another forming a seemingly unbroken chain of tragic happenings. With the referencing of the fiery self-immolations through the appropriation of a profound spiritual practice as a metaphor the poem brings the reader face to face with the grim present. While recalling a past historical event it brings to prominence the living legacy of this particular event by directly linking it to the here and now. As a consequence, for the poet, recent Tibetan history is characterised by unceasing suffering and incessant deaths. This realisation is uttered by a note of anxious foresight in the first stanza of the poem in which the evocative date of March 10th conflates the past and the present and points to a dark future. Macabre historical patterns assure the poet-singer of one thing—that there will be more deaths and destruction to come. It is this certitude born of actual experience and a feeling of resignation to suffering that we can hear in the questions: "This year how many living things will die? / How many living things of this mountainside will die?" "Living things" is the English rendering of the Tibetan term *skye dngos* in its broader sense. It literally means things that grow or regenerate and in its common usage it covers both animals and plants. Here the term carries a broader connotation to subsume under it all things graced with regenerative vigour and life force, including human beings, that grow on or inhabit "this mountainside", that is Tibet. The questions are rooted within the tacit understanding shared by the poet and the reader that many animals, plants and humans have died every single year since 10 March 1959 as a direct outcome of what befell Tibet on that specific day. The emphatic identification of the date is immediately followed by a sombre reflection upon how many "living things" will once again disappear this very year as history repeats itself.

This elegiac poem thus recalls a date of immense historical significance and symbolic power and laments the loss of Tibetan lives and the sufferings inflicted since the 1950s. It does this by taking advantage of Tibet's literary and oral traditions. For instance, it borrows the memorable metre, cadence and wisdom of a famous 18th century text formally entitled *Khache Phalu's Advice on the Observance of Secular Karmic*

---

ma et al. eds. 2008. English translations of excerpts from this journal can be found in the International Campaign for Tibet 2009: 71-105.

Laws (*kha che pha lu'i 'jig rten las 'bras rtsi lugs kyi bslab bya*). Although little is known concerning its authorship, this text is attributed to a certain Khache Phalu. Hence, among both the literati and the general public the work is simply known as *Khache Phalu*.[19] It belongs to the highly popular category of Tibetan literature called *bslab bya*, advice. The advice genre is generally characterised by an astute observation of life in its spiritual and temporal complexities and communication of wise words and counsel with clarity, concision and persuasive poetic force.[20] Apart from the short opening remarks in prose, *Khache Phalu* is written in verse using a very accessible vernacular idiom. It is a lyrical and captivating aphoristic work addressed to the young and old alike. In arresting sound patterns of rhyme and rhythm, it dispenses practical advice on leading a fair, just, contented and thoughtful life without ever having the need to fear the vicissitudes of fortune and impermanence of life. For the Tibetan reader, this borrowing endows "The Anniversary and the Melody" with a familiar lyricism and rhythmic feel and a tone of intimate concern. Sangdhor acknowledges his debt to *Khache Phalu* by citing lines from it verbatim very early on:

> "All the people who come are people who must go;
> This perishable world has many a high and a low."
> Sing the tune of *Khache Phalu* far into the distance,
> From the horizon something bounces back as an echo.

The two lines in quotation marks are extracted from separate sections of *Khache Phalu*. The first line comes out of the ruminations about the impermanent nature of life. Indifferent to social stratification, death the great leveller makes everyone who ventures into this world depart it:

---

[19] Mig dmar (ed.) 1992: *Kha che pha lu*. A very useful edition that takes into account variations between three different versions of the text can be found in Thub bstan sbyin pa AND Blo bzang rdo rje rab gling (eds.) 2006: 371-386; 440-450. In the 1980s the text was further popularised in Eastern Tibet by the famed bard Kalsang Dekpa's (sKal bzang grags pa) recitation of it on radio and cassette tapes. The authorship of the text is not known for sure. Some scholars attribute it to a great Islamic scholar. For instance, following the accounts given by some Tibetan Muslims, Dawa Norbu speculates that the author's second name corresponds to a certain Farzur-alla in the preface to his English translation of *Kha che pha lu* (1987: xii). On the other hand, Horkhang Sonam Palbar attributes it to 'Brong rtse mkhas pa chen po, a famed teacher of the Seventh Panchen Lama (Hor khang bsod nams dpal 'bar 1999: 503-505). For an English translation of the entire text see Dawa Norbu 1987.

[20] See Thub bstan sbyin pa AND Blo bzang rdo rje rab gling (eds.) 2006 for an anthology of such advice texts and an informative introduction to the genre.

> The beggar might be sad but scrapes through life,
> The king might be happy but must die in the end.
> One cannot tell how many have gone already,
> And who can surmise how many are yet to go?
> People come and go, and come and go.
> In essence, all the people who come are people who must go,
> Of this saṃsāric world not a single thing is permanent. [21]

The second quotation is taken from a passage reflecting upon inequality, karmic destiny and contentment. Suffering and happiness are impermanent and unpredictable in nature and diverse in form. They come in incalculable shapes and sizes. Each individual experiences joy and woe differently in terms of their intensity and endurance. It is advised that one should brace oneself for what life throws at one with the means of contentment:

> This perishable world has many a high and a low,
> Joy and woe incalculable in their range and depth.
> As can clearly be seen no single person is like another,
> It's far better for oneself to be contented with this.[22]

These quotations appear to have at least two overall significances. Firstly, they indicate that the poet accepts and underlines *Khache Phalu*'s conclusion that death and suffering are part and parcel of this world and one must embrace them with stoicism. However, the stanzas that immediately precede and follow the quotes make it abundantly clear that we are not dealing with ordinary loss of life and anguish. Nor are they the consequences of inevitable natural causes. When one ponders over the cause and nature of Tibetan suffering it brings something echoing back from the horizon. Deep consideration and recall make one realise that the tragic experience of Tibetans cannot be accepted with the usual wise resignation or be consigned to oblivion. Secondly, the quoted lines draw attention to the stylistic features of the poem itself. They emphatically confirm the conscious absorbance of *Khache Phalu*'s nine syllabic metric pattern, high propen-

---

[21] Mig dmar (ed.) 1992: 6. *sprang po sdug kyang mi tshe 'khyol 'gro lo/ rgyal po skyid kyang tha ma shi 'gro lo/ de snga song pa'i grang ka mi shes 'dug/ da dung 'gro rgyu'i gdeng tshod su yis shes/ yong gin yong gin 'gro gin 'gro gin 'dug/ don du yong mi tshang ma 'gro mi red/ 'khor ba 'di la rtag pa gcig kyang med/.*

[22] Ibid: 16. *'jig rten 'di ru sgang gshong mang zhig 'dug/ skyid sdug ring thung sbom phra grang med red/ 'dra 'dra gcig kyang med pa mthong gsal red/ 'di la chog shes rang gis byas pa dga'/.*

sity for wordplay, alliteration, internal rhyme and a relentlessly forward propelling cadence. Thus "the tune of *Khache Phalu*" is used to discover, fathom and augment a deep melody with which it mingles. *Khache Phalu* serves as the prelude to and the tuneful carrier of that melody bursting forth from the depths of Tibetan history and culture and from the long-running agony of contemporary Tibetans. Communicating the heavy burden of human suffering and a new assertive political spirit, the form and content of the poem become inseparably fused into an integrated whole.

   "The Anniversary and the Melody" also mines Tibetan oral traditions to capture the enormity and intensity of human suffering that immediately ensued from 10 March 1959 and ongoing political repression. For example, it makes use of well-known avian motifs of Tibetan folk culture when invoking extreme anguish and lamentation. From the horizon of memory and forgetfulness "something" bounces back as a response to the awakening "tune of *Khache Phalu*". Within it we witness the lonely flight of widowed birds and hear their piercing, solitary cries. The Tibetan reader is beseeched to immerse their consciousness within this sight and sound of deep sorrow:

> Each and every single goose that solitary flies,
> Each and every lone grouse that solitary cries.
> Let them be heard in the inner space of our minds,
> Let them permeate the utter depth of our minds.

The symbolic power of the "single goose" and "lone grouse" lies in the popular Tibetan belief that these birds are eternally loyal to their mates. Like the swan in European folklore, they are celebrated for fidelity and constancy. It is believed that these birds mate for life and if one is killed the other will remain single and mourn till death. The grouse laments daily by letting out loud heart-rending calls on the mountain-top that reverberate throughout the adjacent valleys. The poem is urging Tibetans, as the bereaved, to emulate the legendary loyalty of these birds and perpetually remember the origins of their lasting collective suffering - the violent suppression of the March 10th Uprising - that widowed and orphaned many a Tibetan.

Gradual Maturation and Political Awakening

This constant remembrance brings to the fore a second prominent feature of the poem: A seemingly inevitable new political awakening. For the poet-singer the Tibetan colonial experience that followed from the 10 March Uprising is characterised by an accumulation of suffering

and misrule over half a century (calculated from the date of composition). The shock and pain engendered by the bloody takeover of Tibet in the 1950s were made even worse by the socio-cultural trauma of the 1960s and the 1970s that was brought about by the destructive policies of the Cultural Revolution. The period of relative cultural freedom in the early 1980s was short-lived. Since the late 1980s, many aspects of Tibetan cultural revival and reassertion of national identity have yet again been subjected to draconian political restrictions. Relentless state control, surveillance and persecution —encapsulated in the poem by the images of "pistols", "interrogations" and "prisoners"—afflict today's Tibet. The absence of basic civil and political rights and the fact that Tibetans have little or no say in the day to day running of their homeland aggravate an already deplorable situation.

"The Anniversary and the Melody" intimates that this colonial experience has an awakening impact upon the Tibetan psyche that leads to political action and realisation. This idea is something very similar to that put forward by the highly acclaimed Tibetan intellectual Shokdung in his vociferous book on the 2008 Tibetan uprising entitled *Separating the Sky and the Earth: On the Peaceful Revolution of the Earth-Mouse Year* (*gnam sa go 'byed/ sa byi zhi ba'i gsar brje la bris pa*).[23] In this renowned volume published in 2009—that put him in detention and earned him many admirers including our poet Sangdhor[24]— Shokdung asserts that years of repression and terror finally gave way to the 2008 Tibet-wide peaceful rebellion. He construes this rebellion itself as the manifestation of a revolutionary political awakening that harkens back to the heroic courage and national consciousness of the Tibetan Empire, as well as feeding on current Tibetan aspirations for freedom, human rights and democracy.[25] In Sangdhor's poem, we learn that although decades of Chinese communist rule, disinformation and indoctrination have made inroads into the Tibetan consciousness, these state endeavours have not managed to produce the desired effect. Despite the material resources and coercive apparatuses at its disposal, the Chinese state has failed to instil total submission, historical amnesia and unthinking conformism among Tibetans.[26] As a

---

[23] Zhogs dung 2009. See Shokdung 2016 for an English translation of the book by Matthew Akester who translates the title as *The Division of Heaven and Earth*.

[24] For Sangdhor's show of admiration see his effusive verse review of Shokdung's book and his poem celebrating Shokdung's prison lease. Both of these poems were first published online on Sangdhor's now closed down literary website on 5 February 2010 and 15 October 2010 respectively. They can be found in printed form in Seng rdor 2011: 103-112, 117-126.

[25] Zhogs dung 2009: 12-30.

[26] Many contemporary Tibetan poetic statements similarly touch on the inability of the Chinese state to bend Tibetans to its will. For example, a very famous Tibetan

result, out of the long colonial subjugation a song surges out, a song propelled by a profound melody:

> From somewhere a song surges out with gentle pace,
> Gradually it demolishes cells of silence and isolation.
> That is the ideal that we can behold;
> That is our own great renaissance.
>
> Beneath a thousand layered sheath of flesh and skin
> Laughs an innate, natural tune with deep resonance.
> Deep within a hundred thousand encased bones and veins
> Sobs and sobs a masterful, primordial melody.

I believe this song is a reference to the protests that rippled across the Tibetan plateau in 2008 calling for justice, freedom, independence, human rights and the return of the Dalai Lama.[27] Hundreds of monks carried out two separate protests on 10 March 2008 in Lhasa to commemorate the 49th anniversary of the 10 March 1959 Uprising and to express dissent against the Chinese rule. Suppression of these and other protests on subsequent days unleashed a wave of large-scale public demonstrations all over Tibet, the likes of which had not been seen since the armed resistances of the 1950s. The uprising met a violent end resulting in mass deaths, torture, imprisonments, displacements and various repressive campaigns. Its magnitude and intensity were only matched by the sheer violence of the Chinese state and the multitude of its draconian measures. Nevertheless, with its audacious expression of deep discontent and its show of resurgent political awareness and agency the 2008 uprising leaves an enduring and unfathomable legacy. It functions like an awakened and awakening song that breaks the state enforced silence and ends the isolation induced both by state repression and citizens' political inaction.

---

hip hop song resists the power of Chinese state and repels the light of its "civilising mission" as follows when they speak for a new generation of Tibetans who came of age under its colonial rule:

> We're the sharp intellect
> Not content with your advice and edicts
> We're the soft darkness
> Not repelled by your light and power
> We're the uproar and retaliation to embitter you
> We're the terror and plague of your life

See Lama Jabb (2018: 101-105) for a commentary on and a translation of the lyrics in its entirely.

[27] For an account and analysis of the 2008 Tibetan uprising and its repercussions see Smith, Warren W (2010) and Tsering Topgyal (2016a: 149-174).

In the poem under review, a profound primordial melody informs and carries this new song and then absorbs it into its long and seemingly infinite sequence. After incorporating the song into its perpetual flow the melody surges on and beyond gathering other distinct notes into its currents on a permeating and enlightening course through the hearts and minds of contemporary Tibetans. Through the employment of specific terms, concepts and images the poem indicates that this suffusive melody is born of Tibetan territory and history, and that it is deepened by Tibetan spiritual traditions, artistic heritage and current socio-political experiences. Suggestive phrases like "living things of this mountainside" (*ri sul 'di yi skye dngos*), "this mountain of a great wilderness" (*bas mtha'i la mo 'di*), and "the mane of mountain peaks" (*ri rtse'i rngog ma*) portray the mountain-enshrined existence of Tibet. "The sacred vow", "command", "sacred helmet" and "the royal seal", "sword", and "edict", (*dbu mna', bka' bda', dbu rmog, rang sde'i rtags tham, dpa' dam, bka' gtsigs*) recall a glorious period of Tibetan history. These are some of the evocative terms associated with the Tibetan imperial power, which extended from India to China and spread across Central Asia during the Eighth and Ninth Centuries.[28]Through the appropriation of such loaded terms the poem is underlining the unifying resonance and the inspirational energy of some of the forces that enabled the Tibetan imperial expansion, i.e., Tibetan solidarity and allegiance (sacred vow or covenant), administrative power (royal seal and edicts) and military might on horseback ("Breaking into a wild gallop is the sacred helmet").[29]

Complex concepts and practices such as karma, unceasing conceptual activities of the mind, primordial mastery, meditation, *tummo*, *bardo* and the perfection of liberation paths and stages (*las dbang, sems kyi 'phro 'du, gnyug ma rtsad grub, sgom, gtum mo, bar do, sa lam rdzogs*

---

[28] On the Tibetan empire and Tibetan military excursions into the Indian Sub-continent, Central Asia and China see van Schaik 2011: 1-50, Kapstein 2006: 51-83. For Tibetan imperial expansions across Inner and Central Asia see Beckwith 2013: 133-41, and 1993.

[29] For another powerful poem of Sangdhor entitled "The Bushy Yaktail" (*rnga rtsid llheb po*) that blends Tibetan imperial imagery and the 2008 uprising see Seng rdor 2011a: 127. On the significant role of oath during the Tibetan empire see Schaeffer, Kurtis R, Matthew T. Kapstein and Gray Tuttle (eds.) 2013: 9, 21-24; Walter, Michael L 2009: 10-13, 49-50, 174-186. For the Tibetan imperial administration see Uebach, Helga 2009: 57-69, 2003: 21-27, Takeuchi, Tsuguhito 2003: 43-54. For a collection of texts on royal edicts see Schaeffer, Kurtis R, Matthew T. Kapstein and Gray Tuttle (eds.) 2013: 57-86. In Sangdhor's poem "the sacred helmet" (*dbu rmog*) is an image for the Tibetan imperial military power and Tibetan martial spirit. It might also carry that symbolic significance attributed to it by Giuseppe Tucci (1955: 200) – "the magic power of the king".

pa) deepen the melody with their allusions to Tibetan religious traditions. These terms, although spiritual in their origin, are consciously invested with secular significance to reference contemporary ideological change and actual political developments on the ground. As already observed, Tibetan artistic heritage courses through and channels the flow of the melody, as exemplified by, *inter alia*, the tune of *Khache Phalu* and the composition of the sublime Tibetan performing art *repa*.[30] Indeed, it is guitar and flute (*pi Wang, gling bu*), ubiquitous traditional instruments, that Tibetans are beseeched to play in order to sing out their contemporary existence. This contemporary existence, which also feeds the melody, is characterised by interrogations, pistols and prisoners (*tsha 'dri, dkrum mda', btson pa*) as well as ideological awakening and political agency. It is within such a complex melody the contemporary Tibetan people find wisdom against and escape from Chinese imperialist power and indoctrination:

> Now let's practise within the melody,
> Let's practise within the measure of the melody.
> Let's strike every string of the mind with great force
> And strum each note of the psyche with great power.
>
> Now let's train the mind within the melody,
> Let's train the mind within the cadence of the melody.
> Let's press every spring of the senses with great strength
> And turn each screw of the intellect with great might.
>
> Now let's seek respite within the melody,
> Let's seek respite within the harmony of the melody.
> Let's wipe clean all the parts and joints of the soul
> And wash well each component of the life force.

Such spring-cleaning stands for a necessary deprogramming process that rids Tibetans of the imprints of Chinese state indoctrination effected through the medium of state-run education, mass media and political campaigns. The act of deprogramming is combined with meditative absorption within the melody, thereby deepening the political awakening announced by the song of the 2008 uprising. This new political consciousness is made known through the novel use of

---

[30] *Repa* (*ras pa*) is a type of Tibetan performing arts that features song, dance, storytelling, gymnastic display and recitation of poetry. Its origins are traced back to Milarepa (1052-1135) and is usually performed by a single itinerant artist or a troupe of artists, who are also known as *repa*. A variant spelling of it is *ralpa* (*ral pa*). For an introduction to this once ubiquitous but now declining art see Mgon po rgyal mtshan 1998.

Buddhist concepts and meditation practices. Familiar theological terms are secularised - thus defamiliarising them—for the purpose of conveying the awakening of a revolutionary consciousness. The poem brings into relief its extended metaphor of meditation cum enlightenment as it makes emphatic references to "spiritual practice", "mind training", "the perfection of liberation paths and stages", "the dissolution of all obscurations", and "the extinguishing of all illusions" (*nyams len, blo sbyong, sa lam rdzogs, sgrib ba ma lus byang, 'khrul ba thams cad zad*). In Tibetan Buddhism, these are conventional technical terms for specific meditation practices and the resultant spiritual experiences that pave the way to the final enlightenment. Great Tibetan meditation treatises such as *Stages of Meditation* (*sgom pa'i rim pa*) tell us how one needs to constantly immerse oneself in deep contemplation enabled by diligence, patience, discipline and a compassionate mind embracing all sentient beings.[31] It is stressed again and again that one must incessantly engage in rigorous meditation and overcome uncritical conventional thinking obscured by ignorance (*ma rig pas sgrib ba*) and worldly illusions. It is believed that this in turn will help the practitioner cultivate the awakening mind of bodhichitta (*byang sems*) rooted in universal compassion that will eventually secure the ultimate goal: the omniscient state of enlightenment. Sangdhor applies this religious idiom for communicating an entirely different experience — an experience that is considered to be equally novel and transformational.

Buddhist enlightenment serves as a metaphor for political emancipation. The highly taxing and time-consuming process of deep meditation that results in the attainment of Buddhahood (more often than not requiring the endeavour of many a lifetime) is likened to the long, arduous and reflective journey that ends with an awakened mind thirsting for political freedom. Although this realisation may not entail the actual materialisation of political freedom, it at least gives rise to a galvanising awareness that Tibet has been under occupation, which in turn generates an impulse for emancipatory action. The poem instructs the reader to take a particular meditation posture, and be seated and immersed within the melody. It advocates supreme calm by encouraging us to slow down our physical activities and breathing to a measured pace. The long reflection on Tibetan history and Tibet's current situation—assisted by composure, precision and patience (prerequi-

---

[31] *Stages of Meditation* (*sgom pa'i rim pa*) is said to have been composed by the great ninth century Indian scholar Kamalaśīla in Tibet. The Dalai Lama teaches this text frequently, and see his *Stages of Meditation* (2001) for an authoritative commentary on this illuminating text in English. Another lucid exposition of Tibetan meditation practices can be found in *Treasury of Knowledge* by Jamgön Kongtrul Lodrö Tayé 2008.

sites for single-pointed concentration, *ting nge 'dzin*)—leads to the visceral rediscovery of "the seal", "the sword" and "the edict of our tribe". Here the intimate term "our tribe" (*rang sde*) denotes Tibet.[32] It recalls Gedun Choepel's stirring verse that brings to an abrupt end his unfinished yet highly influential history of Tibet called *White Annals* (*theb ther dkar po*).[33] This was the first Tibetan history book that made use of the ancient Dunhuang manuscripts for shedding light upon the workings and the legacy of the Tibetan empire.[34] Gedun Choepel describes his incomplete historical project with patriotic sentiment:

> With the white brilliance of love for the people of our tribe
> That resides within the centre of my natural born heart,
> To the king and country of our land of snowy Tibet
> I have offered a little service to the best of my ability.[35]

"The seal", "the sword" and "the edict" of Sangdhor's poem belong to that very tribe with an impressive imperial history celebrated with such passion and poetic eloquence in *White Annals*. As they meditate within the melody, these great symbols of the Tibetan imperial power issue forth from the vital organs of living Tibetans who are experiencing the Chinese colonial rule here and now. This sequence of graphic images is the heightening of a powerful bodily imagery that permeates the poem, which even locates the original source of the great melody itself within the "layered sheath of flesh and skin" and "encased bones and veins." The salient embodied imagery underscores that intricate connection between the bodily senses and human understanding specifically lauded by William Hazlitt and emulated by his prose style.

---

[32] Depending on the context *rang sde* can be translated as my tribe (community, village and settlement) or one's tribe or our tribe. Reflecting the tone, mood and overall patriotic feel of the poem I have chosen the last of these three options.

[33] Dge 'dun chos 'phel 1994 Vol III: 205-300. For Samten Norboo's English translation of *The White Annals* see Gedun Chophel 1978.

[34] Dunhuang manuscripts are a large cache of ancient documents discovered at a cave complex in Dunhuang, the Chinese province of Gansu in the early 20th century. They are predominantly in Chinese and Tibetan and are an invaluable source for studying early Tibetan history, religion and society. The International Dunhuang Project provides digital images and catalogues of these manuscripts on its website: http://idp.bl.uk

[35] dGe 'dun chos 'phel 1994 Vol III: 299. *rang sde'i rigs la zhen pa dkar po'i mdangs// rang byung snying gi dbus na gnas pa 'dis// rang yul kha pa can gyi rje 'bangs la// rang gis nus pa'i sri zhu cung zad sgrub//.*

Hazlitt prizes writers whose style displayed "strong, vivid, bodily perception" and whose "body thought."[36] Tom Paulin explains that the presence of the body is prominent in Hazlitt's writing because "he wishes to unite sense experience and, importantly, expressive physical movement with imagination and understanding."[37] In a similar way, Sangdhor's poem observes and expresses the connection between bodily experience and human understanding. After rigorous meditation-like absorption within the melody, the items that emerge from the liver, lungs and bowels—organs associated with love, life, happiness and deep inward feelings—link the imperial past with the present Tibetan body experiencing the pangs of colonial rule and an awakening political mind.[38]

The past and the present mingle within the mind and the body of contemporary Tibetans culminating in a patriotic consciousness for guiding individual and collective action. "The Anniversary and the Melody" thus displays an element of what D. H. Lawrence calls "the poetry of the present" that incorporates both the past and the future while being neither. For Lawrence, it is in the immediate present that the "living plasm vibrates unspeakably, it inhales the future, it exhales the past, it is the quick of both, and yet it is neither."[39] Within this fluid and dynamic poem under review, the immediate present moment of Tibet breathes in and out both the past and the future. As we have already seen the poem is mostly preoccupied with the present and recent Tibetan history, yet in terms of both form and content it is woven of Tibet's rich literary and oral traditions and the distant past. This quality furnishes the poem and its imagery with intellectual and emotional depth while always ensuring that it is deeply rooted within the living, evolving and vibrating present. The political awakening that the poem detects and celebrates is the part of a living present felt by the contemporary Tibetan body or by what Lawrence would call the "*pulsating, carnal self*".[40] Thus Sangdhor's poem teems with poetic images that are visual representations of bodily senses and intellectual experiences

---

[36] Hazlitt cited in Paulin, Tom 1998: 56. The phrase "body thought" alludes to John Donne's poem "Of the Progress of the Soul: The Second Anniversary" (Donne 1955: 221):

     her pure, and eloquent blood
     Spoke in her cheekes, and so distinctly wrought,
     That one might almost say, her body thought;

[37] Paulin 1998: 56.

[38] Sangdhor's "Those Heroes Might've Thought Thus (*dpa' rgod de tshos 'di ltar dgongs yod nges*) is another poem that employs graphic bodily imagery and senses for portraying contemporary Tibetan political protests and patriotism see Seng rdor 2011b: 107-109.

[39] Lawrence, D. H. [1919] 1990: 48.

[40] Ibid: 49. Italic original.

that possess a force of sudden revelation concerning today's Tibet born of the past and the present.

The Power of the Visible

In another fresh and pregnant metaphor Sangdhor secularises a famous spiritual practice to give expression to a tragic yet powerful contemporary Tibetan political action, which might be seen as yet another aspect of the new political awakening the poem records. The torrential flow of the melody gathers its momentum in the "year when *tummo* of mountain peaks burns":

> That melody is how one breaks into a gallop;
> It is how one leaps and breaks into a gallop.
> The year when the *tummo* of mountain peaks burns
> Breaking into a wild gallop is the sacred helmet.

Tummo (*gtum mo*, inner heat or inner fire)—the great yogic practice of internal heat generation—is converted into a new poetic image to capture a state forbidden aspect of contemporary Tibet. This is the act of self-immolation carried out by Tapey, a young monk from Kirti Monastery in Eastern Tibet, in protest against Chinese rule in 2009, which set off a chain reaction of similar acts in the years that followed calling for Tibetan freedom, the return of the Dalai Lama, and language equality and protection.[41] The secular appropriation of *tummo* gives vivid presence to something that is either silenced or (when mentioned) distorted to the point of invisibility in the official narrative of the Chinese state concerning contemporary Tibet. In this innovative poetic image, we can observe, to borrow from Marianne Moore, that the "power of the visible is the invisible". In a poem on the ostrich called "He "Digesteth Hard Yron", Moore opines:

---

[41] Since Tapey's self-immolation on 27 February 2009, a further 154 Tibetans have carried out acts of self-immolation inside Tibet to date (14 December 2018). There have been at least three self-immolation protests in 2018 alone. Out of the 155 recorded self-immolators 123 are known to have passed away. Little is known about the wellbeing and whereabouts of the survivors. Summary details of Tibetan self-immolations and an informative 2012 report (*Storm in the Grasslands: Self-immolations in Tibet and Chinese policy*) on the lives and last testaments of some of the self-immolators can be found on the website of International Campaign for Tibet: https://www.savetibet.org/resources/fact-sheets/self-immolations-by-tibetans/. For further information on and media coverage of Tibetan Self-immolations see Buchung D. Sonam (ed.) 2013. For scholarly interpretations of self-immolations see Tsering Topgyal 2016b: 166-187; McGranahan and Litzinger (eds.) 2012, and Buffetrille and Robin (eds.) 2012.

The power of the visible
is the invisible; as even where
no tree of freedom grows,
so-called brute courage knows.
Heroism is exhausting, yet
it contradicts a greed that did not wisely spare
the harmless solitaire.[42]

In her poem, Moore celebrates the obstinate survival of the ostrich while many similar exotic birds became extinct. She might also be referring to the power of the image, the known and the living that enables it to shine light upon the unimaged, the unknown and the dead. The invisible or the unknown has an uncanny ability to reveal itself through the visible. In her ostrich poem Moore is specifically noting the power of the visible presence of the living—that is the ostrich—to reveal those erstwhile living things first deprived of their freedom and then driven to extinction by sheer human rapacity and power lust. If one extrapolates this notion to Sangdhor's employment of *tummo* as a poetic image one might be able to perceive that it makes something unspeakable visible to the "inward eye" of the Tibetan reader. It sears a vivid image of the acts of self-immolation on the Tibetan mind—acts made unmentionable and not objectively discussed by the Chinese state and its media.

The spiritual and historical dimensions of the term *tummo* and its enduring popularity deepen its symbolic significance and make it more profound and accessible as a poetic image. *Tummo*, inner fire meditation, is an ancient yogic practice that constitutes a vital part of the famous Six Yogas of Nāropa (*nā ro chos drug*).[43] Tibetans have been practising it since at least the 11th Century when the great translator and master Marpa Lotsāwa (1012-1097) imported it from India and popularised it in Tibet. Through diligent and disciplined meditation practices the *tummo* practitioner harnesses inner heat and channels it for generating the subtlest level of consciousness so as to attain the highest form of wisdom. That is to say that the blissful heat of *tummo* (*gtum mo'i bde drod*) is utilized for gaining enlightenment. Therefore, *tummo* is highly sought after for its liberating "fire-heat" (*gtum mo me drod*). The most famous practitioner and teacher of *tummo* is the great

---

[42] Moore, Marianne 1968: 100.

[43] For an insightful book on the Six Yogas of Naropa revolving around *tummo* see Glenn H. Mullin's (2005) translation of and introduction to Tsongkhapa's famous commentary on these yogic practices called *The Three Convictions* (*yid ches gsum ldan*). According to the current Dalai Lama this "work is regarded by Tibetans as tummo gyi gyalpo [gtum mo gi rgyal po], the king of treatments on the inner heat yoga" (Quoted in Mullin 2005: 44).

yogi-poet Milarepa (1052-1135), a principal disciple of Marpa Lotsāwa.[44] The thin cotton clad Milarepa is admired, amongst other things, for his courage and sheer obstinacy to bear many hardships in order to perfect *tummo* amidst the snowy mountains of Tibet (*gangs ri'i khrod*). To this day, many a Tibetan practitioner has followed in his footsteps. In short, *tummo* is the product of centuries of Tibetan Buddhist teaching and practice shaping bodily and mental experiences. Sangdhor appropriates this consciousness forging yogic practice and makes it burn on the mountain peaks of contemporary Tibet, just as the heat of *tummo* burnt inside Milarepa so many years ago on so many summits.[45] The inner heat that has blazed inside the bodies of great yogis and numerous lesser practitioners on the Tibetan mountaintops, sharpening their senses for spiritual emancipation, is transformed into the sacrificial fire of self-immolations uttering political discontent, aspiration and agency in such ineffable ways and with such tragic consequences. Thus, within the poetic image of *tummo*—visible in the mind's eye—rages the invisible fire of the self-immolations for political liberation, invisible in the Chinese state-controlled media and state censored Tibetan communications. *Tummo* is also part of the salient bodily imagery of Sangdhor's poem that captures what is experienced and expressed by the contemporary Tibetan body. Thus, matters of the mind and body are employed as poetic images for communicating new political awakening and actions of the contemporary Tibetan nation.

Tibet within the Fabric of the Poetic Text

The third prominent feature of "The Anniversary and the Melody", indivisibly intermeshed with the other two highlighted aspects, concerns the presence of the Tibetan nation within the very fabric of the poetic text itself. As the poem weaves itself into the written form out of the warp and weft of Tibetan oral and literary sources it beseeches the Tibetan reader to use the newly gained consciousness or political Buddhahood for narrating the recent history of Tibet. Like many who

---

[44] On Milarepa, his relationship with his master Marpa Lotsawa and diligent spiritual practice see Andrew Quintman's fine translation of *The Life of Milarepa* by Tsangnyön Heruka 2010. For Milarepa's vital role in the transmission of the Six Yogas of Naropa see Mullin 2005.

[45] See Seng rdor (2006: 125-128; 2008: 33-36) for two contrasting yet equally brilliant poems on Milarepa. Sangdhor's free verse poem "To Mourn" (*mya ngan zhu ba*) that first appeared on his now closed down literary website on 11 October 2011 is a more explicit reflection on Tibetan self-immolations (Seng rdor 2011c).

fought against Western imperialism in the 20th century, many Tibetans see "an unbroken continuity" of resistance[46] that can be traced back to the first native fighters' insurrection against foreign intrusion. Just as there is an unbroken line of active Tibetan opposition that leads, to borrow Basil Davidson's words, to a period of "primary resistance,"[47] so there is an uninterrupted chain of repression that stretches from the initial encounter between Tibet and Communist China to the present day. It is this history that Sangdhor's poem narrates with frequent allusions to Tibet's past imperial grandeur and by taking full advantage of the communicative efficacy, cultural embeddedness, arresting cadence and unique sound patterns of the Tibetan language. It is this history that the poem urges Tibetans to sing "with voice", measure "with sound" and utter "through speech". This vocal narration of Tibetan history forms part of that long-running resistance because it struggles against imposed historical amnesia.[48] Remembering forbidden historical events generates counter-memory that helps to offset the Chinese state's efforts to erase and rewrite Tibetan history.

As alluded in the first section of the essay, by providing an alternative Tibetan historical narrative, this poem is itself a form of national remembrance on a grand scale encompassing Tibetan territory, history, art and culture. It not only explicitly recalls the highly significant historical date of the March 10th, but also evokes the rich Tibetan artistic heritage in its textual body. As we have seen, it is woven of historical allusions, religious references, poetic language and imagery derived from Tibet's oral and literary traditions. As I have demonstrated, it employs the captivating tune and wisdom of *Khache Phalu* to tease out and carry on the great melody that bursts forth. This immensely popular traditional text that reflects upon the unpredictable, suffering and death-ridden nature of the human condition is itself informed by Tibetan oral poetry. As the poem closely associates the new Tibetan awakening with images of galloping horses, "the sacred helmet", "the seal", "the sword" and "the edict" memories of the Tibetan imperial power begin to course through it. The poem also calls to mind Tibetan

---

[46] Edward W. Said 1997: 238 – 239 notes the tendency of many anti-imperial movements to locate their legitimacy and cultural primacy in this "unbroken continuity" of resistance, which is usually played down by the European imperial powers in their historical accounts.

[47] Cited in Said 1994: 252.

[48] This is not to claim that the poet sets out consciously to undertake political resistance. In a way he is simply exercising an inherent human faculty, be it mediated by one's socio-cultural experience. Memory is an essential part of an individual's existence and identity and a Tibetan's free use of it happens to clash with the Chinese imperial power.

avian folklore as it makes use of it to express immense human suffering and instil eternal loyalty in Tibetans. The secular application of Tibetan religious practice and thought permeates the poem and it culminates in the "birth" of a new political consciousness that evokes the Buddhist enlightenment.[49] At the core of all these recalls lie the resourceful expressiveness and elasticity of the Tibetan language. Moreover, they show Sangdhor's innovative use of the Tibetan language which enables him to "sing" the Tibetan nation without being silenced by the Chinese colonial power.

"The Anniversary and the Melody" helps to demonstrate how some contemporary Tibetan poems are able to counter the distorting and dominant language of the imperial power by consciously exploring the full potential of the marginalised Tibetan language. Around the same time when the tragic event commemorated in Sangdhor's poem was unfolding on the Tibetan plateau, George Steiner, echoing George Orwell, exposed the terrifying relationship between language and political lying entailing political inhumanity. In his famed essays "The Hollow Miracle" and "A Note on Günter Grass", Steiner argues that the language of the Nazi regime "polluted" and "poisoned" the German language beyond recognition.[50] He believes that this pollution was so intense that it turned the post-WWII German tongue into an effective tool for causing oblivion concerning the recent horrors of the Holocaust. Likewise, the vocabulary of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) and the Chinese state has a polluting impact upon Tibetan language that either glosses over or totally erases the bloody encounter between Communist China and Tibet in the 1950s and its ongoing repercussions. The perverting effects of the imperial idiom of the CCP run deep in the contemporary use of the Tibetan language and they are blatantly obvious in frequently repeated official statements that paint traditional Tibetan society as "dark" and "medieval" and cast colonial intrusion as "peaceful liberation". Official Chinese state publications tell Tibetans and the world that "the peaceful liberation of Tibet" is "a milestone marking the commencement of Tibet's progress from a dark and backward society to a bright and advanced future."[51]

---

[49] Intermeshed with the extended meditation cum enlightenment metaphor is the image of the conception, gestation and birth of a new Tibetan consciousness. As can be discerned in the concluding stanza of the poem this very much resembles the rebirth of a being after a long journey through the realm of *Bardo*. Here it is the *Bardo* of the Tibetan colonial experience.

[50] Steiner, George [1959] 1967: 117-132 "The Hollow Miracle"; [1964] 1967: 133-140 "A Note on Günter Grass".

[51] Information Office of the State Council of the People's Republic of China July 11, 2011.

They endlessly reiterate: "The Society of old Tibet under feudal serf-dom was even more dark and backward than Europe in the Middle Ages."[52] Due to both official pressure and unthinking conformism many Tibetans embrace this imperial idiom and portray Tibet of yes-teryears as being "extremely cruel, extremely backward and extremely dark",[53] and continue to believe that their society and culture are still lagging behind advanced peoples and are in need of progress.

The political vocabulary of the CCP as an effective carrier of an im-perial hegemony has seriously infected Tibetan language to the extent that it continues to affect the narration of Tibetan history as well as the perception and expression of Tibetan identity.[54] Reflecting upon the enduring power of injurious words, Emily Dickinson once noted that "the infection in the sentence breeds".[55] Such an infection goes on breeding in the Tibetan sentence, but as shown by the likes of Sang-dhor's poem all is not lost. The deep oral and literary roots of such contemporary poetry prevent the infection reaching to the marrow of the Tibetan language. "The Anniversary and the Melody" is effective in fighting the infection and avoiding historical forgetfulness because it plumbs what Sangdhor terms "the depths of the Tibetan language" (*bod skad kyi gting*) for poetic communication. This specific poem be-longs to what Sangdhor and others classify as "the new verse poetry" (*bcad gsar snyan ngag*) that has given a renewed energy and creative impetus to the neglected formal Tibetan verse poetry.[56] Since the flour-ishing of free verse form in the 1980s, triggered by the pioneering po-ems of Dhondup Gyal, many Tibetan writers have attacked metrical composition for its perceived inflexible, archaic and inadaptable form and uniformity of content. This prevalent anti-verse sentiment led to a sharp decline in the practice of versification especially in the 1980s. As a result, the fate of the formal Tibetan verse poetry became a source of

---

[52] Information Office of the State Council of the People's Republic of China 2001: 3.

[53] For instance, a recent Tibetan news report (Snying lcags 2017) on "the 58ᵗʰ Anniver-sary of Serfs' Emancipation Day" typifies the imposition as well as adoption of the Chinese imperial idiom when it states that Tibetans "sang songs of praise to the wise and glorious deeds of the Communist Party with deep love while remember-ing the extremely cruel, the extremely backward and the extremely dark history of the Old Tibet" (*bod rnying pa'i ches gdug rtsub dang/ ches rjes lus/ ches mun nag gi lo rgyus la phyir dran dang/ gung khran tang gi mkhas mdzang ldan pa dang rlabs chen gyi mdzad rjes la brtse sems zab mos bstod glu blangs pa*).

[54] The renaming of Tibetan places, rivers and mountains in Chinese for official record and administrative purposes is a typical colonial practice of erasing the presence of the colonised. Deliberate sinicisation of Tibetan proper names erases historical, cultural and psychological identities embedded within them.

[55] Dickinson, Emily [1947]: 553. "A Word dropped careless on a Page".

[56] Commentaries on this new type of Tibetan verse see Seng rdor 2014; 2010: 56-66. Also see Sgo yon 2011.

great anxiety for an older generation of Tibetan scholars during the 1980s and the early 1990s.[57] "The new verse" (*bcad gsar*) is the product of a conscious collective endeavour to revitalise the Tibetan verse poetry by exploring "the depths of the Tibetan language" that can only be fully appreciated by a true Tibetan ear or a Tibetan language forged sensibility.[58]

According to Sangdhor's exposition, "the new verse" approximates to what Gedun Choepel calls "the ancestral diction" (*pha mes lugs kyi tshig sbyor*) or "the diction according to the natural freedom of the Tibetan language" (*bod skad rang dbang ba'i sgrig tshul*), which advances a notion of the flexible Tibetan poetic diction naturally inherent within the Tibetan language (*bod skad rang gi gshis la yod pa*) that is unrestricted by the artificial style of the Indian *kāvya* influenced Tibetan literature.[59] Thus, "the new verse" creatively exploits different types of Tibetan metrical composition found in both oral and written literatures, whilst always prioritising terminology, diction, grammatical rules and rhetoric devices considered distinctively Tibetan.[60] "The new verse"—as a new poetical voice of the present—observes rules concerning grammar, syntax and spelling but avoids the strict dictates of literary Tibetan and adopts the freedom and flexibility of the spoken word when it comes to such conventions. Sangdhor distinguishes "the new verse" from the regular verses of Tibetan *kāvya* and oral poetry but stresses that these and other categories of Tibetan versification are indispensable for its birth and development.[61] In fact, when he calls it "the flow of a literary form" he is emphatically recognising "the new verse" as the perpetuation of an ancient Tibetan literary practice.[62] For Sangdhor the flow of "the new verse" is fed by, amongst other artistic tributaries, "the ritual recitals of the Bon tradition, poem-songs (*mgur*), elegant sayings (*legs bshad*), advice, and the poetry of *Kāvyādarśa* (*me long*

---

[57] For instance, some of the most passionate and reasoned writings of the Lama scholar poet Alak Dorshi bear this anxiety. See his 1980s critical as well as pedagogic essays on Tibetan literature especially focusing on regular verse poetry, Dor zhi gdong drug snyems blo 2004a: 179-191, 192-220, 221-256, 281-310 and 2004b: 12-118, 206-230.

[58] Seng rdor 2014.

[59] Ibid. Here Sangdhor is drawing on a fine essay by Gedun Choepel called "On the Grammar of the Written Tibetan Language" (*Bod yig gi sgra sbyor skor*), Dge 'dun chos 'phel 1994 Vol1: 281-283. An English translation of this essay by Thupten Jinpa and Donald S. Lopez Jr. (who render the title into English as "On the Linguistic Rules of the Tibetan Language") is available in Gendun Chopel 2014: 209-220.

[60] Seng rdor 2014; Sgo yon 2011.

[61] For insightful discussions of Sangdhor's poetry and the influence of Tibetan literary and oral traditions on it see Hor gtsang 'jigs med (Hortsang Jigme) 2018 and Dge 'dun rab gsal (Gedun Rabsal) 2018.

[62] Seng rdor 2014.

ma)."[63] Thus, the very text of "The Anniversary and the Melody" is also forged by a long and diverse Tibetan literary history which in turn augments its overall resistance against state-enforced oblivion.

Although Sangdhor is considered a radical poet because of his well-publicised anticlerical attitude, his "new verse" reveals that his originality lies in his respect for the old as much as his ability to communicate the new. In an essay called "On Being Modern-Minded" Bertrand Russell finds a specific type of mind shaped by the fashion of the present and desire for the new.[64] According to Russell, such a mind has no propensity to think differently or independently other than to follow current opinions that reject the old and embrace the new. Individuality is drowned in the uniformity of the fashionable. This tendency has also influenced the minds of many contemporary Tibetan writers. As a result, they do not value much the earlier and more traditional forms of Tibetan literature. Sangdhor does not appear to escape the fetishism for the new in terms of some of his views on Tibetan Buddhism,[65] but with regards to his poetic style he prefers the everlasting of the old to the ephemeral of the new. It seems he achieves originality through the observation of literary conventions deemed old-fashioned in the contemporary Tibetan literary climate. In his essay "Johnson as Critic and Poet" T. S Eliot notes that Samuel Johnson's "originality" results from his rigorous upholding of the standards of a common style in English poetry. As a result, Eliot concludes: "To be original within definite limits of propriety may require greater talent and labour, than when every man may write as he pleases, and when the first thing expected of him is to be different."[66] Indeed, through the adherence to common standards and rules of both written and oral compositions whilst not being in thrall to the fleeting new, Sangdhor produces original poetry capable of communicating the contemporary Tibetan national experience. The CCP has implanted ideological words, phrases and images deep within the Tibetan language. However, as shown by "The Anniversary and the Melody" Sangdhor's poetry erodes such implants through the reinvigoration of Tibetan verse poetry, reemploying older or enduring Tibetan terminology, cadence and meter, and injecting them with fresh

---

[63] Ibid. *Kāvyādarśa* (*snyan ngag me long* OR *me long ma*), *Mirror of Poetics* is a highly influential treatment of *kāvya* by Daṇḍin (7th–8th c.) which had dominated classical Tibetan literary production till the late 20th century.

[64] Russell, Bertrand [1950] 2009: 63-68.

[65] See Sangdhor's controversial book *Audacity* (*rtul phod*) in which he attacks the transmission and some central beliefs of Tibetan Buddhism (Seng rdor 2008). One particular poem entitled "Eighty-Four Thousand Heaps of Lies" (*shob kyi phung po brgyad khri bzhi stong*) dismisses the complete teachings of Lord Buddha as the product of centuries old imaginative fabrication and intellectual mendacity (Ibid: 11-16). See also Lama Jabb 2015: 15-16.

[66] Eliot, T. S. 1957: 188.

senses and blending them with common speech. This decontamination process is assisted by the technology of the internet and social media that has spread Sangdhor's poem far and wide.

The Paperless Sky: Popular Reception of the Poem

Data saturation brought on by a chaotic diversity of internet-based electronic modes of communication affects Tibetans as much as it impacts other peoples. However, this chaotic scene is conducive to the generation of a multiplicity of literary voices. The production, distribution and exchange of user-generated content via social media challenges the traditional notion of the literary canon—understood as a body of works deemed the highest quality by established scholars, writers, critics and anthologists. The mind-boggling plethora of internet-enabled communicative modes offers a certain degree of freedom to the contemporary Tibetan poet whose theme and style can no longer be totally controlled by the dictums of the powerful, be they literary or political. Dhatsenpo, a former leading member of the Third Generation of Tibetan Poets, is among the first to celebrate this newly acquired sense of freedom. In his provocatively entitled poem "Even If You Don't Like It, So What? I Write Like This" Dhatsenpo writes poetry onto a "paperless sky" (*shog bu med pa'i nam mkha'*):

> This is perhaps the noon
> In terms of both age and sequence
>
> I long ago erased
> A rusted line of words
>
> What remained was a paperless sky
> Onto which I've written a poem
> That is the light of semen dripping from the penis
> And the supple softness of the unfolded vagina
> In no way is it the twinned ancient sun and moon
>
> The person who illumines the blade of intellect
> Always dies without the time to wash the filth of certitude[67]

With characteristic defiance and provocation, Dhatsenpo is defending graphic erotic poetry and attacking the authority of Tibetan critics'

---

[67] Mda' btsan po 2008.

whose literary tastes have been shaped by the classical *kāvya* poetics derived from India.[68] Alongside the promotion of strict metrical rules, poetic diction, aesthetic principles and Indian mythology, *kāvya* imposes set themes such as the eulogy of the sun and the moon. What Dhatsenpo also emphasises is the "paperless sky"—the internet that provides the Tibetan poet with an infinite space of relative freedom. This space is not bound by the finiteness of the book in terms of its materiality and cannot be policed by the established literary authorities. To a noticeable degree it enables one to avoid financial pressures and socio-political restrictions associated with the production of literary books and journals printed on paper. Dhatsenpo's erotic poetry forced itself onto the Tibetan literary scene in the mid 2000s due partly to his and the Tibetan reader's use of the Web. His is a literary voice not drowned out by conservative critics nor the sheer volume of internet-generated literary data.

Sangdhor's "The Anniversary and the Melody" is an even more audacious poem etched on to the "paperless sky". It takes advantage of this expansive and relatively freer space to broach a politically forbidden theme and to broaden its reach beyond the limited circulation of the printed word. As observed already, Sangdhor composed the poem on 10 March 2010 coinciding with the 51st Anniversary of the Tibetan National Uprising Day of the 1959. He first published it online on his own website on 29 March 2010 to a rapturous reception. By 13 December 2011 Sangdhor's writings featuring this poem received 106,557 hits on his website alone.[69] It has appeared on many websites, blogs, public forums, in private chat-rooms and on other discursive platforms facilitated by online social networking services. It has been trending on Tibetan social media for some time now and is usually shared frantically during the month of March. Although the poem is mostly circulated via the internet it also appears in surreptitious publications such as privately produced pamphlets, journals and books both inside and outside Tibet. It is worth mentioning here that Sangdhor's books, including those featuring "The Anniversary and the Melody", go through several reprints and sell in their tens of thousands. In fact, this state of affairs has made him a bestselling Tibetan language writer who is almost singular in his capacity to make a living out of the profits

---

[68] For an analysis of contemporary Tibetan erotic poetry including the cited Dhatsenpo's poem see Lama Jabb 2015: 183-230.

[69] This number only represents those who viewed it on Sangdhor's private website as noted by Arik Gethong in 2011. It does not take into account others who would have come across the poem via online and printed publications.

accrued from the sales of his books.[70] "The Anniversary and the Melody" constitutes only a tiny – be it a powerful - fragment of Sangdhor's bestselling oeuvre. It first came out in print in 2011 in an acclaimed collection of some of Sangdhor's contentious poems and prose that had initially appeared online.

Taking advantage of his own website and its editorial board Sangdhor published this volume himself and it is aptly entitled *Wild Writings Dragging a Lasso* (*Rtsom rgod thag drud ma*).[71] The internet facilitates self-publication through enabling personal production and management of online content as well as making it possible to use this content and the information gleaned from it for producing printed material. Therefore, even before the actual publication of the volume, the popular and lucrative response to it was a fait accompli as it had been pre-determined by the existing rapturous online reception of the items to be included in it. The title of the book appropriates the Tibetan pastoralist term *thag drud*, which translates as "the one dragging a lasso". It is a reference to unruly horses and yaks that are released with a long rope around their necks so that they could be easily caught whenever and wherever necessary. This word is also a slang for prisoners released on parole who need to be constantly vigilant against the authorities. Therefore, a less literal translation of the title might be *Wild Writings on Parole*. The volume was published without official Chinese state permission with a print run of 5,000 copies. It run out of print as soon as it came out but the author has never reprinted it inside Tibet due to the risks and challenges entailed.[72] In 2012, Virginia-based Tashi Choeling Buddhist Centre published this volume in downloadable digital book format and made it widely available.[73] "The Anniversary and the Melody" also features in another self-published book called *The Depths of the Tibetan Language: The Best Poems of Sangdhor* (*bod skad kyi gting/ sengs rdor gyi snyan ngag rtse gra phyogs bsdus*). It is quietly buried deep within this volume which contains some of Sangdhor's most representative "new verse poems" and finest prose pieces. This highly sought-after book was first published in 2013 with an initial print run

---

[70] In a conversation about the popular reception of his poetry Sangdhor (15 December 2017) intimated unprompted that the main source of his income is accrued from the sale of his books. He categorically affirmed that this income not only enables him to make a living but also covers all expenses when he dines out, the purchase of electronic equipment including computer and phone and travel expenses for both business and pleasure.

[71] Seng rdor: 2011.

[72] This does not take into account many unauthorized reprints of the book available on the Tibetan book market.

[73] This particular digitised form can be downloaded at http://www.rigzod.org/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=112%3A2011-12-22-17-40-41&catid=1%3A2011-09-01-18-24-37&Itemid=108&limitstart=3

of 4,500 (6,000) copies. Affirming the existing popularity of Sangdhor's work, once again the book sold out as soon as it appeared on the market. In an effort to meet the unprecedented rising demands for the book it has been reprinted 12 times totalling over 40,000 copies.[74]

The rise of social media technology has given further saliency to the existing online and printed presence of "The Anniversary and the Melody". Many Tibetans repost and repeatedly share this poem via internet-facilitated instant-messaging applications such as Facebook, WhatsApp, WeChat and Weibo. It is impossible to ascertain how many people have read and re-read the poem and how many times it has been disseminated via multi-purpose social media apps. However, my own many encounters with this poem through a diversity of print and digital media over the last eight years tells me that it is indeed one of the most reproduced contemporary Tibetan poems. To cite just a single year as an example, Sangdhor republished it for only a brief period in January and again in March 2015 on his online literary forum and social media sites to a virtual community formed of nearly 10,000 individuals and groups. For reasons of directness and online searchability he revised the title of the poem to "March 10th and the Melody". Before he was pressured to remove the poem from his microblogging sites it had received over 30,000 views. Many of the individuals who follow Sangdhor's every post displayed the poem on their private blogging sites or on collective forums and distributed it amongst their online contacts. Around the same time (March 2015) many online social networking groups both inside and outside Tibet started sharing the poem while showering it with praises. These include two particularly popularly Tibetan language social media forums inside Tibet with a combined following of over 100,000 individuals where Sangdhor's poem was viewed and shared more than most items.[75] By 2015, a digitised volume of a selection of Sangdhor's poems featuring "The Anniversary and the Melody" (that had first come out in 2013 inside Tibet) became one of the most downloaded contemporary Tibetan literature e-books.[76] In online discussions many readers have lauded the poem and some have even suggested that it along with another poem by Sangdhor that eulogises the current Dalai Lama should be used as

---

[74] This number only reflects conservative estimations offered by the author himself and some of the distributors of the book. It does not include many copies produced by private booksellers without the author's permission or knowledge.

[75] The names of and links to these microblogging sites and virtual communities are kept anonymous so as to avoid unwelcome attention.

[76] This digital book of Sangdhor's selected poems was the most downloaded work out of several poetry books released as part of a Tibetan poetry e-book series still available online. The publisher and online links are left unidentified for fear of unwelcome attention.

anthems for opening Tibetan public ceremonies and functions.[77] This rapturous reception shows that the popular reach of Sangdhor's poem is due to the fine quality of the poem itself, its daring subject matter and the technology of the internet.

The endless electronic reproduction of "The Anniversary and the Melody" reveals that our need to repeat things in order to remember persists in the age of social media and data saturation. Although online technology facilitates repeated communication, ironically it also bears an inherent ability to send any work, artistic or otherwise, into oblivion. There is no solid physical presence of the favourite book that can be manually browsed, visibly shelved and frequently revisited. This poem could have been buried deep under a mountain of invisible electronic data thus consigning it to forgetfulness like numerous other poems. However, the tendency to republish it over and over in mostly digitised format rescues it from this forgetfulness and makes people read it repeatedly.[78] The constant rereading of a text is not only a feature of fine literature[79] but is also an effective form of remembrance. In the case of Sangdhor's poem re-reading entails the aesthetic appreciation of the poem itself as well as recalling its commemorative subject matter which remembers the silenced tragic history of modern Tibet. In short, countless reproductions mean deliverance from the oblivion of data saturation and also from the state imposed historical amnesia. The creative and subversive potential of the infinite "paperless sky", generates a double-edged centrifugal force. It is a force that counters the totalitarian propensity to monopolise meaning-making and to control the means of representation. It also pulls away from individual or collective authoritarian tendencies to define literature within a narrow theoretical framework. The "paperless sky" creates the communicative technological condition for the existence of a multiplicity of literary voices. Of these Sangdhor's is a single limpid poetic voice—a voice informed by the Tibetan literary tradition, oral poetry and a serious concern with Tibet's current situation. In the Tibetan poetic struggle against forgetting in the age of social media two communicative tech-

---

[77] This brilliant and unconventional praise verse called "The Yellow Cloth" (*ras ser po*) was first published on Sangdhor's website in 2008 before its appearance in print (Seng rdor 2011: 115-17, 2013: 10-11). It is subtitled "Praising a Person" (*mi zhig la bsnags pa*).

[78] The poem has a solid physical as well as a virtual presence. However, significantly it reaches to a wider audience thanks to the flexible digital reproducibility of it in a wide virtual world.

[79] Many literary critics view the need to reread a particular book for many generations as a mark of fine writing. For instance, echoing this opinion Jonathan Bate (2010: 2) states: "The books that are read again and again become *literature*".

nologies stand out. The technology of the internet and that of the written word. As evident in the case of "The Anniversary and the Melody" the immortalising power of the written word—so often celebrated by Shakespeare[80]—is still essential for inscribing poetry onto the "paperless sky".

Conclusion: A Poem Brimful of Suffering

"The Anniversary and the Melody" monumentalizes an already immortal date of Tibetan history. The poem brims with profound sadness as it remembers and reflects upon 10 March 1959, a date that has come to symbolise all the irreversible changes brought on by CCP rule. By recalling the tragic loss of lives, sacrifices made, environmental degradation and waves of colonial repression over the years, the poem taps into the unifying force of shared suffering. As it gives utterance to the ongoing Tibetan plight, it also underscores the galvanising quality of human suffering resulting from an unbroken line of state repression. Tibetan defiance and political agency are captured by the intimations of the 2008 protests and the acts of self-immolation and the detection of a revolutionary awakening and impulse. In fact, "The Anniversary and the Melody" detects in the 2008 protests something not very dissimilar to W. B. Yeats' celebrated interpretation of the 1916 Easter Rising: "All changed, changed utterly: / A terrible beauty is born".[81] However, while Yeats displays ambivalence and uncertainty about that history defining Irish rebellion in his poem "Easter 1916", Sangdhor is unambiguous in his celebration of the 2008 Tibetan uprising as a transformative moment. He makes out and celebrates its revolutionary energy with absolute certitude whilst not forgetting that it is also an active commemoration of 10 March 1959.

While Sangdhor's poem explicitly commemorates the historic date and utters the ensuing Tibetan colonial experience with such poetic force, its very textual body, composed as it is in the style of "the new verse", mirrors Tibet by recalling the diverse Tibetan literary and oral traditions with nuance and brio. What T. S. Eliot calls "the historical sense" or "the consciousness of the past" in his famous essay "Tradition and the Individual Talent"[82] (the deep engagement with past literary luminaries that has shaped great European poetry) also informs contemporary Tibetan poetry. As shown by "The Anniversary and the

---

[80] For instance, see Shakespeare's sonnets 15, 17, 18 and 55 (Jones. ed. 1997: 141, 145, 147, 221).

[81] Yeats, W. B. 2001: 85-87. For a postcolonial reading of Yeats' "Easter 1916" touching on his uncertainties about the Easter Rising see Marjorie Howe: 216-17.

[82] Eliot [1927] 1932: 13-22.

Melody", in the case of Tibet, the historical sense involves more than a serious appreciation of its literary tradition. It also entails deep immersion in Tibet's long history, mountainous territory, religious traditions and oral literature. Extending its reach through the infinite space of "the paperless sky" Sangdhor's poem employs all these elements and beseeches the Tibetan people to let their hearts and minds beat to a new music.

Most of all, "The Anniversary and the Melody" is an extraordinarily eloquent poem of remembrance teeming with vivid and powerful imagery. Just like the short verse "Feelings on the Day of the March 10th" penned by the now incarcerated monk Hortsang Tamdrin, Sangdhor's poem audaciously recalls a historically significant date evocative of immense loss, suffering and grievance:

> Today is the anniversary date of the March Tenth;
> I remember the disease lodged within the heart,
> Remember the wounds lacerated across the flesh,
> Remember the grief for the siblings that died,
> Remember the sound of the red wind that blew,
> And remember the feud that's festered for years.[83]

Appendix One

དུས་དྲན་དང་རོལ་དབྱངས།

དེ་རིང་སྤྱི་ཟླ་གསུམ་པའི་ཚེས་བཅུ་རེད། །
ད་ལྟ་རེས་གཟའ་ལྷག་པའི་མཚན་རྒྱུབ་རེད། །
བརྒྱང་བྱ་འདི་ལ་སྐྱེ་དངོས་ག་ཚོད་འཆི། །
རི་ཤུལ་འདི་ཡི་སྐྱེ་དངོས་ག་ཚོད་འཆི། །

སྐྱབས་དེའི་ཡུལ་དེའི་རྒྱ་དེའི་བྱུང་རིམ་ནི། །

---

[83] *de ring gsum bcu'i dus tshigs yin//snying la zug pa'i nad cig dran//sha la gshar ba'i rma zhig dran//spun rdza shi ba'i sdug cig dran//rlung dmar spur ba'i sgra zhig dran//lo la bsnyal ba'i gyod cig dran//.* This poem and a brief account of Hortsang Tamdrin can be found in a news report posted by A rig 'gyur med AND Tshang dbyangs rgya mtsho on 22 November 2013. Hortsang Tamdrin was arrested on 24 April 2013 and later sentenced to four years and six months in prison for allegedly "instigating separatism" and "propagating the idea of Tibetan Independence".

ཉེན་དེའི་ཁྲིམ་དེའི་ལོ་དེའི་འབྱུང་རྒྱུན་ནི། །
སྲུན་མའི་ལག་དང་ཐོར་པའི་བླ་ལ་བསྟིལ། །
སེམས་རྩ་དྲག་ཏུ་ཁོལ་བའི་ཕྲོ་ལ་བསྟིལ། །

ཡོང་མི་ཚང་མ་འགྲོ་མི་རེད་དོ་ལོ། །
འཇིག་རྟེན་འདི་ན་སྣང་གཏོང་མང་ངོ་ལོ། །
ཁ་ཆེའི་ཕ་ལུའི་དགའ་རྟ་རྒྱུང་ལ་འཐེན། །
གནམ་སའི་མཚམས་ནས་ཙེ་ཞིག་བྲག་ཆར་འབོར། །

ངང་པ་གཅིག་རེ་གཅིག་རེ་འཕུར་བ་ཀུན། །
གོང་མོ་ཡ་རེ་ཡ་རེ་དུ་བ་ཀུན། །
ང་ཚོའི་སེམས་ཀྱི་ནང་ནས་གོ་བར་ཤོག །
ང་ཚོའི་སེམས་ཀྱི་མཐིལ་ལ་ཁྱབ་པར་ཤོག །

ཁ་བ་བུ་ཡུག་འཚུབ་ན་འཚུབ་ཤོག་དང་། །
དུས་རྒྱུང་བསེར་མ་ལྷང་ན་ལྷང་ཤོག་དང་། །
ང་ཚོས་ཞི་འདུལ་པ་བོང་བསྐྱམ་པར་བྱ། །
ཞི་འདུལ་གནམ་ལྷགས་པ་བོང་བསྐྱམ་པར་བྱ། །

སྐྱུག་པ་དུམ་གཅིག་ཆད་ནས་སྟོ་ལ་ཐལ། །
སྙིན་པ་དུམ་གཅིག་ཆད་ནས་བྱུང་ལ་ཐལ། །
དེ་ནི་སྐྱོ་ཡི་དཔྱང་འཇུག་ཡིན་པ་རེད། །
དེ་ནི་བྱུང་གི་དྲག་འདུལ་ཡིན་པ་རེད། །

སེམས་ཀྱི་ཙེ་ཞིག་རིམ་པ་དགུ་རུ་འདར། །
ཡིད་ཀྱི་ཙེ་ཞིག་རྣམ་པ་དགུ་ཏུ་གཡོས། །
ཤར་རྟག་ནུབ་འདེད་ང་ཚོའི་ལས་དབང་རེད། །
ནུབ་རྟག་ཤར་འདེད་ཕུ་ཚོའི་བསྐོས་ཐང་རེད། །

ཐ་གྲུའི་ལ་མོ་འདི་ཡི་ཐར་རྒྱབ་ཏུ། །
བས་མཐའི་ལ་མོ་འདི་ཡི་ཆུར་ལོགས་སུ། །
སྨྱུན་ཆབ་དྲག་ཏུ་བསིལ་བའི་དབྱ་མནའ་ཡོད། །
མགྲིན་པ་ཡུས་ཀྱིས་བརྣངས་པའི་ལ་དན་ཡོད། །

འདི་ནས་ཉེ་མ་ནུབ་ཀྱི་ཕྱོགས་རོལ་ཟེར། །
ཕྱར་གྱི་ཆོས་ཚན་གཅིག་ན་དེ་སྐད་ཐྱིས། །
བྱ་ཁོད་ལྤག་སྟེབ་འཕོར་བ་རེ་ཆད་རེད། །
རྒྱ་ཐག་ལྤ་སྟྱེར་འཐེན་པ་ཐམ་ཉེས་རེད། །

ག་ཏེད་ཅིག་ནས་སྨྲ་ཞིག་བགས་ཀྱིས་མཆེད། །
ག་ལེ་ག་ལེར་ཐྱུན་ཁང་གཞིག་པར་བྱེད། །
དེ་ནི་ང་ཆོས་མཐོང་བའི་ཕྱུགས་བསམ་ཡིན། །
དེ་ནི་ང་ཆོའི་རྣབས་ཆེན་བསྐྱར་དར་ཡིན། །

ཤ་པགས་ཐྲུམ་པོ་སྟོང་གི་མར་ཞབས་ན། །
འབྱུང་བ་སྨྱན་སྐྱེས་གདངས་ཉིག་སིག་སིག་དགོད། །
ཚ་རུས་སྐྱོགས་པོ་འབྱུམ་གྱི་གཏིང་མཐིལ་ན། །
གཉུག་མ་ཆད་གྲུབ་དབྱངས་ཉིག་འཕྱམས་འཕྱམས་ད། །

མཁྱུར་མགོའི་མཆི་མ་འདི་དགའ་ག་རེ་བྱེད། །
གཉེར་ཁྱུ་ཆ་པོ་འདི་དགའ་ག་རེ་བྱེད། །
སྨྲ་ཡི་རྣམ་པར་བརྐངས་ཏེ་སྟོན་པར་ཞུ། །
དབྱངས་ཀྱི་ཌོ་བོར་བསྐྱུར་ཏེ་ལེན་པར་ཞུ། །

དབྱངས་དེ་བྱེ་མ་བཞུར་བའི་ངང་ཚུལ་ཡིན། །
ཐྲལ་དང་བྱེ་མ་བཞུར་བའི་ངང་ཚུལ་ཡིན། །
རེ་སྟེའི་བློ་གཐོག་གཡོབ་པའི་ལོ་ལྔ་ད། །
བྱེ་མ་ཐག་ཐག་བཞུར་བ་བཀའ་བརྡ་ཡིན། །

དབངས་དེ་རྒྱག་ཤུར་སྒྲོད་པའི་ཕྱོགས་ཆ་ཡིན། །
སྒྲིང་དང་རྒྱག་ཤུར་སྒྲོད་པའི་ཕྱོགས་ཆ་ཡིན། །
རེ་རྐྱེའི་གདུམ་མོ་འབར་བའི་ལོ་རྒྱུ་རུ། །
རྒྱག་ཤུར་ཚབ་ཆུབ་སྒྲོད་པ་དབུ་རྩོག་ཡིན། །

དབངས་དེ་རྩོ་བ་གཙོག་པའི་ཐུག་སྟ་ཡིན། །
འགྱིག་དང་རྩོ་བ་གཙོག་པའི་ཐུག་སྟ་ཡིན། །
རེ་རྐྱེའི་རྩོག་མ་གཟེངས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལ། །
རྩོ་བ་ཆུག་ཆུག་གཙོག་པ་ཐེ་ཏུས་ཡིན། །

ད་ནི་དབངས་ཀྱི་ཁྲོད་ནས་ཉམས་ལེན་བྱེད། །
དབངས་ཀྱི་འདེགས་འཇོག་ཁྲོད་ནས་ཉམས་ལེན་བྱེད། །
སེམས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུད་སྐུད་རེ་རེར་དག་ཏུ་བསྩུན། །
ཡིད་ཀྱི་སྒྲ་ཏགས་སོ་སོར་ཤེད་ཀྱིས་བདུང་། །

ད་ནི་དབངས་ཀྱི་ཁྲོད་དུ་བློ་སྦྱོང་བགྱི། །
དབངས་ཀྱི་ལེན་འགྱུགས་ཁྲོད་དུ་བློ་སྦྱོང་བགྱི། །
དབང་པོའི་འཕར་ཆས་རེ་རེ་རྩལ་གྱིས་བརྟེད། །
ཤེས་པའི་གཏུས་བློ་སོ་སོ་སྤོབས་ཀྱིས་བསྐོར། །

ད་ནི་དབངས་ཀྱི་ཁྲོད་ནས་ངལ་གསོ་བསྟེན། །
དབངས་ཀྱི་ཁྱིམ་སྦྱོད་ཁྲོད་ནས་ངལ་གསོ་བསྟེན། །
བླ་ཡི་སྒྱུ་ལག་ཡོངས་རྩོགས་གཙང་མར་དགྱི། །
སྤོག་གི་མ་ལག་ཆ་ཆོང་དག་པར་བཀྲུ། །

ད་ནི་དབངས་ཀྱི་ཁྲོད་དུ་རས་པ་འགྱི། །
བསམ་བློ་ཧུར་ཧུར་གཏོང་བའི་རས་པ་འགྱི། །
རས་པ་རེ་རེ་ཆ་འདྲེ་དུང་ཕྱུར་ཡིན། །

པི་ཕྱུང་བདུངས་ཏེ་སྦྱིང་བུ་འབུད་རོགས་དང་། །

དེ་ནི་དབྱངས་ཀྱི་ཁྲོད་དུ་རྐྱེ་ལམ་འགྲེ། །
འཁྱལ་སྐྱུང་སོག་སོག་འགྱལ་བའི་རྐྱེ་ལམ་འགྲེ།།
རྐྱེ་ལམ་རེ་རེ་དགྱུམ་མདའ་དུང་ཕྱུར་ཡིན། །
པི་ཕྱུང་བདུངས་ཏེ་སྦྱིང་བུ་འབུད་རོགས་དང་། །

དེ་ནི་དབྱངས་ཀྱི་ཁྲོད་དུ་རྟ་ཕོ་འགྲེ། །
ཤུག་རྐྱེག་ཐག་ཐག་བརྒྱགས་པའི་རྟ་ཕོ་འགྲེ། །
རྟ་ཕོ་རེ་རེ་བཙོན་པ་དུང་ཕྱུར་ཡིན། །
པི་ཕྱུང་བདུངས་ཏེ་སྦྱིང་བུ་འབུད་རོགས་དང་། །

དེ་ནི་དབྱངས་ཀྱི་རྒྱུན་ལ་ཏིང་ངེར་འཇུག །
གདངས་ཀྱི་བསྒྱལ་མཚམས་རེ་ལ་ཏུར་རེ་བསམ། །
ཆུ་ལ་ཆུ་བུར་བཞིན་ཀྱི་གོ་རིམ་ཁྲོད། །
པི་ཕྱུང་བདུངས་ཏེ་སྦྱིང་བུ་འབུད་རོགས་དང་། །

རེས་ཚམ་ཡས་ཀྱི་རྣོ་སྐྱུད་འཕེན་ནས་གཏོང་། །
རེས་ཚམ་མས་ཀྱི་ཉག་སྐྱུད་སྒྲོད་ནས་བསྒྱིམ། །
སྣ་ཡི་ཡེར་མོ་རེ་རེ་སྦྱིང་བ་ཡིན། །
སྐྱད་ཀྱི་ལྷུག་ཤད་སོ་སོ་སྐྲོ་བ་ཡིན། །

དབྱངས་ཀྱི་སྒྲོད་མཚམས་གཅིག་གཅིག་སེམས་ཀྱིས་ཐེས། །
སེམས་ཀྱི་འཕྲོ་འདུ་ཁག་ཁག་དབྱངས་ཀྱིས་སྟོན། །
མགྲིན་པའི་སྦུག་ནས་ཕ་མ་ཟེར་ཞིང་འབོད། །
གྲི་བའི་ཁོག་ནས་ཕྲུ་ནུ་ཟེར་ཞིང་ད། །

རྣ་མཆོག་དབྱངས་ཀྱི་སྦྱན་ལ་གཞག་པར་བྱ། །
ཐུག་ཐུག་ཡོ་བ་མེད་པར་གཞག་པར་བྱ། །

མིག་ལྟེབས་སྟོང་ཀྱིས་ཆུམས་ལ་ག་ལེར་ཀྱིས། །
རང་སྟེའི་ཏུགས་ཐམ་མཆེན་པའི་ལོགས་ནས་མཐོན། །

མགོ་བོ་དབྱངས་ཀྱི་ས་ལ་བསྙེས་པར་བྱ། །
ཏུག་ཏུག་ཉམ་ང་མེད་པར་བསྙེས་པར་བྱ། །
ལག་རྲུང་དང་གར་ཞིག་ལ་ག་ལེར་ཀྱིས། །
རང་སྟེའི་དཔའ་དམ་ལོང་གའི་རྲུར་ནས་འབྲུད། །

གཟུགས་པོ་དབྱངས་ཀྱི་གསེབ་ཏུ་བཙོག་པར་བྱ། །
ཏུག་ཏུག་བག་ཚ་མེད་པར་བཙོག་པར་བྱ། །
ཁ་རྣངས་རིམ་ཀྱིས་ཐོང་ལ་ག་ལེར་ཀྱིས། །
རང་སྟེའི་བཀའ་གཚིགས་སྒྲོ་བའི་སྐང་ནས་འདྲིལ། །

དེ་ལྟར་དབྱངས་ཀྱི་བག་ཆགས་སད་གྱུར་ཏེ། །
གདངས་ཀྱི་སྐྱིབ་པ་མ་ལུས་བྱང་གྱུར་ཏེ། །
རུས་པའི་ཨ་སྲུ་ག་ལེར་སྐྱིན་པ་ཡིས། །
བགྲང་བྱ་ལྷ་བཅུའི་ལེ་དབར་སྐད་ཀྱིས་ལེན། །

དེ་ལྟར་དབྱངས་ཀྱི་ས་ལམ་རྟོགས་པ་དང་། །
གདངས་ཀྱི་འཁྲུལ་བ་ཐམས་ཅད་ཟད་པ་དང་། །
མེད་པའི་ཐག་མདུད་ག་ལེར་གྲོལ་བ་ཡིས། །
བགྲང་བྱ་ལྷ་བཅུའི་དཔག་ཚད་སྒྲ་ཡིས་འཇལ། །

དེ་ལྟར་དབྱངས་ཀྱི་བར་དོ་ལུལ་བྱས་ཏེ། །
གདངས་ཀྱི་ཞིང་མཚམས་དངོས་སུ་སྦྱར་བྱས་ཏེ། །
ཡིད་ཀྱི་འཕལ་ཁ་ག་ལེར་འཕོད་པ་ཡིས། །
བགྲང་བྱ་ལྷ་བཅུའི་རྒྱང་གྲགས་ངག་གིས་བཙོད། །

Bibliography

English Language Sources

Bate, Jonathan. 2010. *English Literature: A Very Short Introduction*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Beckwith, Christopher I. 2013. The Tibetans in the Ordos and North China: Consideration on the Role of the Tibetan Empire in World History. In Gray Tuttle and Kurtis R. Schaeffer (eds.), *The Tibetan History Reader*. New York: Columbia University Press, 133-41.
----. 1993. *The Tibetan Empire in Central Asia: A History of the Struggle for Great Power Among Tibetans, Turks, Arabs, and Chinese During the Early Middle Ages*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.

Berlin, Isaiah. 1972. The Bent Twig: A Note on Nationalism. In *Foreign Affairs*, Vol. 51, No. 1 (Oct., 1972), 11-30.

Buchung D. Sonam (ed.) 2013. *Tibetan Self-Immolations 1998-2012: News, Views & Global Response*. Dharamsala: Kirti Monastery.

Buffetrille, Katia and Françoise Robin (eds.) 2012. Tibet is Burning – Self-immolation: Ritual or Political Protest? In *Revue d'Etudes Tibétaines.* No 25, December 2012 http://himalaya.socanth.cam.ac.uk/collections/journals/ret/pdf/ret_25.pdf

The Dalai Lama. 2001. *Stages of Meditation*. Translated by Venerable Geshe Lobsang Jordhen, Lobsang Choephel Ganchenpa, and Jeremy Russel. London: Rider Books.
----. 2016. *Tibet and the Tibetan People's Struggle: 10 March Statements of the His Holiness the Dalai Lama (1961-2011)*. Dharamsala: Department of Information and International Relations.

Dawa Norbu. 1987. *Kache Phalu's Advice on the Art of Living*. Dharamsala: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives.

Dickinson, Emily. 1960. *The Complete Poems of Emily Dickinson*. Boston and Toronto: Little, Brown and Company.

Donne, John. 1955. *Complete Poetry and Selected Prose*. Edited by John Hayward. London: The Nonesuch Library.

Eliot, T. S. 1957. *On Poetry and Poets*. London: Faber and Faber Limited.
----. [1921] 1932. *T. S. Eliot: Selected Essays*. London: Faber and Faber.

Gendun Chopel. 2014. *Grains of Gold: Tales of a Cosmopolitan Traveler*. Translated by Thupten Jinpa and Donald S. Lopez Jr. Chicago. University of Chicago Press, 2014

Gedun Chophel. 1978. *The White Annals*. Translated by Samten Norboo. Dharamsala: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives.

Howes, Marjorie. 2006. Yeats and the Postcolonial. In Marjorie Howes and John Kelly (eds.), *The Cambridge Companion to W. B. Yeats*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 206-225.

Human Rights Watch. 2010. "I Saw It with My Own Eyes": Abuses by Chinese Security Forces in Tibet, 2008-2010. New York: A Report by Human Rights Watch.
----. 2009. China: Hundreds of Tibetan Detainees and Prisoners Unaccounted for: 'Quick Arrests and Quick Sentencings' Followed Tibetan Protests. At https://www.hrw.org/news/2009/03/09/china-hundreds-tibetan-detainees-and-prisoners-unaccounted

Information Office of the State Council of the People's Republic of China. (11 July) 2011. *Sixty Years of Peaceful Liberation of Tibet*. http://news.xinhuanet.com/english2010/china/2011-07/11/c_13978644.htm
----. 2001. *Tibet's March toward Modernization*. Beijing.

The International Campaign for Tibet. 30 November 2017. Self-immolations by Tibetans. At https://www.savetibet.org/resources/factsheets/self-immolations-by-tibetans/
----. 2012. *Storm in the Grasslands: Self-immolations in Tibet and Chinese policy*. Washington D. C. At https://www.savetibet.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/06/storminthegrassland-FINAL-HR.pdf
----. 2009. *A Great Mountain Burned by Fire: China's Crackdown in Tibet*. Washington , DC: A Report by the International Campaign for Tibet.

Jangbu. 2010. *The Nine-Eyed Agate: Poems and Stories*. Translated by Heather Stoddard. Plymouth: Lexington Books.

Jamgön Kongtrul Lodrö Tayé. 2008. *The Treasury of Knowledge: The Elements of Tantric Practice – A General Exposition of the Process of Meditation in the Indestructible Way of Secret Mantra*. Book 8, Part 3. Translated and introduced by Elio Guarisco and Ingrid Mclead. Ithaca, New York.

Jamyang Norbu. 2016. *The March 10th Memorial* website: http://m10memorial.org.

Jones, Katherine Duncan. (ed.) 1997. *Shakespeare's Sonnets*. London: The Arden Shakespeare.

Kapstein, Matthew T. 2006. *The Tibetans*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing.

Lama Jabb. 2018. "Acting and Speaking through Modern Tibetan Poetry". In Bhoil, Shelly and Enrique Galvan-Alvarez (eds.), *Tibetan Subjectivities on the Global Stage: Negotiating Dispossession*. Lanham: Lexington Books, 95-107.
----. 2015. *Oral and Literary Continuities in Modern Tibetan Literature: The Inescapable Nation*. Lanham: Lexington Books.

Lawrence, D. H. [1919] 1990. Poetry of the Present. In A Banerjee (ed.), *D. H. Lawrence's Poetry: Demon Liberated – A Collection of Primary and Secondary Materials*. London: Palgrave Macmillan, 47 – 51.

McGranahan, Carole and Ralph Litzinger. 2012. Self-immolation as Protest in Tibet. In *Cultural Anthropology's,* Hot Spot Forum. April 11, 2012 //culanth.org/?q=node/526.

Moore, Marianne. 1968. *The Complete Poems of Marianne Moore*. London: Faber and Faber.

Mullin, Glenn H. 2005. *Tsongkhapa's commentary entitled A Book of Three Inspirations: A Treatise on the Stages of Training in the Profound Path of Naro's Six Dhartnas, commonly referred to as The Three Inspirations*. Boulder: Snow Lion Publications.

Paulin, Tom. 1998. *The Day-Star of Liberty: William Hazlitt's Radical Style*. London: Faber and Faber.

Renan, Ernest. [1882] 1990. What Is a Nation? In Homi K. Bhabha (ed.), *Narration and Nation*. London and New York: Routledge, 8-22.

Russell, Bertrand. [1950] 2009. *Unpopular Essays*. London: Routledge.

Said, Edward, W. Said.1994. *Culture and Imperialism*. London: Vintage Books

Schaeffer, Kurtis R, Matthew T. Kapstein and Gray Tuttle (eds.) 2013. *Sources of Tibetan Tradition*. New York: Columbia University Press.

van Schaik, Sam. 2011. *Tibet: A History*. New Haven and London: Yale University Press.

Schwartz, Ronald D. 1994. *Circle of Protest: Political Ritual in the Tibetan Uprising*. London: Hurst & Company.

Shelley, Percy Bysshe. [1821] 1968. A Defence of Poetry. In Edmund D. Jones (ed.), *English Critical Essays* (Nineteenth Century). London: Oxford University Press, 102-38.

Shokdung. 2016. *The Division of Heaven and Earth: On Tibet's Peaceful Revolution*. Translated by Matthew Akester. London: C. Hurst & Co.

Smith, Warren W. 2010. *Tibet's Last Stand? The Tibetan Uprising of 2008 and China's Response*. Boulder: Rowman & Littlefield Publishers, INC.

Steiner, George. 1967. *Language and Silence*. London: Faber and Faber.

Takeuchi, Tsuguhito. 2003. Military Administration and Military Duties in Tibetan-ruled Central Asia (8th-9th Century). In Alex McKay (ed.), *Tibet and Her Neighbours: A History*. London: Edition Hansjörg Mayer, 43-54.

Tsangnyön Heruka. 2010. *The Life of Milarepa*. Translated by Andrew Quintman. London: Penguin Classics.

Tsering Topgyal. 2016a. *China and Tibet: The Perils of Insecurity*. London: Hurst & Company.
----. 2016b. The Tibetan Self-Immolations as Counter-Securitization: Towards an Inter-Unit Theory of Securitization. In *Asian Security*, Vol. 12, No. 3, 166-187.

Tucci, Giuseppe. 1955. The Secret Characters of the Kings of Ancient Tibet. In *East and West*, Vol. 6, No. 3, 197-205.

Uebach, Helga. 2009. From Red Tally to Yellow Paper – The Official Introduction of Paper in Tibetan Admistration in 744/745. In Françoise Pommaret and Jean-Luc Achard (eds.), *Tibetan Studies in Honor of Samten Karmay*. Dharamsala: Amnye Machen Institute, 57-69.
----. 2003. On the Tibetan Expansion from Seventh to Mid Eighth Century and the administration (khö) of the Countries Subdued. In Alex McKay (ed.), *Tibet and Her Neighbours: A History*. London: Edition Hansjörg Mayer, 21-27.

Walter, Michael L. 2009. *Buddhism and Empire: The Political and Religious Culture of Early Tibet*. Leiden: Brill.

Wordsworth, William. [1800] 1968. Poetry and Poetic Diction [Preface to the Second Edition of Lyrical Ballads, 1800]. In Edmund D. Jones (ed.), *English Critical Essays* (Nineteenth Century). London: Oxford University Press, 102-38.

Yeats, W. B. 2001. *W. B. Yeats: The Major Works including Poems, Plays, and Critical Prose*. Oxford: Oxford Wold Classics.

Tibetan Language Sources

དགེ་འདུན་ཆོས་འཕེལ། 1994. དགེ་འདུན་ཆོས་འཕེལ་གྱི་གསུང་རྩོམ། *The Collected Works of Gedun Choepel*, Vol I & III. དེབ་གཉིས་པ་དང་། དེབ་གསུམ་པ། བོད་ ལྗོངས་བོད་ཡིག་དཔེ་རྙིང་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།

དགེ་འདུན་རབ་གསལ། 2018. དགེ་འདུན་རབ་གསལ་གྱིས་སེང་རྡོར་གྱི་སྙན་ངག་སྐྱོང་བ། Gedun Rabsal On Sangdhor's Poetry, མཚོད་མེ་བོད་ཀྱི་རྩོམ་རིག་དྲ་བ། http://www.tibetcm.com/contemporary/literary-essays/2018-04-

21/8608.html

མགོན་པོ་རྒྱལ་མཚན། 1998. གངས་ཅན་རལ་པ Ralpa of the Snowland, པེ་ཅིན། མི་ རིགས་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།

བློ་ཡོན། 2011. བཅད་རྩོམ་གསར་མ་ཞེས་པའི་རྩོམ་ལུས་ཀྱི་གོ་དོན་བརྗོད་པ། An Interpretative Commentary on the New Verse, མཚོད་མེ་བོད་ཀྱི་རྩོམ་རིག་དྲ་བ། http://www.tibetcm.com/contemporary/literary-essays/2014-12-11/6758.html

སྦྱོལ་མ་དང་། གཅི་རྗེ་རྒྱབས། ཚེ་རིང་རྡོ་རྗེ། བཀྲ་ཤིས་རབ་བརྟན། དཔལ་མགོན་རྒྱབས། དགོན་ མཚོག་བཀྲ་ཤིས། སྐལ་བཟང་གྲགས་པ་བཅས་ཀྱིས་རྩོམ་སྒྲིག་གནང་།། 2008. ཤར་དུང་རི། *The Eastern Snow Mountain*, སྦྱིའི་དེབ་གྲངས་ཉེར་གཅིག་པ། ལན་དྲུག   ཟླང་ཐ།

2001. སྣ་ཚོམ་གཟི་མིག་དགུ་བ། *Nine-eyed Zi Poems*, Tim Ma Book Company Limited.

སྟེང་ལྷགས། 2017 བོད་ལྗོངས་ཀྱི་མི་རིགས་ཁག་དང་ལས་རིགས་ཁག་གི་མང་ཚོགས་ཚོས་ཞིང་བྲན་ཁྲི་ཚོ་བཅུར་བཅིངས་འགྲོལ་ཐོབ་ནས་ལོ་58འཁོར་བར་ཐུན་མོང་ཐོག་རྟེན་འབྲེལ་ཞུས་པ། People of every ethnic group and every profession of the Tibetan Autonomous Region have together celebrated the 58th Anniversary of One Million Serfs' Emancipation Day   *people.com.cn*. http://tibet.people.com.cn/15653450.html

ཐུབ་བསྟན་ཕྲིན་པ་དང་བློ་བཟང་རྡོ་རྗེ་རབ་སྟེང་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཞུ་སྒྲིག་བྱས། 2006. ལེགས་བཤད་ལྷུགས་ཀྱི་བསྐལ་བྱའི་དཔེ་ཚོགས། *An Anthology of Eloquently Uttered Advice*, ལས། ཁ་ཆེ་ཕ་ལུའི་འཇིག་རྟེན་ལས་འབྲས་རྩེ་ལུགས་ཀྱི་བསྐུལ་བྱ།*Khache Phalu's Advice on the Observance of Secular Kharmic Laws*, སྐྱེ་ལིར། བོད་ཀྱི་གཙུག་ལག་ཞིབ་དཔྱོད་ཁང་ནས་དཔར་སྐྲུན་ཞུས།

དོར་ཞི་གདོང་དྲུག་སྙེམས་བློ། 2004a. དཔྱད་ཚོམ་མུན་འཇོམས་ནོར་བུའི་ཕྲེང་བ། Critical Essays: *A Rosary of Jewels for Dispelling Darkness*, ལན་གྲུ། གན་སུའི་མི་རིགས་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།
----. 2004b. སྣན་ཚོག་རིག་པའི་ཤེས་བྱ་གནད་བསྡུས་ཀྱི་བཀད་སྤྱར་ཚོམ་རིག་འཇུག་སྒོ *Entrance Door to Literature: A Concise Knowledge of Poetics with Expositions and Exemplifications*, གན་སུའི་མི་རིགས་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།

མདའ་བཅན་པོ། 2008. ཁྱེད་རང་མི་འཐད་ནའང་ངས་འདི་ལྟར་བྲིས་ན་ཅི་རེད། Even If You Don't Like It, So What? I Write Like This, མཚོད་མེ་བོད་ཀྱི་ཚོམ་རིག་དྲ་བ། www.tibetcm.com

མིག་དམར། (ed.) 1992. ཁ་ཆེ་ཕ་ལུ། *Khache Phalu*, བོད་ལྗོངས་མི་མང་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།

ཞོགས་དུང་། 2009. གནམ་ས་གོ་འབྱེད། ས་བྱི་ཞི་བའི་གསར་བརྗེ་ལ་བྲིས་པ། *Separating the Sky and the Earth: On the Peaceful Revolution of the Earth-Mouse Year,*

སེང་རྡོར། Seng rdor. 2014. བཅུད་གསར་སྣན་ངག་གི་སྐྱི་ཐོན་མཆར་སིལ་འཐུལ་བའི་ ཁྲི་རིལ་ཞེས་བྱ་བ། Sugary and Fruity Sweets – An Overview of the New Verse, མཆོད་མེ་བོད་ཀྱི་ཚོམ་རིག་དྲ་བ། http://www.tibetcm.com/special-ist/sangdor/2014-12-11/6811.html

----. 2013. སྐད་ཀྱི་གཏིང་། སེང་རྡོར་གྱི་སྙན་ངག་ཅེ་གྲུ་ཕྱོགས་བསྡུས། *The Depths of the Tibetan Language: The Best Poems of Sangdhor*, སེང་རྡོར་དུ་བ་ཚོམ་སྒྲིག་ཁང་།

----. 2011a. ཞག་གའི་ལྫང་སེར་སྐྱོ་དམར། *The Green, Yellow, Pink and Red on the Pass*, ལན་གྲུ། གན་སུའི་མི་རིགས་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།

----. 2011b. *rtsom rgod thag drud ma* ཚོམ་རྒོལ་ཐག་དྲུལ་མ། Wild *Writings Dragging a Lasso*, སེང་རྡོར་དུ་བ་ཚོམ་སྒྲིག་ཁང་།

----. 2011c. ཀྱུ་ངན་ཞུ་བ། To Mourn   སེང་རྡོར་དུ་བ། http://www.sang-dhor.com/blog_c.asp?id=4907&a=sangdhor

----. 2010. སོ་སྐྱེས་སྐད་སྒྲ། *Voice of an Ordinary Person*, ལས་བཅད་ཚོམ་གསར་མའི་ལུགས་ཀྱི་སྙན་ངག་གི་བསྒྲགས་གཏམ། Manifesto of the New Verse Poetry, ལན་གྲུ། གན་སུའི་མི་རིགས་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།

----. 2008. ཏུལ་ཕོད། *Audacity*   ལན་གྲུ། གན་སུའི་མི་རིགས་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།

----. 2006. ཀྱུ་ཟུར་གྱི་གསལ་སྒྲིབ། *Clarity and Obscurity in the Corner*, ལན་གྲུ། གན་སུའི་མི་རིགས་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།

ཧོར་ཁང་བསོད་ནམས་དཔལ་འབར།   1999.   ཧོར་ཁང་བསོད་ནམས་དཔལ་འབར་གྱི་གསུང་ཚོམ་ཕྱོགས་བསྒྲིགས *The Collected Writings of Horkhang Sonam Palbar*, པེ་ཅིན། ཀྲུང་གོའི་བོད་ཀྱི་ཤེས་རིག་དཔེ་སྐྲུན་ཁང་།

ཧོར་གཙང་འཇིགས་མེད།   2018.   ཧོར་གཙང་འཇིགས་མེད་ཀྱིས་སེང་རྡོར་གྱི་སྙན་ངག་སྐྱེང་བ། Hortsang Jigme On Sangdhor's Poetry, མཆོད་མེ་བོད་ཀྱི་ཚོམ་རིག་དྲ་བ།   http://www.tibetcm.com/contemporary/literary-essays/2018-04-21/8609.html

ཨ་རིག་དགེ་མཚོང་། 2011. སེང་རྡོར་གྱི་ཀུང་རྗེའི་འདི་ཆེ་ག Aren't These Footprints of Sangdhor Big?   མཚོ་སྔོན་པོ་ཟིན་བྲིས། http://blog.amdotibet.cn/gethong/archives/43306.aspx

ཨ་རིག་འགྱུར་མེད་དང་ཚོངས་དབྱངས་རྒྱ་མཚོ། 2013 རྫོ་ནང་འཛམ་ཐང་དགོན་པའི་དགེ་བསྐོས་ལ་ཁྲིམས་ཐག་བཅད་འདུག The Disciplinarian Monk of the Zamthang Jonang Monastery Is Sentenced, ཁ་བརྡ། http://www.khabdha.org/?p=55536

❖

An outline of the sound structure of Lhagang Choyu: A newly recognised highly endangered language in Khams Minyag

Hiroyuki SUZUKI & Sonam Wangmo

(IKOS, Universitetet i Oslo)

1. Introduction

This article provides a preliminary phonological sketch of Lhagang Choyu—a Tibeto-Burman language variety that has not undergone previous linguistic analysis. The analysis is based on only around 700 words, which the present authors were able to collect during two fieldwork trips conducted in 2015 and 2016.[1] This paper also attempts to compare the phonology of Lhagang Choyu with its closest related language, i.e. Choyu (a.k.a. Queyu; ISO 639-3 code: qvy). This comparison is based on previous studies of Choyu (e.g., Wang 1991; Nishida 2008; Lu 1985; Nagano & Prins 2013).

Lhagang Choyu has not gained much interest from researchers despite the fact that there are many publications focusing on the region (traditionally called Minyag or Minyag Rabgang of Khams).[2] Several general reference works concerning the region where Lhagang Choyu is spoken have been published, e.g., Yang (1994), *Kangding Xianzhi* (1995), Ikeda (2003), and Rig-'dzin bsTan-srung (2015); yet none of these mention Lhagang Choyu. Anthropological works, e.g., Schneider (2013), (2016), and Tan (2013a; 2013b), also do not mention Lhagang Choyu. There are also several linguistic descriptions on the nearby non-Tibetic language of Minyag (or Darmdo Minyag) that do not mention Lhagang Choyu, e.g., Sun (1983), Huang (1991; 2009), Song (2006), and Dawa Drolma & Suzuki (2016). The first report regarding the sociolinguistic situation of the Lhagang Choyu language was published in Suzuki & Sonam Wangmo (2016a), and it is listed as a language in Roche & Suzuki (2017). Unfortunately, by the time the

---

[1] We conducted a third fieldwork trip in 2017; however, we were not able to collect more words.

[2] Toponyms that have originated from Tibetan are first given in Chinese pinyin, followed by a Tibetan romanised transliteration (based on de Nebesky-Wojkowitz 1956: xv) and finally by a transliteration style used henceforth in the article.

authors of this present paper became aware of Lhagang Choyu's existence, Lhagang Choyu had already become moribund. It is likely that there are no longer speakers that acquired Lhagang Choyu as a mother tongue; with less than 100 people who have acquired it as a second language. It has been spoken in only one hamlet called Tage [Thabs-mkhas; Thamkhas] of Tagong [lHa-sgang; Lhagang] Town, Kangding [Dar-mdo] Municipality, Ganzi [dKar-mdzes] Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture, Sichuan Province, China (Fig. 1 & 2).[3]
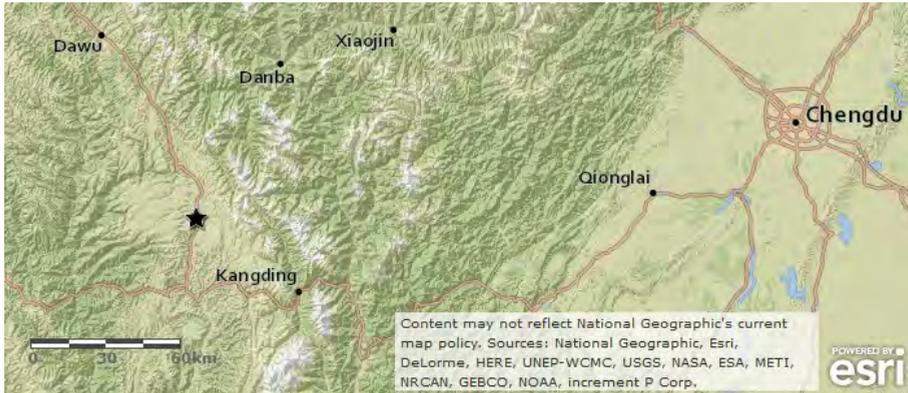
Fig. 1 — Geographical position of Lhagang Town[4]

The language data was collected from speakers living in Lhagang Village—the cultural and administrative centre of Lhagang Town. Most Lhagang Choyu speakers are now speakers of Khams Tibetan (ISO 639-3 code: khg), of which their spoken variety is the Thamkhas dialect of the Minyag Rabgang dialect group.[5] Those who are able to speak Lhagang Choyu usually do not use Lhagang Choyu anymore and instead speak Khams Tibetan. They use Khams Tibetan even within their family in which all the members are from Thamkhas Hamlet. Hence, the second author, native of Lhagang Village, has recently discovered that most middle-aged and younger villagers living in Lhagang Village do not even know the existence of the

---

[3] There is another spelling for this hamlet: Thal-skas (Rig-'dzin bsTan-srung 2015: 55).

[4] The figures in the article were designed by Arc GIS online: https://www.arcgis.com/home/webmap/viewer.html

[5] Khams Tibetan should be considered as a language complex rather than a single language. See Tournadre (2014) and Suzuki (2015b; 2016). The Thamkhas dialect of the Minyag Rabgang dialect group is closely related to the Zhonglu subidalect mentioned by sKal-bzang 'Gyur-med (1985). For a detailed description based on sound changes (or shared innovations) corresponding to Literary Tibetan, see Suzuki (2016). For descriptions of dialects belonging to this group, see Suzuki (2007) and Suzuki & Sonam Wangmo (2015; 2017).

Lhagang Choyu language.
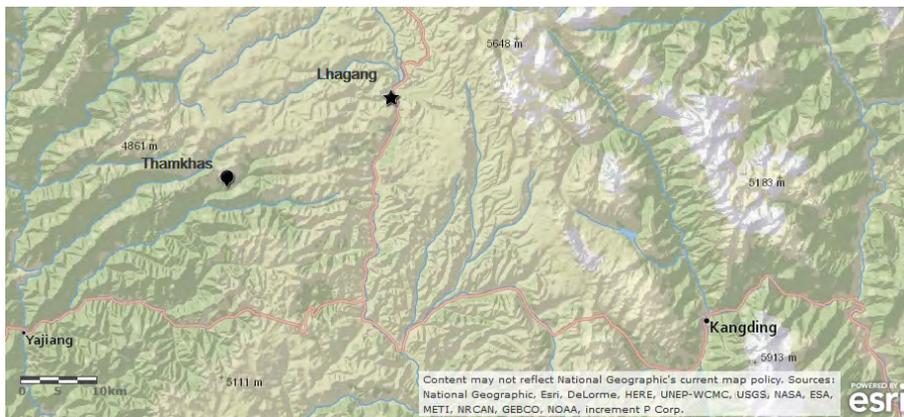
Fig. 2 — Geographical position of Thamkhas Hamlet and Lhagang Village

As the language name suggests, Lhagang Choyu is considered as a language closely related to the Choyu language, particularly to the dialect of Choyu spoken to the west of Thamkhas Hamlet (Suzuki & Sonam Wangmo 2016a). According to a traditional oral story, ancestors of Tibetans who are now living in Thamkhas Hamlet migrated more than 200 years ago from the present Choyu-speaking area of Xinlong [Nyag-rong] County.[6] Thus, we can hypothesise an existence of a historical relationship between Lhagang Choyu and Choyu. In addition, a few Lhagang Choyu speakers remember being able to communicate with some Tibetans from the Choyu-speaking area of Nyagrong (*nyag rong logs skad* 'Nyagrong's local speech') by using Lhagang Choyu (or *skad logs* 'impure language').[7] The reported intelligibility between the variety of Choyu spoken in Nyagrong and

---

[6] The person that we interviewed clearly mentions that her ancestors came from a place called /tɕʰo ji/; however, none of the Tibetans from Thamkhas Village who live in Lhagang Village know the exact place of /tɕʰo ji/, and they just say "somewhere in Nyagrong." The first author conducted several interviews in Litang [Li-thang] County where he was told by a Choyu-speaking lama that "Choyu" just denoted today's Zituoxi [rTse-thog-gshis] Township of Xinlong County; there are no locations called Choyu within the territory of Litang County. In other interviews, the first author has confirmed that no Choyu speakers living in Litang County consider the toponym "Choyu" as designating an area within Litang.

[7] The first author has also confirmed that Tibetans (Khams speakers) in Litang County often call the Choyu language *skad logs* in contrast with *mi nyag skad* 'the Minyag language(s)' (which includes Darmdo Minyag and Nyagrong Minyag). The term *skad logs* is difficult to translate well, but the morpheme *logs* definitely carries a pejorative sense that, when used in *skad logs*, can also mean 'biased', 'slanting', 'leaning', and 'non-authentic'.

Lhagang Choyu certainly suggests a close linguistic relationship between the two varieties within the highly variegated language situation of this area (Roche & Suzuki 2017; 2018). However, there have been no systematic studies of intelligibility between these languages.

Several dialects of Choyu have undergone analysis by linguists; e.g., the dialect in Youlaxi [gYang-la-gshis] Township of Xinlong County (Wang 1991), the dialect in Rongba [Rong-pa] Township of Litang [Li-thang] County (Nishida 2008), the dialect in Tuanjie Township (Lu 1985) and the dialect in Gala/Xiala Township (Nagano & Prins 2013) of Yajiang [Nyag-chu-kha] County.[8] Figure 3 shows the geographical distribution of these Choyu dialects and the location of Thamkhas Hamlet. In addition, Figure 3 shows how Thamkhas is located in a different valley from all the other Choyu dialects. The Choyu dialects are principally spoken along the Nyagchu River Valley.
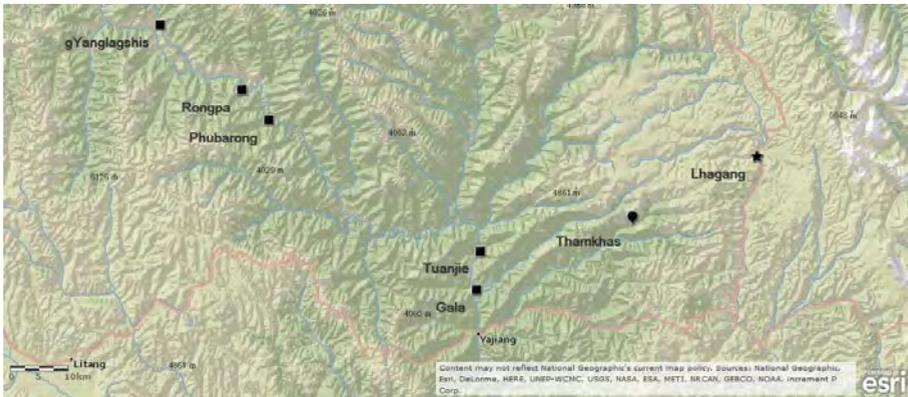
Fig. 3 — Geographical position of Lhagang Choyu (indicated with a star) and Choyu (shown with black squares)

In Table 1, we can observe as comparison of eleven lexemes in Lhagang Choyu and five Choyu dialects (Tuanjie, Gala, Phubarong, Rongpa, and gYanglagshis).

Table. 1 — Limited lexical comparison between Lhagang Choyu and Choyu[9]

	Lhagang Choyu	Choyu				
meaning	Lhagang	Tuanjie	Gala	Phubarong	Rongpa	gYanglagshis

---

[8]   Lu (1985) names the language in Tuanjie Township "Zhaba;" however, it is rather a dialect of Choyu (Wang 1991). Xiala is locally pronounced as [kala] in Sichuanese (Southwestern Mandarin), as shown in Nagano & Prins (2013), and thus henceforth, we will refer to this dialect as 'Gala'.

[9]   Sources: Lhagang Choyu: the present authors' field note; Tuanjie: Lu (1985) and Sun (1991); Gala: Nagano & Prins (2013); Phubarong: the first author's field notes; Rongpa: Nishida (2008); gYanglagshis: Wang (1991).

person	ˉm̥ɯ	m̥ɯ⁵⁵	m̥ə	ˉm̥ɯ	ⁿm̥ə	m̥ə⁵⁵
pig	ˉʋe	we⁵⁵	-	ˉve	ⁿvue	ve¹³
head	ˉqʰo	xo⁵⁵	χo	ˉqʰo	ⁿqʰo	qʰo⁵⁵
blood	ˉsəˠ	sai³³	sai	ˉsɯ	ⁿsi	si⁵⁵
meat	ˉɬo	tʰõ⁵⁵	tʰo	ˉɬo	ⁿtʰo	tʰo⁵⁵
tooth	ˉki	ku⁵⁵	ku	ˉᵞki	-	ski⁵⁵
sun	ˉmi tsi	ŋi⁵⁵mɯ⁵⁵	ɲima	ˉmə’ ʰtsə	ⁿpə	pu⁵⁵
year	ˉkʰa	ko⁵⁵	lə'sə	ˉkwə	ⁿku	kuə⁵⁵
yesterday	ˉji’ ɕə	ji¹⁵si¹³	ji'sə	ˉji sə	ⁿɣɨ ʃi	ɣɯ ʃi

There are three lexemes of interest in Table 1 worth commenting on. Firstly, no Tibeto-Burman language, at least from the data that is available, has forms for the lexeme 'sun' similar to the forms in Lhagang Choyu and the Phubarong dialect of Choyu, i.e. /ˉmi tsi/ and /ˉmə’ ʰtsə/ respectively (e.g., see Shirai et al. 2016). Secondly, the word for 'tooth' with a /k-/ initial is attested only in Lhagang Choyu and Choyu among the languages of western Sichuan (see Suzuki and Sonam Wangmo 2016a). Thirdly, the word for 'person' with a voiceless nasal is also unique to Lhagang Choyu and Choyu among the languages spoken in the vicinity (see Huang 1992). These three unique lexical commonalities suggest a close relationship between Lhagang Choyu and Choyu.

From the data provided by previous works on Choyu, the Choyu language can be divided into two dialect groups based on the number of consonant clusters a dialect has. gYanglagshis and Rongpa have many, whereas Tuanjie and Gala have fewer than gYanglagshis and Rongpa. This typologically superficial feature reflects a historical divergence within Choyu and may be a clue for understanding whether or not Lhagang Choyu is related to the Choyu dialects in Nyagrong, as the oral migration history given by Thamkhas Tibetans suggests. For this purpose, we should first clarify the phonology of Lhagang Choyu, then seek shared innovations attested in etyma.

The primary purpose of this article is to provide a phonological sketch of Lhagang Choyu using the limited lexical data that is available. Since the language is already moribund, it has been difficult to access and obtain language data. Many word forms have been forgotten and replaced by Khams Tibetan. Making a long sentence using only Lhagang Choyu is basically impossible for the remaining speakers in Thamkhas Hamlet. Therefore, we provide an analysis based only on about 700 words as well as some fragments of morphological data. Thus, this article cannot provide a complete phonological analysis, but rather will attempt to make some preliminary claims about the phonology of Lhagang Choyu based on the data that is available. In addition, our phonological analysis follows a more "broad phonetic" approach to analysis (Timberlake 2004: 28). There are several reasons we take this approach. First, our data is limited, and thus making

strong claims about the phonology seems unwise. Second, there are sounds in Lhagang Choyu that need "extensive discussion about the actual properties of the sounds, rendering binary decisions about what is or is not phonemic uninformative" (Timberlake 2004: 28). For example, Lhagang Choyu has two labio-dental continuants (the approximate *v* and the fricative *v*), both of which we represent in the consonant inventory. The approximate *v* and the fricative *v* might indeed be a single phoneme, but the present data suggest that at these sound are at least partially contrastive. Thirdly, our approach is more conducive to doing dialectology, which is an urgent research need from an areal perspective. An approach that is overly focused on phonological economy does not always reflect how a native speaker may perceive dialect variation and may even hide some of the contrasts that are primarily motivated by dialect variation. Following the phonological analysis, we provide a preliminary comparative analysis of the phonology and lexicon of Lhagang Choyu with a number of Choyu dialects. Our conclusion is that Lhagang Choyu is related most closely to the Choyu dialects of Nyagrong.[10]

2. A preliminary phonological sketch

A preliminary phonological sketch of Lhagang Choyu is described below, divided into four parts: consonants, vowels, suprasegmentals, and phonotactics. Typically it is indispensable in phonological analysis to find minimal pairs. Unfortunately, only a small number of minimal pairs can be found in our Lhagang Choyu database of 700 words. However, we do have enough data to provide a rough and preliminary phonological sketch based on minimal and near-minimal pairs as well as complementary distribution.

-Consonant inventory

From our data, we propose 54 consonants in Lhagang Choyu, as is shown in the following table:

Table. 2 — Consonant inventory of Lhagang Choyu

plosive	p^h	t^h		t^h			k^h	q^h	
	p	t		t			k	q	ʔ
	b	d		ɖ			g		
affricate		ts^h	$tʃ^h$		$tɕ^h$				
		ts	tʃ		tɕ				
		dz			dʑ				

---

[10] Due to limited accessibility to Lhagang Choyu, the authors cannot provide an exhaustive linguistic comparison, as is provided in Huang (2001).

fricative	(ɸ)*	s	ʃ		ʂ	ɕ		x		h
	v	z	ʒ		ʐ			ɣ	ʁ	ɦ
nasal	m	n	n̠		ɳ			ŋ	ɴ	
	m̥	n̥			ɳ̊			ŋ̊	ɴ̥	
liquid		l		r						
		l̥								
approximant	w ʋ						j			

* /ɸ/ appears only as a preinitial and never as a main initial. See discussion in 3.2.2.

N.B.1. /d/ and /dʑ/ do not appear as simple initials. Since other voiced obstruents exist just as simple initials, we can propose the existence of the two consonants.

N.B.2. /ʔ/: Glottal stops could be interpreted as an allophone of a zero-initial. However, we prefer to analyze glottal stops as a consonant phoneme because it provides a simpler explanation of syllable structure as requiring a consonant onset. See Phonotactics for further explanation.

Complex initials are attested and include the following preinitials: /ᵖ–, ᵇ–, ᶲ–, ᵛ–, ʷ–, ᵐ–, ˣ–, ˠ–/.

-Vowels

There are eleven vowels in Lhagang Choyu, as seen in Table 3.

Table. 3 — Vowels of Lhagang Choyu

i	e	ɛ	a	ɑ	ɔ	o	u	ɯ	ʉ	ə

Three secondary articulations (nasalisation, velarisation, and labialisation) are attested, as discussed with examples in Section 3.3.2.

-Suprasegmentals

Lhagang Choyu has a word-tone system, distinguishing two types of tone: 'high' and 'low'. We represent the high tone with the symbol ˉ and the low tone with the acute accent symbol ´, both of which we place before the word. Pitch height can be identified phonetically for the first two syllables of a word, but the third syllable of trisyllabic words is always atonal. Stress is also contrastive and is represented with ', which denotes that the preceding syllable has stress. In multi-syllabic words, stress causes the following syllable to become atonal. See Section 4 for further explanation.

-Phonotactics

   Lhagang Choyu's basic syllable template is CV, and its maximum is ᶜᶜCV, of which the first two elements (ᶜᶜ) are preinitials. We do not have any examples in our data of a syllable without an initial consonant. Preinitials are either nasals (prenasalisation and heterorganic /ᴺ/), glottal fricatives (preaspiration), or oral sounds such as /ᵖ, ᵇ, ᶲ, ᵛ, ˠ, ˠ, ʷ/. Syllables are always open.

3. Segmental sound structure

When doing phonology, it is typical to conduct analysis on native words and loanwords separately. However, due to the small amount of data, this methodology is not feasible. Lhagang Choyu has many Tibetan loanwords, several of which are not so similar to any other dialect in the surrounding area. [11] We suppose that these Tibetan loanwords are quite old and have adapted to the sound structure of Lhagang Choyu. Therefore, we include Tibetan loanwords as necessary data for phonological analysis.

3.1 Combining initials and vowels

   The following table (Table 4) contains all the possible combinations of initials with vowels found in our data. Attested combinations are marked with an X. We are not making a claim that these are all the possible combinations of simple initial consonants with vowels as the data we have is very limited. Initials here can occur with or without a preinitial. Vowels can be with or without secondary articulation (e.g., nasalisation, velarisation, and labialisation).

Table. 4 — Combinations of initials and vowels

	i	e	ɛ	a	ɑ	ɔ	o	u	ɯ	ʉ	ə
pʰ		X		X	X		X	X			X
p	X	X	X	X			X	X	X		X
b	X	X	X	X				X	X		
tʰ				X	X		X	X			
t	X	X		X	X		X	X	X	X	X
d	X	X	X	X				X			X
ʈʰ		X		X	X		X	X			
ʈ	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X		X
ɖ			X	X	X		X	X	X		
kʰ	X	X		X				X	X		X

k	X	X	X	X			X	X	X		X
g	X	X		X	X		X	X	X		X
qʰ				X	X		X		X		X
q				X			X				
ʔ				X			X	X			X
tsʰ		X		X		X	X	X			X
ts	X	X		X	X		X				X
dz		X		X			X		X		
tʃʰ					X				X		X
tʃ				X							
tɕʰ	X	X					X	X	X	X	X
tɕ	X	X		X	X		X	X	X		X
dʑ		X	X	X	X	X			X		X
v				X				X	X		X
s	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X		X
z	X	X		X		X	X	X	X		X
ʃ	X			X	X				X		X
ʒ				X						X	X
ʂ				X							
ɕ	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X		X
ʑ	X	X		X			X	X			X
x		X	X						X		
ɣ				X	X		X	X			
ʁ		X		X	X		X				X
h	X			X				X			
ɦ											X
m	X	X	X	X	X		X	X			X
m̥		X	X						X		
n	X	X	X	X			X	X	X		X
n̥	X			X	X						X
ṇ							X				
n̠ʲ̥	X	X		X			X				
ɳ̊	X	X		X							
ŋ				X							X
ŋ̊		X					X	X			X
ɴ									X		X
ɴ̥									X		X
l		X	X		X		X	X	X		X
l̥	X			X	X		X	X			
r	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X		X
w				X		X	X	X			X
ʋ	X	X							X		X
j	X			X	X	X	X		X	X	

3.2 Consonants

Examples of consonants are provided in this section organised according to manner of articulation. Simple consonants initials are discussed in 3.2.1 and consonant clusters are discussed in 3.2.2.

3.2.1 Simple consonant initials
-obstruents
    labial plosives
      /pʰ/   /⁻pʰa/ 'pig year'

/p/   /ˉpə' tʃa/ 'insect'; /ˉʔa pa/ 'father (address term)'
/b/   /ˉtɕə' be tə/ 'like this'

alveolar-retroflex plosives
 /tʰ/   /ˊtʰɑ re/ 'far'
 /t/   /ˊtɑ pʰo/ 'put (soil) on'; /ˊta ra/ 'cheese'
 /d/   No simple initial examples; see prenasalisation and preaspiration.
 /ʈʰ/   /ˊʈʰa xu/ 'kettle'
 /ʈ/   /ˊʈi/ 'mule'; /ˊʈo mu/ 'straight'
 /ɖ/   No simple initial examples; see prenasalisation in 3.2.2.

velar-uvular-glottal plosives
 /kʰ/   /ˉkʰa/ 'snow'; /ˉkʰu/ 'smoke'
 /k/   /ˉtɕa ka/ 'thing'; /ˉki/ 'tooth'
 /g/   /ˊga pu/ 'big'; /ˊgu za/ 'noodle'
 /qʰ/   /ˊqʰa ʰpi/ 'story'; /ˉqʰo/ 'head'
 /q/   /ˉqa ʑi/ 'pony'; /ˊqo zə/ 'tall'
 /ʔ/   /ˊʔa ma/ 'mother'; /ˉʔo ⁿdi/ 'throat'

alveolar-postalveolar-prepalatal affricates
 /tsʰ/   /ˉtsʰaˠ' tsʰaˠ/ 'thin'
 /ts/   /ˊtsəˠ/ '3ʳᵈ person singular'
 /dz/   No simple initial examples; see prenasalisation and preaspiration in 3.2.2.
 /tʃʰ/   /ˉtʃʰɯ/ 'dog'
 /tʃ/   /ˉpə' tʃa/ 'insect'
 /tɕʰ/   /ˉtɕʰo kʰɔ̃/ 'kettle'
 /tɕ/   /ˉtɕɯ/ 'waste'
 /dʑ/   No simple initial examples; see prenasalisation and preaspiration in 3.2.2.

-continuants
 labial-labiodental fricatives and approximants
 /v/   /ˉvə/ 'tsampa (roasted barley)'
 /w/   /ˉwə' ʑi/ '*mdzo* (hybrid of yak and cow)'
 /ʋ/   /ˉʋə' ʋə/ 'soft'
 These three are likely to be contrastive as simple initials.

 alveolar-postalveolar-prepalatal fricatives
 /s/   /ˉse/ 'wood'

/z/   /ˊze/ 'liver'
/ʃ/   /ˉʃə rə/ 'bone'
/ʒ/   /ˊʒə/ 'water'
/ʂ/   /ˊta ʂa/ 'tear up'
/ɕ/   /ˊɕe/ 'who'
/ʐ/   /ˊʐe/ 'house'

velar-uvular-glottal fricatives
/x/   /ˉxe' ʑi/ 'calf'; /ˊʈˌa xu/ 'earthen jar'
/ɣ/   /ˊɣa/ 'fox'; /ˊɣu pa/ 'owl'
/ʁ/   /ˉʁa/ 'gate'; /ˉʁe/ 'neck'
/h/   /ˉhu tsʰa/ 'chili'
/ɦ/   /ˊɦə qə le/ 'wear a ring'; /ˊku ɦu/ 'exchange'
Full contrast between these sounds is not attested.

labial, alveolar. postalveolar, and prepalatal nasals
/m/   /ˉma/ 'butter'
/m̥/   /ˉm̥e/ 'hair'
/n/   /ˉni/ 'ear'
/ɳ/   /ˉɳi/ 'nose'
/n̪/   /ˉn̪o' n̪o/ 'bitter'; cf. /ˊno ɦbɯ/ 'jewel'
/ȵ/   /ˉȵi' ȵi/ 'black'
/ȵ̥/   /ˉȵ̥i/ 'knee'

velar-uvular nasals
/ŋ/   /ˊŋə ŋo/ 'we'
/ŋ̥/   /ˉŋ̥ə' ŋ̥ə/ 'blue'
/ɴ/   /ˉɴə' ɴə/ 'bright'
/ɴ̥/   /ˉɴ̥ə' ɴ̥ə/ 'yellow'

liquids and approximants
/l/   /ˉlu/ 'stone'
/l̥/   /ˉl̥a/ 'wind'
/r/   /ˉrɑ/ 'female yak'
/j/   /ˊjo/ 'rabbit year'

3.2.2 Complex consonants

There is a rich inventory of complex consonant cluster initials attested in Lhagang Choyu, which also appear in the majority of the dialects of Choyu. Prenasalisation /ᴺC/ and preaspiration /ʰC, ɦC/

make up the majority of consonant clusters; however, labial plosive and continuant preinitials /ᵖC, ᵇC, ᶲC, ʷC, ᵐC/, and velar continuant preinitials /ˠC, ⱽC/ are also attested. Due to insufficient data, we cannot confirm the entire system of complex initials; however, we can give a preliminary sketch. Regarding our phonetic representations, even though preinitial sounds are neutralised (especially in voicing), we still represent each cluster in its pre-neutralised state, following previous works on Choyu dialects.[12]

-Prenasalisation
    Homorganic prenasalisation appears before a main initial with voiced or aspirated obstruents. E.g.,

/ᵐb/   /´ᵐba/ 'light (a fire)' ; cf. /´ta ᶣba/ 'hide'
/ⁿd/   /⁻ⁿdu/ 'food'
/ᶮɖ/   /ᶮɖu/ 'thunder, dragon'; cf. /´ᶣɖu ku/ 'button'
/ᵑg/   /⁻ᵑgʷa' la/ 'day before yesterday'; cf. /⁻ᶣgʷa/ 'front'
/ⁿdz/   /⁻ⁿdzo/ 'female mdzo'
/ⁿdʑ/   /⁻ⁿdʑa/ 'rainbow'; cf. /´ᶣdʑa la/ 'street'
/ᵐpʰ/   /⁻ᵐpʰã/ 'vomit'; cf. /´pʷa rə/ 'over there'
/ⁿtʰ/   /⁻ⁿtʰa/ 'sputum'; cf. /´tʰa pe/ 'forehead'
/ᶯʈʰ/   /´ᶯʈʰa ᶯʈʰa/ 'thin (in diametre)'
/ᵑkʰ/   /⁻ᵑkʰi ma/ 'kidney'
/ⁿtsʰ/   /⁻ⁿtsʰu/ 'lake'
/ⁿtʃʰ/   /⁻ⁿtʃʰə/ 'horn'; cf. /´kə tʃʰa/ 'be boiled'
/ᶮtɕʰ/   /⁻ᶮtɕʰi/ 'salt'; cf. /⁻qa' tɕʰi/ 'good, beautiful'

-Preaspiration
    Preaspiration appears before unaspirated or voiced obstruent and continuant main initials. Voicing of the preinitial depends on the voicing of the main initial, and is thus neutralised. Therefore, we could unify the description with one phonetic symbol (choosing either /ʰC/ or /ᶣC/); however, we represent both the voiced and voiceless forms in order to stay consistent with our broad phonetic approach. Some examples have a variant of preaspiration as a specific oral consonant. E.g.,

/ʰp/   /⁻ʰpu/ 'incense'; cf. /´ji pu/ 'rye'
/ʰt/   /⁻ʰto/ 'excrement'; cf. /⁻tu/ 'fall'
/ʰʈ/   /⁻ʰʈu ku/ 'reincarnated lama'; cf. /´ᵖʈu/ 'breast'

---

[12] Taking Sun (1991) and Huang (1992) into consideration, we find that this style is commonly accepted among descriptions of relevant Tibeto-Burman languages. Although there is a criticism against this method from a phonological approach, we still follow the convention of Sun (1991) and Huang (1992).

/ʰk/   /˞ʰkə/ 'voice, language'; cf. /ˊkə/ *directional prefix*
/ʰts/   /˞ʰtsə/ 'thread'; cf. /ˊtsəˠ/ *3ʳᵈ person pronoun*
/ʰtɕ/   /˞ʰtɕɑ/ 'iron' ; cf. /ˊtɕa/ 'tea'
/ʰs/   /˞ʰsəˠ/ 'gold'; cf. /˞səˠ/ 'blood'
/ʰl̥/   /˞ʰl̥i/ 'tongue'; cf. /˞l̥iˈ ki/ 'stairs'
/ɦb/   /˞ɦbɛ ba/ 'frog'
/ɦd/   /˞ɦdɛ/ 'seven'
/ɦg/   /ˊɦgu za/ 'lunch'; cf. /ˊgu za/ 'noodle'
/ɦdz/   /˞ɦdzɯ/ 'trousers'
/ɦdʐ/   /ˊɦdʐa la/ 'street'
/ɦz/   /˞ɦzo/ 'girl, daughter'; cf. /˞zo/ 'fry'
/ɦʒ/   /˞ɦʒə/ 'sickle'; cf. /˞ʒa və/ 'wooden bowl'
/ɦʐ/   /˞ɦʐi/ 'wait'; cf. /ˊʐe/ 'peaceful'
/ɦʁ/   /ˊɦʁʷɑ/ 'power'; cf. /ˊʁo/ 'help'
/ɦm/   /˞ɦmi/ 'wound'; cf. /˞mi tsi/ 'sun'
/ɦn/   /˞ɦna me/ 'daughter-in-law'; cf. /˞naˠ/ 'bean flour'
/ɦɲ/   /˞ɦɲĩ ᵐbe/ 'old'; cf. /˞ɲi/ 'name'
/ɦŋ/   /˞ɦŋa ɦbu/ 'sweet'; cf. /ˊŋa/ 'I'
/ɦl/   /˞ɦla/ 'thigh'; cf. /˞la me/ 'dream'
/ɦr/   /ˊɦri/ 'skin'; cf. /ˇri/ 'road'
/ɦw/   /˞ɦwa/ 'yak hair tent'; cf. /ˊwa/ 'under'
/ɦj/   /˞ɦjɯ/ 'turquoise'

-Labial preinitials

Labial preinitials include various obstruents and nasals (e.g., /ᵖC, ᵇC, ᵠC, ʷC, ᵐC/). The only labiodental preinitial is the voiced fricative /ᵛ/, and in some cases, it can alter with a labial approximant counterpart /ʷ/. Nasal labial preinitials must be considered as heterorganic labial prenasalisation; hence, /ᵐb/ and /ᵐpʰ/ are excluded in the forms below (see Prenasalisation above). Within our limited data, labial preinitials seem to be in complimentary distribution in terms of manner of articulation as well as voicing. In particular, /ᵖ/ sometimes appears as a prefix for verbal morphology and can precede any voiceless initials, including fricatives. We thus keep /ᵖ/ and /ᵠ/ in contrast at this present stage of research regardless of the lack of minimal pairs.

Only a few combinations are attested. The lack of systematicity might be due to insufficient data. E.g.,

/ᵖʈʰ/   /˞ᵖʈʰoˠ ᵖʈʰoˠ/ 'white'
/ᵖʈ/   /ˊᵖʈa ᵖʈa/ 'flat'; cf. /ˊʈa pe/ 'monk'

/ᵖk/   /´ta ᵖke/ 'wear (a hat)'
/ᵖtɕ/   /⁻tɕʷaʼ ᵖtɕʷa/ 'sour' ; cf. /´tɕʷa/ 'friend'
/ᵖs/   /´tə ᵖsɯ/ 'full'
/ᵇd/   /⁻kʰa ᵇda ´la bi/ 'chat'; cf. /⁻ta ꞯde/ 'fly'
/ᶠʃ/   /⁻ᶠʃiʼ ᶠʃi/ 'thin'
/ᶠɕ/   /´ᶠɕa/ 'cock'; cf. /´ɕa/ 'earth'
/ᵛz/   /⁻ᵛzɑʼ ᵛzɑ/ 'hot (spicy)'; cf. /⁻zə/ 'root of pteridophyte'
/ᵛʒ/   /´ᵛʒə ʈɯ ma/ 'square'
/ᵛʐ/   /´ᵛʐi/ 'be hungry'; cf. /⁻ꞯʐi/ 'wait'
/ʷn/   /´ta ʷnu/ 'smell'; cf. /´nu/ 'west'
/ʷl/   /⁻ʷla me/ 'lama'; cf. /⁻la me/ 'dream'
/ʷr/   /⁻ʷra/ 'body hair'; cf. /⁻re/ 'horse'
/ᵛr/   /⁻ᵛre/ 'horse'; cf. /´re tɕə tə/ 'all'
/ᵐɖ/   /⁻ᵐɖʷa/ 'rice'
/ᵐdz/   /⁻ᵐdzaʼ ᵐdza/ 'hot (temperature)'; cf. /⁻dze/ 'pillar'
/ᵐdʐ/   /⁻qə ᵐdʐɯ/ 'grasp'; cf. /⁻ꞯdʐɯ ʰka/ 'pulse'
/ᵐn/   /⁻ᵐne/ 'listen'; cf. /´ne ᵐdze/ 'you two'
/ᵐtʰ/   /⁻ᵐtʰo/ 'alveolum'; cf. /⁻tʰo/ 'meat', /⁻to/ 'cooked'
/ᵐkʰ/   /⁻tə ᵐkʰʷa/ 'turn over (something)' ; cf. /⁻kə ⁿkʰʷə/ '(someone) turn over'

-Velar preinitials

Velar preinitials include only fricatives, which seem to be neutralised in voicing based on the main initial. There is a clear pronunciation difference between velar preinitials and preaspiration. Although there are no minimal pairs, there are still some words that are in contrast with non-velar preinitials.

Only a few combinations are attested. E.g.,

/ˣŋ̊/   /´ta ˣŋ̊o/ 'chew'
/ˣl̥/   /´qə ˣl̥ə/ 'shit'; cf. /⁻ꞯl̥i/ 'tongue'
/ˠr/   /´ˠru ˠru tu tə/ 'laugh'; cf. /⁻ru/ 'grass', /ꞯᶠri/ 'skin', /⁻ᵛre/ 'horse'

-Cluster of three consonants

Only one cluster consisting of three consonants has been attested. The type of cluster consists of the following: nasal preinitial + obstruent preinitial + main initial.

/ᵐᵖʈʰ/   /´ᵐᵖʈʰe ʋe/ 'beads'; cf. /ⁿᵖʈʰa ⁿᵖʈʰa/ 'thin (in diameter)'

The word 'beads' is considered to be a Tibetan loan originating from *phreng ba*. In the Rangakha dialect of Khams Tibetan (spoken in the vicinity of the Lhagang Choyu-speaking area), there is also the

prenasalised form /˘ᵐ͡tʂʰe waː/ 'beads' (Suzuki 2007:153). The Lhagang Choyu form suggests a sound change: */pʰreŋ wa/ > */ᵐpʰre wa/ > /´ᵐᵖ͡tʂe ʋe/.

3.3 Vowels
3.3.1 Simple vowels
    The following contrasts can in the vowels of Lhagang Choyu:
    /i/-/e/-/ɛ/-/a/
      /i/   /˘mi tsi/ 'sun'; /˘ʋi ⁿdu/ 'pig food'
      /e/   /˘m̥e/ 'hair'; /˘ʋe/ 'pig'; /˘se/ 'log'
      /ɛ/   /˘m̥ɛ/ 'medicine'; /ˈkɛ sa/ 'cushion'; /˘sɛ ma/ 'bean'
      /a/   /˘ma/ 'butter'; /˘ka' wa/ 'steamed bun'

    /u/-/o/-/ɔ/-/ɑ/
      /u/   /˘mu/ 'sky'; /˘lu/ 'stone'
      /o/   /˘mo ʑi/ 'cat'; /ˈlo ma/ 'leaf'; /˘tɕʰɯ tsʰo/ 'time'
      /ɔ/   /˘nɔ ŋa/ 'inside'; /˘tsʰɔ' tsʰɔ/ 'short'
      /ɑ/   /˘ɦma mi/ 'soldier'

    /ʉ/-/ə/-/ɯ/
      /ʉ/   /´tʉ tʉ ˈla/ 'quarrel'; /˘tɕʉ/ 'sūtra'
      /ə/   /´mə/ 'fire'; /´tɕʰə/ 'dog year'
      /ɯ/   /˘m̥ɯ/ 'person'; /˘tɕʰɯ mi/ 'water spring'

    /a/-/ɑ/
      /a/   /˘tə' ʰl̥a/ 'loose'; /´ʔa' tɕa/ 'elder sister'

      /ɑ/   /´ji ʰl̥ɑ/ 'twist' ; /˘ɕi tɕɑ/ 'broom'

    /u/-/ɯ/
      /u/   /˘vu/ 'belly'
      /ɯ/   /˘vɯ ɕu/ 'navel'

    /u/-/ʉ/
      /u/   /´ɦə tɕʰu/ 'uncover'
      /ʉ/   /˘tɕʉ/ 'sūtra'

    Note that there are no minimal or near-minimal pairs to show contrast between the vowels /ɔ/ and /ɑ/. However, nasalised forms, as seen in 3.3.2, reveal the possibility of contrast between /ɔ/ and /ɑ/.

3.3.2 Vowels with secondary articulation

There are three types of secondary articulation that occur with vowels: nasalisation, velarisation, and labialisation. More than one type of secondary articulation cannot co-occur within the same syllable, according to the present data.

-Nasalised vowels

Nasalised vowels can be found in independent words and in words that have undergone alternations due to verb agreement morphology. For example, some verbs index the first person agent / actor with vowel nasalisation. We have not conducted a systematic analysis; however, we were able to record verb agreement indexed by nasalisation in a few elicited verbs. Verb agreement through nasalisation is evidence that Lhagang Choyu has a set of nasalised vowels.

Many nasalised vowels which appear in word-medial position occur before prenasalisation. In this case, the nasalisation of the vowel could be due to the phonetic effect of anticipating the following nasal. However, there are examples where the vowel is not nasalised before a nasal consonant; and examples where a vowel is nasalised even before a non-nasal consonant. Compare the following examples:

/´tsʰõ ᵐba/ 'merchant' (nasalised vowel + prenasalised initial)

/‾wa' ⁿɖɑ/ 'sow' (non-nasalised vowel + prenasalised initial)

/´sẽ gi/ 'lion' (nasalised vowel + non-prenasalised initial)

Due to the small number of examples, we represent nasalisation in ever instance that it occurs, even though it may not be entirely phonological in every instance. Our data contains the following nasalised vowels: /ĩ, ɛ̃, ã, õ, ɔ̃, ɑ̃/. The existence of near mininal pairs also suggests that nasalisation is a distinctive feature.

Examples of nasalised vowels in word-final position, which rarely appear, are as follows:

/ĩ/   /‾ʰʈĩ/ 'cloud'; cf. /´ʈi/ 'mule'
/ɛ̃/   /´kə zɛ̃/ 'I sleep'
/ã/   /´tsã/ 'I milk'
/õ/   /´rə ɣõ/ 'rabbit'; cf. /´ɣo/ '(inanimate things) exist (on an upper side)'
/ɔ̃/   /´zɔ̃/ 'copper'
/ɑ̃/   /‾ɦlɑ̃/ 'ox'; cf. /‾ʰḷɑ/ 'vulture'

Examples of nasalised vowels in word-medial position ('nasalised vowel + non-prenasalised initial' type) are as follows:

/ẽ/   /´sẽ gi/ 'lion'
/õ/   /´ɦlõ kʰa/ 'wind'
/ɔ̃/   /´ɦdzɔ̃ kʰu/ 'green'

/ã/   /´jã ji/ 'potato'

-Velarised vowels
    Some vowels have a velarised counterpart, which is pronounced as
either a velarised vowel [Vˠ], a vowel followed by a velar approximant
[Vɰ], or a vowel followed by a palatal approximant [Vj]. These three
features are always free variants. Hence they can phonologically be
described as /Vˠ/. The velarised vowels do not always form a contrast
with their plain counterparts.
    Our data contains the following velarised vowels: /ɛˠ, aˠ, ɑˠ, ɔˠ, oˠ,
ɯˠ, əˠ/. The existence of minimal and near-minimal pairs suggests that
velarisation is a distinctive feature.
    /ɛˠ/   /¯nɛˠ/ 'milk'
    /aˠ/   /¯naˠ/ 'bean flour'
    /ɑˠ/   /¯ₕtɑˠ/ 'tiger'; cf. /¯tɑ' po/ 'spoon'
    /ɔˠ/   /¯ₚʈɔˠ/ 'yak'
    /oˠ/   /¯ₕl̥oˠ/ 'skin'; cf. /´l̥o/ 'flea'
    /ɯˠ/   /¯ɦlɯˠ/ 'seed'; cf. /¯ɦlɯ/ 'song'
    /əˠ/   /¯səˠ/ 'blood'; cf. /´sə/ 'comb'

    As presented above, velarised vowels are contrastive with their
corresponding simple vowel counterparts.

-Labialised vowels
    [ɥ] is not in the consonant inventory nor does it occur as an
allophone of /w/. However, some vowels have a labialised
counterpart, which is pronounced as [ʷV] or [ᶣV]. This secondary
feature is most properly referred to as labio-velarisation; however, we
will simply refer to it as labialisation in this article. In Lhagang Choyu,
labialisation always precedes a vowel. In preparation for the
articulation of an initial consonant, it does not influence the manner of
articulation; for example, /¯hʷi/ 'rain' is not pronounced as [ɥwi] or
[ɸwi], but as [hɥi] ([hṳi] is also acceptable).
    Within the data available at present, labialised vowels are: /ʷi, ʷe, ʷa,
ʷɑ, ʷo, ʷə/. The existence of minimal pairs suggests that labialisation is
a distinctive feature.
    /ʷi/   /¯hʷi/ 'rain'
    /ʷe/   /¯sʷe/ 'father (reference term)'; cf. /¯se/ 'wood'
    /ʷa/   /¯ŋʷa/ 'five'; cf. /´ŋa/ 'I'
    /ʷɑ/   /¯ʃʷɑ/ 'sugar'
    /ʷo/   /´kʷo/ 'price'; cf. /´ko ŋa/ 'inside'

/ʷə/   /⁻ɦgʷə/ 'book'

As presented above, labialised vowels with their corresponding simple vowel counterparts.

An exceptional case is attested as follows. There is an alternation between a prelabialised vowel and a prelabialised initial, which is not a common phenomenon, e.g., the word 'shoe' has two forms: /⁻ʐʷi/ and /⁻ʷʑi/.

4. Suprasegmentals

Lhagang Choyu has a word-tone system with two contrastive pitch patterns: HIGH (⁻) and LOW (´). Only the first two syllables of a word can have a distinct pitch pattern; after which low pitch patterns follow. Hence, no more than the first two syllables of a word are considered as the tone-bearing unit (TBU). This is similar to the tonal system of Lhasa Tibetan analyzed by Kitamura (1977), Hoshi (1991) and Hoshi (2003).

Pitch height is clear at the word-initial position for most words, and speakers generally do not accept an alternation of the pitch height. There are, however, a few exceptions, e.g., words which allow either of the two heights to appear such as /´mə, ⁻mə/ 'fire'. No additional phonation is contrastive (e.g., creaky voice, breathy voice, etc.; see Zhu 2010; Suzuki 2015a). Falling pitch never functions as a phonological feature. At the end of an utterance, the pitch pattern is generally falling. For instance, the word for 'sun' /⁻mi tsi/ is pronounced as [mi˞tsi˥] in citation form. However, when pronounced three times continuously in citation form it will be [mi˞tsi˥ mi˞tsi˥ mi˞tsi˥]—a falling pitch appears only in the last utterance. This happens in phrases as well. For example, a sequence of two monosyllabic words /⁻hʷi/ 'rain' and /⁻tu/ 'fall' is transcribed as /⁻hʷi ⁻tu/ 'it rains'. However, the pitch of the first word always stays high and level, e.g., [hʷi˥], whereas the pitch of the second word tends to fall, e.g., [tu˥].

We place the diacritic for marking tone in the word-initial position. This transcription convention follows Kitamura (1977). Some monosyllabic examples of tonal contrast are as follows:

HIGH	/⁻ɕa/	/⁻nə/	/⁻ɳa/	/⁻lu/	/⁻jo/
	'east'	'you'	'read'	'stone'	'left'
LOW	/´ɕa/	/´nə/	/´ɳa/	/´lu/	/´jo/
	'earth'	'tail'	'fish'	'sheep'	'rabbit year'

Some examples of contrast found between monosyllabic and disyllabic forms yet not in a derivational relationship, are as follows (an apostrophe within a word marks stress; see the explanation below):

HIGH	/ˉʐe' ʐe/	/ˉɣɑ' ɣɑ/	/ˉȵi/
	'fragrant'	'difficult';	'name'
LOW	/´ʐe/	/´ɣɑ/	/´ȵi ȵi/
	'peaceful'	'extend';	'little'

Examples of polysyllabic words are given below. However, minimal pairs of polysyllabic words demonstrating tonal contrast have not been attested so far.

HIGH	/ˉɦʐõ ma/	/ˉtɕa ɦga/	/ˉjo qo ma/	/ˉₒtʰa la ₒtʰa la/
	'milk cow'	'ginger'	'left'	'long ago'
LOW	/´ʐo ʑi/	/´tɕa' tɕa/	/´ₒre qʰa tʰa/	/´ma ro pʰe pʰe/
	'cowshed'	'rough'	'stable'	'pitiful'

Although the TBU is no more than the first two syllables of a word, several polysyllabic examples demonstrate that the second syllable may be pronounced with a low pitch pattern, which makes the second syllable appear to be atonal. This is similar to what has been reported in Lhasa Tibetan: tones for disyllabic words with specific suffixes display have two different realisations (Kitamura 1977; Hoshi 1991). One realisation is a tone pattern that fully covers both the syllables and forms a single TBU; and the other realisation is the tone is primarily on the first syllable and the second syllable just has a "light tone." This difference in Lhasa Tibetan is morphophonological.

Caplow (2016:182) describes the existence of stress in some Tibetic languages. Stress is used in some Tibetic languages to distinguish minimal pairs across lexical categories. Her definition of stress is, "the relative prominence of a syllable with respect to neighbouring syllables" (2016:182).

The phenomenon attested in Lhagang Choyu is quite similar to that of Lhasa Tibetan described by Kitamura (1977). Disyllabic words possessing an atonal second syllable are primarily reduplicated word forms, especially adjectives as well as words with a suffix. We analyze this feature as *stress* falling on the first syllable. Even though the first syllable itself has no prominence, it is highlighted by an atonalised second syllable. For our transcription convention, we propose an apostrophe (') after the first syllable rather than a stress diacritic.

Stress in Lhagang Choyu is related not only to the phonology but also to morphology. For example, the diminutive /ʑi/ which makes a derivation of a 'young animal' from nouns denoting animals is atonal;

however, when this syllable is not a diminutive, it can bear a tone. Compare:

> Stressed   /�xe' ʑi/ 'calf', /�tsʰa' ʑi/ 'kid', /�pə' ʑi/ 'piglet'
>
> Plain   /�mo ʑi/ 'cat (not for kitten)'

In some cases of verbs with a prefix, stress can appear on the prefix and not on the root. Examples are:

> Stressed   /�la'-zɑ/ 'DIR[13]-drop', /�ta'-pə/ 'DIR-rot', /ˈla'-ⁿtso/ 'DIR-sit'
>
> Plain   /ˈla-la/ 'DIR-do', /ˈtɑ-pʰo/ 'DIR-put, cover'

We have no minimal pairs in our data that display a contrast of stress vs. no stress. However, whether the second syllable is atonalised or not is a crucial feature for speakers. There might be minimal pairs that we have not recorded. Therefore, we maintain a representation of stress in the present description for further research.

 To sum up, Lhagang Choyu has both word-tone and stress. This suprasegmental system, except for the restriction of the TBU, is similar to that of the Keihan dialect of Japanese (Ōno and Sibata eds. 1977).

5. Comparison of the sound structure and shared etyma

The present article presents the hypothesis that Lhagang Choyu and Choyu are genetically related based on sociolinguistic evidence as well as on a comparison of peculiar words found in the data of this present paper with the same words found in Suzuki & Sonam Wangmo (2016a). In this section, we attempt to demonstrate this more rigorously; and further to show that Lhagang Choyu is typologically closer to the Choyu variety in Nyagrong than the Choyu variety in Nyagchu even though the Nyagchu variety is closer to Lhagang Choyu than the Nyagrong variety in terms of geographical distance. Even though we have only been able to provide a preliminary sketch of the sound structure of Lhagang Choyu, a brief comparison of cognates shared between Lhagang Choyu and Choyu dialects is worth attempting. The discussion here is just a preparatory work for further research on Lhagang Choyu as well as other Choyu varieties.

 The following discussion consists of two parts: the sound structure of three Choyu dialects (gYanglagshis, Rongpa, and Tuanjie), and lexical comparison of etyma which show how shared innovations exist. All the data from Choyu dialects are limited to descriptions

---

[13]   DIR: directional prefix. Due to a lack of data, we cannot provide an exact meaning of each prefix.

provided in the previous works: Wang (1991) for the gYanglagshis dialect, Nishida (2008) for the Rongpa dialect, and Lu (1985) for the Tuanjie dialect. The ordering of the presentation of these dialect descriptions will be based on each dialect's relative geographical position, from west to east. Thus the order will be gYanglagshis, Rongpa, and Tuanjie, respectively. Due to the limitation of data, the lexical comparison is conducted with only three varieties: Lhagang Choyu, gYanglagshis Choyu (Huang 1992), and Tuanjie Choyu (Sun 1991).

We use the same transcription conventions as the original sources except for the retroflex affricate /tʂ/ and /tʂʰ/ which we write as /ʈʂ/ and /ʈʂʰ/, respectively.

5.1 Sound structure of three Choyu dialects
5.1.1 Consonant inventories

The consonant inventory of the gYanglagshis dialect is displayed in Table 5 followed by a comment regarding complex initials.

Table. 5 — Consonant system of the gYanglagshis dialect[14]

pʰ	tʰ				kʰ	qʰ
p	t				k	q
b	d				g	ɢ
	tsʰ	tʃʰ	tʂʰ	tɕʰ		
	ts	tʃ	tʂ	tɕ		
	dz	dʒ	dʐ	dʑ		
	s ɬ	ʃ	ʂ	ɕ	x	χ
v	z ʐ	ʒ		ʑ	ɣ	ʁ
m	n		ɳ		ŋ	
m̥	n̥		ɳ̊		ŋ̊	
	l		r			
w				j		

Complex initials are 144 in total, in which preinitials include: homorganic prenasalised consonants and /m-, p-, b-, s-, z-, l-, ɬ-, ʂ-, r-, ʃ-, ʒ-, ɕ-, ʑ-, k-, χ-, ʁ-/.

The consonant inventory of the Rongpa dialect is displayed in Table 6 followed by a comment regarding the complex initials.

---

[14]   Adapted from Wang (1991). We have changed the symbols tʂ and tʂʰ to ʈʂ and ʈʂʰ, respectively.

Table. 6 — Consonant system of the Rongpa dialect[15]

pʰ	tʰ				kʰ	qʰ
p	t				k	q
b	d				g	ɢ
	tsʰ		ʈʂʰ	tɕʰ		
	ts		ʈʂ	tɕ		
	dz		ɖʐ	dʑ		
f	s	ʃ	ʂ	ɕ	x	χ
v	z	ʒ	ʐ	ʑ	ɣ	ʁ
m	n		ɳ		ŋ	
m̥	n̥		ɳ̊		ŋ̊	
	l					
	l̥					
w			r		j	
			r̥			

Complex initials are 116 in total, in which preinitials include preaspirated consonants, homorganic prenasalised consonants, and /ᵐ-, ᵖ-, ᵇ-, ˢ-, ᶻ-, ˡ-, l̥-, ʐ-, r-, ʃ-, ʒ-, ɕ-, x-/.

The consonant inventory of the Tuanjie dialect is displayed in Table 7 followed by a comment regarding the complex initials.

Table. 7 — Consonant system of the Tuanjie dialect[16]

pʰ	tʰ			kʰ	qʰ	
p	t			k	q	
b	d			g		
	tsʰ	ʈʂʰ	tɕʰ			
	ts	ʈʂ	tɕ			
	dz	ɖʐ	dʑ			
	s ɬ	ʂ	ɕ	x		h
v	z	ʐ	ʑ	ɣ		ɦ
m	n	ɳ		ŋ		
m̥	n̥	ɳ̊		ŋ̊		
	l	r				
w			j			

Complex initials are limited to homorganic prenasalised voiced plosives and affricates, and labial plosives plus /ʐ/.

---

[15] Adapted from Nishida (2008). Some phonetic symbols were changed.
[16] Adapted from Lu (1985), who does not state each articulatory position and manner. Some phonetic were symbols changed.

Based on the description above, we list following outstanding typological differences in Lhagang Choyu and Choyu:

A. Existence of postalveolar initials
B. Existence of uvular nasals
C. Number of complex initials
D. Existence of preaspiration
E. Existence of labial nasal preinitials
F. Existence of prepalatal fricative preinitials
G. Existence of velar plosive preinitials

Table 8 contrasts the features above.

Table. 8 — Discrepancies of consonant features

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
Lhagang Choyu	+	+	60	+	+	-	-
gYanglagshis	+	-	144	-	+	+	+
Rongpa	+	-	116	+	+	+	+
Tuanjie	-	-	9	-	-	-	-

5.1.2 Vowels and rhymes

Regarding vowels, it is better to examine not only the simple vowels but also the structure of rhymes (vowel+final).

Number and quality of distinctive vowels in the gYanglagshis dialect below:

Tongue position contrast: /i, e, ɛ, a, ə, ɯ, y, u, o, ɔ/

No simple vowel/nasalised vowel contrast is attested.

Complex vowels: /ie, iɛ, io, ue, uɛ, ua, uə, ye, yə, ei/.

/-r/, /-n/, and /-ŋ/ can appear as finals.

Number and quality of distinctive vowels in the Rongpa dialect below:

Tongue position contrast: /i, e, ɛ, a, ə, ʉ, ɨ, ə, u, o, ɔ/

Simple vowel/nasalised vowel contrast is attested in /i, e, a, ʉ, ɨ, u, o/.

Complex vowels: /ie, io, ue, ua, uɨ, ʉɨ, ei/.

Rhotic vowels: /ɨr, ʉr, er, ar, or, ur/.

Number and quality of distinctive vowels in the Tuanjie dialect below:

Tongue position contrast: /i, ɿ, y, e, ø, ɛ, ə, ɐ, a, o, u, ɯ, ɨ/

Simple vowel/nasalised vowel contrast is attested except for /ɿ, ɐ, ɯ, ɨ/.

Complex vowels: /ei, ɛi, ai, əu, au/, /ui, ue, uɛ, uɐ, ua, yɛ/, /uei, iau/

Based on the description above, Lhagang Choyu and Choyu have following typological differences:

Table. 9 — Existence of specific rhyme features

	nasalised vowels	nasal finals	/-r/ final	rhotic vowels	velarised vowels	labialised vowels
Lhagang Choyu	+	-	-	-	+	+
gYanglagshis	-	+	+	-	-	-
Rongpa	+	-	-	+	-	-
Tuanjie	+	-	-	-	-	-

5.1.3 Suprasegmentals

A simple comparison of suprasegmentals across language varieties is difficult unless the methodology of analysis is the same in each variety. Various methods have been used to describe suprasegmentals in Choyu varieties. A comparison of the number of tones and the superficial description (broad phonetic pitch patterns) in Lhagang Choyu and dialects of Choyu can be seen in Table 10.

Table. 10 — Suprasegmental features

	number of distinctive tones	superficial description
Lhagang Choyu	2 + 1 (stress)	H (¯), L (´), '
gYanglagshis	3 + 1 (atonal)	55, 13, 31 + atonal 33
Rongpa	2	H, L
Tuanjie	4	55, 53, 35, 33

Based on a superficial description of tones, Lhagang Choyu has a similar system to the Rongpa dialect in number of distinctive tones. However, the description of Lhagang Choyu applies to a word-tone system whereas the descriptions of Choyu dialects apply a syllable-tone system. Lhagang Choyu needs a stress marker in addition to tone markers. The existence of an 'atonal' category is attested in the gYanglagshis dialect, which could be similar to Lhagang Choyu's system of stress.

In any case, it is not possible to compare these suprasegmental systems because each variety has been analyzed with a different framework. Thus, in the next subsection, we will compare the lexicon across these varieties, but we will have to ignore suprasegmentals until there is more data for each of these varieties.

5.2 Lexical comparison

To begin this subsection, we will briefly confirm that Lhagang Choyu has word forms shared with Choyu varieties. Due to a limitation of data, we will only take examples from gYanglagshis Choyu (Huang 1992) and Tuanjie Choyu (Sun 1991), keeping the original description style and symbols.

Firstly, we display peculiar words from Lhagang Choyu. There are several words which are attested in neither of the two Choyu dialects nor in Tibetic languages.

Table. 11 — *Peculiar forms to Lhagang Choyu*[17]

Meaning	gYanglagshis	Tuanjie	Lhagang Choyu
sun	pu^{55}	ŋ̩^{55}muɯ^{33} (TL)	ˉmi tsi
book	χpe^{55} tʃha^{55} (TL)	dzɯ^{35} dzɯ^{35}	$^{-ɦ}$gʷə
big	qo^{55} rʒi^{13}	kɐ^{33} kɐ^{55}	ˊga pu
butterfly	kə^{55} pu^{55} le^{13} ble^{55}	pə^{35} lə^{53}	ˉʃɯ

All the Lhagang Choyu forms in Table 11 are not of Tibetic origin. They should be considered as native words. A similar form to /ˉmi tsi/ 'sun' is found in Phubarong Choyu (/ˉmə' ⁿtsə/; see Table 1). A cognate of /$^{-ɦ}$gʷə/ 'book' is found in a Choyu dialect spoken in Lithang (Suzuki & Sonam Wangmo 2018x); and is recorded as *dgod* in the Tibetan script in *Litang Xianzhi* (1996:474). It is highly possible for more cognates to be found after more research has been done on Choyu dialects.

Internal comparison is based on cognates tied to regular sound correspondences. We will present some phonological correspondences among these varieties, though this is difficult due to the insufficient quantity of data on the one hand, and because of the abundance of Tibetan loans in Lhagang Choyu on the other hand. Hence, here we just seek whether or not Lhagang Choyu has any forms which potentially correspond to any Choyu varieties.

Based on the differences pointed out in 5.1, we will give a comparison of a limited amount of lexical data. Taking examples from three varieties, gYanglagshis Choyu, Tuanjie Choyu, and Lhagang Choyu, we discuss the following phenomena: (1) postalveolar and uvular initials as well as a postalveolar nasals;[18] (2) preaspiration; (3) nasal preinitials; (4) oral preinitials; (5) velarised rhymes; and (6) labialised rhymes.

Examples of postalveolar and uvular initials are as follows:

Table. 12 — *Postalveolar and uvular initials for Lhagang Choyu*

Meaning	gYanglagshis	Tuanjie	Lhagang Choyu
dog	ʃtʃhi^{55}	tɕhuɯ^{53}	ˉtʃʷɯ
insect	pu^{55} tʃa^{31}	bu^{35} tɕa^{53}	ˉpə' tʃa
horn	tʂhi^{55}mbə^{55}	ʐa^{35} tɕo^{53} (TL)	$^{-ⁿ}$tʂʰə
bone	ʃə^{55}rə^{55}	-	ˉʃə rə

---

[17] (TL) denotes a Tibetan loan.
[18] As far as the authors know, among Choyu varieties, the postalveolar nasal simple initial only exists as a phoneme in Lhagang Choyu. See 3.2.1.

highland barley (*qingke*)	ʃa^{55}	ʂʁ^{35} n̻e^{55}	ˉʃəˠ
water	ʒi^{13}	zi^{35}	´ʒə
day after tomorrow	qha^{55} se^{55}	xõ^{35} khi^{53}	´qʰo se
head	qʰo^{55}	xo^{53}	ˉqʰo
gate	ʁa^{13}	ɣa^{35}	ˉʁa
yellow	ŋɯ^{55} ŋɯ^{33}; cf. ŋ̊ə^{55} 'gold'	ŋã^{33} ŋã^{55}; cf. ŋ̊e^{55} 'gold'	ˉɴ̥ə' ɴ̥ə
sweet	tʃhi^{55} tʃhi^{33}	ŋa^{35} ŋa^{35} (TL?)	ˉɴɯ' ɴɯ / ˉʱŋa ʱbu (TL)
bitter	rnua^{55} rnua^{33}	na^{33} na^{55}	ˉn̻o' n̻o

Based on the data in Table 12, we can find sound correspondences among the three varieties. Lhagang Choyu and gYanglagshis Choyu maintain the same articulatory positions for consonant initials except for Lhagang Choyu's uvular nasals in /ˉɴ̥ə' ɴ̥ə/ 'yellow' and /ˉɴɯ' ɴɯ/ 'sweet' and prenasalisation + postalveolar in /ˉⁿtʃˤə/ 'horn'. Tuanjie Choyu differs from both Lhagang Choyu and gYanglagshis: postalveolars instead of prepalatals, and uvulars instead of velars (cf. Table 7). Tuanjie Choyu also has uvular plosives in its consonant inventory, as seen in Table 7. We have not found cognates with uvular nasals among the varieties. The word /ˉɴ̥ə' ɴ̥ə/ 'yellow' in Lhagang Choyu might correspond to 'gold' in the two Choyu dialects (in gYanglagshis pronounced /ŋ̊ə^{55}/ and Tuanjie pronounced /ŋ̊e^{55}/). The word /ˉɴɯ' ɴɯ/-/ˉʱŋa ʱbu/ 'sweet' in Lhagang Choyu is similar to the Tuanjie Choyu pronunciation of the same word /ŋa^{35} ŋa^{55}/; however, it is possible that the Tuanjie form is a Tibetic loan. Note that Lhagang Choyu has two forms for 'sweet': a native word /ˉɴɯ' ɴɯ/ and a Tibetic loan /ˉʱŋa ʱbu/. As for the word /ˉn̻o' n̻o/ 'bitter', the postalveolar nasal can correspond to either a complex denti-alveolar nasal in gYanglagshis (/rnua^{55} rnua^{33}/) or a simple denti-alveolar nasal (/na^{33} na^{55}/) in Tuanjie.

Examples of preaspiration are as follows:

Table. 13 — Correspondence of preaspiration in Lhagang Choyu

Meaning	gYanglagshis	Tuanjie	Lhagang Choyu
excrement	ɕtye^{55}	qhɛ^{53}	ˉʰto
tongue	ɬli^{55}	ɬo^{53}	ˉʰl̻i
daughter	zo^{13} pɕe^{55}	zõ^{35}	ˉʱzo
skin	ri^{13} riɛ^{33}	ri^{31}	ˊʱri
belly	lvu^{55} / rvu^{55}	bu^{55}	ˉvu
tail	rnə^{13}	ŋa^{35} ma^{53}	´nə

As Table 13 displays, preaspiration in Lhagang Choyu either corresponds to an oral preinitial in gYanglagshis (/ɕtye⁵⁵/ 'excrement' and /ɬli³⁵/ 'tongue') or zero (/zo¹³ pɕe⁵⁵/ 'daughter' and /ri¹³ riɛ³³/ 'skin') in gYanglagshis. Since Tuanjie has neither preaspiration nor oral preinitials, we can find no sound correspondences for this feature. In addition, a simple initial in Lhagang Choyu corresponds to a complex initial in gYanglagshis. This means that an existence of preaspiration does not always have a corresponding preinitial in gYanglagshis. Preaspiration in Lhagang Choyu also appears in Tibetic loans, many of which are not shared with gYanglagshis.

Examples of nasal preinitials (including prenasalisation) are as follows:

Table. 14 — Correspondence of nasal preinitials in Lhagang Choyu

Meaning	gYanglagshis	Tuanjie	Lhagang Choyu
food	mdy¹³	du³⁵	⁻ⁿdu
meat	tho⁵⁵	thõ⁵⁵	⁻ᵗʰo
salt	tɕhi⁵⁵	tshi³³	⁻ⁿ̥tɕʰi
goat	tshɛ⁵⁵	tshɛ⁵⁵	⁻ⁿ̥tsʰa
horn	tʂhi³⁵mbə⁵⁵	ʐa³⁵ tɕo³³ (TL)	⁻ⁿtʃʰə
rice	mdʑiɛ¹³ (TL)	ndʑɛ³⁵ (TL)	⁻ᶬɖʑa (TL)
listen	ɣɯ¹³ lnə³³	kə³⁵ n̠u⁵³	´ᶬne

Most examples with a nasal preinitial do not have any common sound correspondences among the three varieties. However, looking at the form of the main initial, each example is probably in a cognate relationship except for /ʐa³⁵ tɕo³³/ 'horn' in Tuanjie, which is of a Tibetic origin, as well as /kə³⁵ n̠u⁵³/ 'listen' in Tuanjie. Prenasalisation does exist in Choyu varieties; however, as far as the data shows, most examples are Tibetic loans. Native forms with prenasalisation, unfortunately, lack Lhagang Choyu counterparts.

Examples of oral preinitials are as follows:

Table. 15 — Correspondence of oral preinitials in Lhagang Choyu

Meaning	gYanglagshis	Tuanjie	Lhagang Choyu
white	ptʂho⁵⁵ ptʂho³³	tʂhõ⁵⁵ tʂhõ⁵⁵	⁻ᶠʈʰoˠ ᶠʈʰoˠ
full	psɔ⁵⁵	lo⁵⁵ sa⁵⁵	´tə ᶠsɯ
thin	pɕi⁵⁵ pɕi³³	ʂy⁵⁵ ʂy⁵⁵	⁻ᶲʃi' ᶲʃi
hungry	tə³⁵ bʐe³³	ʐy³⁵ rə⁵³	´ᵛzi
horse	bre¹³	gi³⁵	⁻ᵛre

For oral preinitials, we have only found sound correspondences among labials. Since Tuanjie lacks this series of preinitials, we can confirm an existence of sound correspondence of Lhagang Choyu

forms with gYanglagshis. The data of gYanglagshis suggest that various preinitials of Lhagang Choyu can be analysed as a single neutralised preinitial; [19] however, it should be confirmed after a clarification of verbal morphology in Lhagang Choyu which might have a /ᴾ-/ prefix pronounced [ᴾ-] as in the word /´tə ᴾsɯ/ 'full'.

Examples of velarised rhymes are as follows:

Table. 16 — Correspondence of velarised rhymes in Lhagang Choyu

Meaning	gYanglagshis	Tuanjie	Lhagang Choyu
milk	ŋi^{55} nɛ^{55}	nu^{53} tɕhi^{53}	ˉnɛ^{ˠ}
long	qa^{33} ʂsi^{55}	se^{33} se^{55}	ˉsɛ^{ˠ} sɛ^{ˠ}
wet	tsɯ^{55} tsɯ^{13}	tse^{33} tse^{55}	´tsa^{ˠ} tsa^{ˠ}
nail (finger)	ʂtsɛ^{13} ɕn̠i^{55}	le^{55} tʂa^{35}	ˉʰtsa^{ˠ}
seed	rlɯ^{55}	lø^{33}	ˉꜝɦlɯ^{ˠ}
blood	si^{55}	sai^{53}	ˉsə^{ˠ}

There seems to be no regularity regarding how a velarised rhyme corresponds to the same words in Choyu varieties. It remains to be discussed whether velarisation in Lhagang Choyu is an independent innovation or a retention. However, looking at Tibetic loans in Lhagang Choyu, we can find that the language has velarised vowels as a sound correspondence of LT final consonants. This fact suggests that velarisation is a reflex of finals from archaic loan words.

Examples of labialised rhymes are as follows:

Table. 17 — Correspondence of labialised rhymes in Lhagang Choyu

Meaning	gYanglagshis	Tuanjie	Lhagang Choyu
rain	xi^{55}	xu^{53}	ˉhʷi
father	pse^{13}	a^{35} pha^{33}	ˉsʷe
five	ŋua^{55}	ŋua^{55} tɕã^{53}	ˉŋʷa
silver	ŋɛ^{55}	ŋui^{55}	ˉꜝɦŋʷa

Based on the examples in Table 17, labialised vowels correspond to a rounded vowel (/xu^{53}/ 'rain' in Tuanjie, /ŋua^{55} tɕã^{53}/ 'five' in Tuanjie, /ŋua^{55}/ 'five' in gYanglagshis and /ŋui^{55}/ 'silver' in Tuanjie) and a labial preinitial (/pse^{13}/ 'father' in gYanglagshis). In Lhagang Choyu, /ˉŋʷa/ 'five' and /ˉꜝɦŋʷa/ 'silver' form a minimal pair with or without preaspiration; however, 'five' and 'silver' do not form minimal pairs in gYanglagshis and Tuanjie. It is beyond the scope of this paper to investigate this feature.

---

[19]   The first author's research in Litang County has revealed that a simplification of preinitials is also attested in Rongpa Choyu and Lhayul Choyu among the younger generation.

Finally, we will make some observations regarding Tibetic loans. Examples of Tibetic loans are as follows:

Table. 18 — Tibetic loans in Choyu and Lhagang Choyu

Meaning	gYanglagshis	Tuanjie	Lhagang Choyu	Literary Tibetan
fox	ptʃa⁵⁵	wa³⁵ (TL)	ˊɣa (TL)	*wa*
gold	ŋ̊ə⁵⁵	ŋ̊e⁵⁵	⁻ₕsəˠ (TL)	*gser*
tiger	sta⁵⁵ (TL)	ta⁵³ (TL)	⁻ₕtɑˠ (TL)	*stag*
chicken	rdʑa¹³ bʑa⁵⁵ (TL)	ʑa³³ (TL)	ˊᵠɕa (TL)	*bya*
rabbit	ɬi¹³	ʑi³⁵ ko⁵⁵ (TL)	ˊrə ɣõ (TL)	*ri bong*
old [thing]	n̪ur¹³ pe⁵⁵ (TL)	n̪ẽ⁵⁵ pi³³ (TL)	⁻ᶠⁱn̪ĩ ᵐbe (TL)	*rnying ba*
rice	mdʑiɛ¹³ (TL)	ndʑɛ³⁵ (TL)	⁻ᵐɖʐa (TL)	*'bras*
Tibetan	pe⁵⁵ ri⁵⁵ (TL)	-	ˊpo pe (TL)	*bod rigs/ bod pa*

Many Tibetic loans are not shared within the three varieties. For the examples /ptʃa⁵⁵/ 'fox' in gYanglagshis, 'gold' (/ŋ̊ə⁵⁵/ in gYanglagshis and /ŋ̊e⁵⁵/ in Tuanjie) and /ɬi¹³/ 'rabbit' in gYanglagshis we can only find a Choyu word. The example 'Tibetan' has different lexical correspondences: /pe⁵⁵ ri⁵⁵/ in gYanglagshis comes from LT *bod rigs* 'Tibetan nationality'; and /ˊpo pe/ in Lhagang Choyu comes from LT *bod pa* 'Tibetan people'. We can claim that the variation of loan forms displayed in Table 18 reflects the historical process of lexical borrowing. Interestingly, the forms for 'fox' reveal different paths from which the forms descend. Lhagang Choyu borrowed /ˊɣa/ 'fox' from Minyag Rabgang Khams, whereas Tuanjie borrowed /wa³⁵/ 'fox' from Nyagchu Khams; both based on the pronunciation of neighboring varieties of Khams. The example 'chicken' might reflect a temporal difference in borrowing. The gYanglagshis form /rdʑa¹³ bʑa⁵⁵/ appears to be the most archaic, and Lhagang Choyu form /ˊᵠɕa/ appears the most recent. Evidence for this comes from the surrounding Tibetic varieties (such as Nyagrong, Lithang, Nyagchu, Lhagang, etc.) that have quite similar forms, e.g., /ˊɕa/ (Khams) and /ᵠɕa/ (Amdo).[20] The examples /⁻ₕsəˠ/ 'gold' and /⁻ₕtɑˠ/ 'tiger' in Lhagang Choyu seem to maintain the consonant final of the Tibetic forms as a velarised vowel.[21] The example /⁻ᵐɖʐa/ 'rice' in Lhagang Choyu is a relatively old loan, maintaining the labial preinitial for LT *'br-* as well as a LT rhyme *–as*. The loan in Lhagang Choyu /⁻ᶠⁱn̪ĩ ᵐbe/ 'old' is also old, in which one can find a regular sound change LT *a* > /e/ or /i/, as in the second

---

[20] See Suzuki & Sonam Wangmo (2018).

[21] The velarised feature and 'rhotic' feature may also be connected due to the similarity of an acoustic feature that F3 can fall down as suggested by several research results (Ladefoged 2006; Suzuki 2011, 2013).

syllable of / ´po pe / 'Tibetan'.

5.3 Recapitulation and remarks

Typological remarks regarding the phonology will be recapitulated as follows. From a quantitative viewpoint, the number of complex initials in Lhagang Choyu is different from any dialect of Choyu: less than gYanglagshis and more than Tuanjie. From a qualitative viewpoint, Lhagang Choyu and Rongpa are relatively close to each other, although differences exist. For example, in Lhagang Choyu the retroflex obstruent series are plosives, but in Choyu dialects they are affricates. In Lhagang Choyu and Tuanjie glottal sounds are phonemic, but they are not phonemic in gYanglashis and Rongpa. The existence of uvular nasals is a characteristic feature of Lhagang Choyu, which certainly forms a contrast with velar nasals, as displayed in 3.2.1. The word forms in 3.2.1 are not considered as loans. Hence, uvular nasals may be a native feature of Lhagang Choyu. [22] In addition, it is noteworthy that all the varieties of Lhagang Choyu and Choyu do not have an aspiration contrast in fricatives despite its general existence in Khams Tibetan varieties overlapping with the Lhagang Choyu and the Choyu-linguistic area (see sKal-bzang 'Gyur-med 1985 for mBathang, Häsler 1999 for Derge, and Suzuki and Sonam Wangmo 2015 for Lhagang Village). As for the complex initial series, the emergence of preaspiration in Lhagang Choyu implies a simplification of complex initials. However, the Tuanjie dialect is different from other Choyu varieties in its lack of complex initials. Across the Choyu dialects (including Lhagang Choyu) simple vowels have less variation than consonants. It is reasonable to postulate that Lhagang Choyu's various secondary articulations for vowels correspond to the final consonants and diphthongs in Choyu dialects.

A preliminary lexical comparison between Lhagang Choyu, gYanglagshis and Tuanjie revealed the following features:

1. the existence of sound correspondences of postalveolars and uvulars between Lhagang Choyu and Choyu;

2. the relationship between preaspiration in Lhagang Choyu and oral preinitials in gYanglagshis;

3. an unclear relationship between prenasalisation of Lhagang Choyu and Choyu;

4. a clear relationship between labial preinitials in Lhagang Choyu and gYanglagshis; and

5. a clear sound correspondence of labialised vowels in Lhagang

---

[22] One can also compare the cases of Minyag (Huang 1991) and Chengzhang Tibetan (Ye-shes 'Od-gsal A-tshogs 2008) as neighboring languages as well as a general discussion regarding uvulars in Tibeto-Burman (Huang 2012).

Choyu with a high rounded vowel /u/ in gYanglagshis and Tuanjie and with a labial preinitial /p/ in gYanglagshis.

The three varieties have Tibetic loans; however, their word forms suggest that their respective borrowing pathways might be different.

In sum, we can reasonably postulate that Tuanjie Choyu has a typologically independent position among Lhagang Choyu and Choyu varieties in terms of sound structure, which is simpler than gYanglagshis Choyu and Lhagang Choyu. Lhagang Choyu is more similar to gYanglagshis Choyu in terms of consonants correspondences. For lexical forms, Lhagang Choyu shares a number of cognates with Choyu; among the present data, we can find more examples which show sound correspondences between Lhagang Choyu and gYanglagshis than between Lhagang Choyu and Tuanjie. However, since lexical variation within Choyu has been unclear so far, we need data from more varieties of Choyu before firm conclusions can be made.

6. Conclusion

This article attempts to provide a rough sketch of the phonology of Lhagang Choyu based merely on about 700 words that the authors collected. An analysis of the phonology has revealed the following phenomena worth noting: the existence of uvular articulation, no aspiration contrast with fricatives, the existence of velarised and labialised vowels, and a word-tone system consisting of two tones (high and low), and stress as a distinctive feature.

A preliminary comparative analysis between Lhagang Choyu and Choyu dialects reveals that Lhagang Choyu is more similar to varieties spoken in Nyagrong and Lithang. Despite the geographical vicinity, it has quite a number of different features from the Tuanjie dialect. The Tuanjie dialect, spoken in the nearest area to the place where Lhagang Choyu is spoken, is typologically different from Lhagang Choyu, and even from other Choyu dialects.

The number of collected words is insufficient to describe in detail the sound structure of Lhagang Choyu due to its relatively complicated sound structure, which is similar to Choyu dialects described in Wang (1991) and Nishida (2008). In order to investigate the history and relationship between Lhagang Choyu and Choyu in more detail, it is necessary for more lexical items and texts from Lhagang Choyu and other Choyu dialects to be collected and analysed.

Acknowledgements

Appendix
Lhagang Choyu word list in an alphabetical order of the English entry

N.B. Following abbreviations are used as necessary: (pl): plural; (sg): singular; (v): verb. We do not include grammatical information about the verbs (e.g., person indexation, TAM, egophoric evidentiality, etc.), due to insufficient data for giving us a clear understanding of the verbal system. Some supplementary words are added in square brackets to specify a given meaning. Most verbs appear with a directional prefix. Literary Tibetan (LT) cognates are shown in italics within square brackets after likely loanwords from Tibetic languages. See Suzuki and Sonam Wangmo (2015, 2016b, 2017) for the word forms of modern dialects spoken around the Lhagang Choyu-spoken area.

abbot	⁻ŋkʰɑ̃ ᵐbu [LT *mkhan po*]
accomplish	´kʰə wu
afternoon	⁻ɕə ⁿȡʰa; ⁻ɕə ⁿȡʰa ta sə
agate	⁻ɦzə [LT *gzi*]
age	⁻kʷa
alcoholic drink	⁻wəʸ; ⁻woʸ
all	´re tɕə tə
alveolum	⁻ᵐtʰo
amber	⁻ᵖpo ɕe [LT *spos shel*]
ant	⁻pə ro / ⁻ɦdza pə ro
arrive	´tu
arrow	⁻ᵐda [LT *mda'*]
ask	´tʰe ka kə ´la nə no
autumn	⁻ᵖto' ta ɕa
axe	⁻ᵖte ri [LT *sta re*]
back [body]	´ɦgʷə te
back [position]	´pa; ⁻kʰa' nɔ
bad	⁻qʰa qʰa; ⁻ᵖtsoʸ' ᵖtsoʸ

bark   ´rə ᵇtɯ
barley   ¯kʷa
be [copulative]   ´tsᵇə; ´tsə
be afraid   ´ʋə ᵇtɕə
be boiled   ´kə tʃˤa; ¯tʃˤa ´ɦa tˤo
be broken   ´ta ɕe
be cooked   ˆji tˤo
be deaf   ¯ni pɯ to ji ¯ma ⁿnə tə
be drunk   ´ta zə
be enough   ´ta tɕe
be full   ´kə tɕi nə ´ta tɕʰe; ¯ʋu' tə ¯ʔa' te te
be hot   ¯ŋ̥ə zo tə
be hungry   ´ˠzi
be ill   ´ŋ̥o' tə
be ripe   ¯m̥e ˆji tˤo
be shy   ¯kʷa kʷa; ¯kʷa ´ma ŋo nə
be sleepy   ¯mo ´la tu tə; ¯qo mə sə
be thirsty   ¯ᶠɕe tə
be tired   ´la ɣa
beads   ´ᵐᵖtʰe ʋe [LT phreng ba]
bean   ¯ᵇsɛ ma [LT sran ma]
bean flour   ¯naˠ
bear   ´ʈi mu [LT dred mong]; ´wɔ rə
beautiful   ¯qa' tɕʰi; ¯ᶮtɕᵇə' ᶮtɕʰə
bed   ¯za' tˤa
belly   ¯ʋu
bent   ´gu gu [LT sgur sgur]
big;large   ´ga pu
bitter   ¯n̥o' n̥o
black   ¯ɲi' ɲi
blood   ¯səˠ
bloom   ¯ta pe
blow[the trumpet]   ¯pʰu ta nɯ
blue   ¯ŋ̊ə' ŋ̊ə
boar   ¯pʰu pʰa [LT pho phag]
body hair   ¯m̥e; ¯ʷra
bone   ¯ʃə rə
book   ¯ɦgʷə
boot   ´ko tsə ¯zʷi
borrow   ´tə ŋ̊e
bottle   ˆjĩ tˤo ´tˤã ⁿbi
bottom   ¯ma la ᵇtsə
bow (v); worship   ¯ɕe ´la ʷzo; ´la ʷzo
bowl   ´tˤã ⁿbi
box   ¯ɲe ɦgã

boy   ˉʐi
bracelet   ´la ʰʈi
brain   ˉɦlɛ pa [LT *klad pa*]
break [a bowl]   ´ta ɕe
breakfast   ´qʰa tsʰa
breast   ´ʳʈu; ´ʳʈu te
bridge   ´zã˞ⁿbe [LT *zam pa*]
bright   ˉɴə' ɴə
broom   ˉɕi tɕɑ
bucket   ˉtɕʰɯ zu [LT *chu zo*]
bullet   ˉⁿde wu [LT *mde'u*]
butter   ˉma [LT *mar*]
butterfly   ˉʃɯ
button   ´ɦɖu ku [LT *sgro*]
buttocks   ˉsʰu ⁿgu; ˉpʰo [LT *'phongs*]
buy   ´ku ku
calf   ˉxe' ʐi
carnivore   ˉʰtɕə ⁿdze [LT *gcan gzan*]
carry on the back   ´ta ku
cat   ˉmo ʐi
catch cold   ´tɕʰa sə ˉqo' za sə
caterpillar fungus   ˉpə' tʃa
cattle dung   ´pʷa
celebrate the New Year   ´lo ʰsa ˉɕa
chat   ˉkʰa ʰda ´la bi
cheap   ´kʷo ´ga bu
cheese   ´ta ra [LT *dar ba*]
chew   ´ta ʰŋo
chicken   ´ɸɕa [LT *bya*]
child   ´ɕo ɕe
chili   ˉhu tsʰa
chin   ´ma ɦŋkʰi
claw   ´wa rə
clean   ˉʰtsɔ̃ me [LT *gtsang ma*]
clear   ´tɔ̃ mu [LT *dwang mo*]
climb a mountain   ´rə ʁo ´ʔə ɕa
close [the mouth]   ˉpo ´la jʉ; ˉpo; ´ⁿdze
close[the door]   ´rə tʰa; ´rə ʰta
cloth   ´ra [LT *ras*]; ´ra ʰkɯ [LT *ras skud*]
clothings   ˉkə mə; ´kə mə
cloud   ˉʰʈĩ [LT *sprin*]
cock   ´ɸɕa [LT *bya*]
cock year   ´ɸɕa [LT *bya*]
cold [weather]   ´ʋə tɕʰə pʰi pʰi; ˉpo' po
collar   ˉkə mə ˉtaʸ' gi

collect [woods]   ´ta sə
comb   ´sə
comb (v)   ¯la ʈʰa
come   ¯ʔə lo; ´ji tɯ pə
cooking stove   ´tʰɑ kʰʷe [LT *thab ka*]
copper   ´zɔ̃ [LT *zangs*]
coral   ¯ɕɯ rɯ; ´ɕɯ rɯ [LT *byu ru*]
corner   ´zo ʁo
correct   ´ze tə
cought   ¯tsʰa jo tʰə
cowshed   ´zo zi
cross[a bridge]   ´kə ɕə
crow   ´ɸɕa ɲi ɲi
cushion   ´kɛ sa; ¯ɦde ɦdzə
cut off   ¯ta qʰɑ
cut up [vegetable]   ´la tʃʰə
cut[meat]   ´ta qʰo
cypress   ¯ɕu pa [LT *shug pa*]
cypress incense   ¯ʰso [LT *bsang*]
dance   ¯ʷlu
dance (v)   ¯ʷlu ʷtʰə; ¯ʷlu ʷlu
Dartsendo   ¯ⁿdu [LT *mdo*]
daughter   ¯ɦzo
daughter-in-law   ¯ɦna me [LT *mna' ma*]
day after tomorrow   ´qʰo se
day before yesterday   ¯ⁿgʷa' la
day breaks   ¯mu ¯ʔə so
daytime   ´ɲĩ ᵐbe [LT *nyin pa*]
deity   ¯ɭe [LT *lha*]
dew   ´zi pa [LT *zil pa*]
die   ´tə si
difficult   ¯ɣa' ɣa
dinner   ¯tɕe' wu tɕa
dirty   ¯ʰtsoˠ' ʰtsoˠ
dish   ¯ɦdəˠ [LT *sdir*]
do   ´la la
do not have   ´ma tɕe tu
doctor   ¯m̥ɛ̃ ᵐba [LT *sman pa*]
dog   ¯tʃɯ
dog year   ´tɕʰə [LT *khyi*]
domestic animal   ´sə ɦtɕʰe [LT *sems can*]
donkey   ¯kə rə
door   ¯ʁa
downwards   ´la ʐu
dragon   ´ⁿɖu [LT *'brug*]

dragon year	ˆⁿɖu [LT *'brug*]
draw [a picture]	´kə ʒə
dream	⁻la ɦme
dream (v)	´la ɦme sə; ⁻ɦme ɦde
drink	´ɦə tʰə
drop (v)	⁻lɑ zɑ
dry	´ro ro; ⁻ro' ro
dry [clothes]	⁻lɑ pʰo
eagle	ˆɸɕa ɦgo [LT *bya rgod*]
ear	⁻ni; ⁻ni pɯ to
earrings	´lõ tʰu
earth;ground	´ɕa
earthen jar	´tʰa xu
earthquake	´ɕa ´mə mu
east	⁻ɕa [LT *shar*]
eat	´kə tsʰə
egg	ˆɦgo ŋa [LT *sgo nga*]; ´ȵa ɦgo
eight	ˆɦdzɛ [LT *brgyad*]
elbow	´ʈɯ ⁿdzo [LT *gru mjug*]
elder brother	ˆʔa ko; ⁻zɯ mə ʰtɯ
elder sister	ˆʔa dze; ⁻ʔa' tɕa
empty	⁻ʰtõ ⁿba [LT *stong pa*]
evening	´me zi
exchange	´ku ɦu
excrement	⁻ʰto
excuse	´ta ⁿdzo
exist [person]	´tɕe
exist [thing on a place]	´ɣo
expensive	´kʷo ´qo zə
extend	´ɣa
eye	⁻ȵe
eyebrow	⁻ȵe m̥e
eyelash	⁻ȵe m̥e
face	⁻qʰʷɑ' ʒə / ⁻qʰo' ʒə
fall asleep	⁻mə ´la tɥ
false	´ma tse tə
far	´tʰa re [LT *thag ring*]
farmer	´rõ ⁿbe [LT *rong pa*]
fasten	´kə ʰtɕa
fat	⁻tʰo ´ʁʷə tə; ⁻tʰo ´ʁo' tɕi
fat oil	⁻ʰtsɑ
father [address]	⁻ʔa pa
father [reference]	⁻sʷe
female deity	⁻ɬe [LT *lha*]
female mdzo	⁻ⁿdzo [LT *mdzo*]

female yak   ˉrɑ; ˉrʷɑ
fetch   ´kə ku
few;little   ´ɲi ɲi
fight   ´tʉ tʉ la ´ʋi
fill   ´la ta
finger   ´le ɳi
finish;be over   ´la wu
fire   ´mə; ˉmə
fish   ´ɲa [LT *nya*]
five   ˉŋʷa
five [things]   ˉŋʷa′ tɕʰo
flat   ´ʳʈa ʳʈa
flea   ´ₕlo
flour   ˉꟸlu ˠ və
flower   ˉmə to [LT *me tog*]
fly (v)   ˉta ꟸde
food   ˉᵑdu
foot   ˉₕko; ˉₕku
forehead   ´tʰa pe [LT *thod pa*]
forget   ´ta ʷnə
fortune   ˉꟸlɔ ₕta [LT *rlung rta*]
four   ˉzə; ˉꟸzə
four [things]   ˉzə′ tɕʰo
fox   ´ɣa
fragrant   ˉʑe′ ʑe
free (time)   ˉtsoˠ′ tə
friend   ´tɕʷa
frog   ˉꟸbɛ ba [LT *sbal ba*]
front   ˉꟸgʷa; ˉŋ̊u [LT *sngon*]
front gate   ˉʁa ´ꟸgɛ pu
frost   ´pa mo [LT *ba mo*]
fry   ˉzo
full   ´tə ʳsɯ
garlic   ˉɕu
gate   ˉʁa
get old   ´kə tʰa sə
get up   ˉʔə səˠ; ˉʔə kʰo
ghost; demon   ꟷɟa ⁿɖi
ginger   ˉtɕa ꟸga [LT *skya sga*]
girl   ˉꟸzo
give   ´tɑ ₕtɑ; ˉtɑ ₕtɑ ´ʋə
give birth   ˉₕta
glass   ˉɕe [LT *shel*]
glasses   ´mi ra [LT *mig ra*]
go out   ´nɔ ŋa ´la ɕə

go upstairs   ˉʔə ʰta la; ´ʔə ɕə
go; leave   ´la ɕə
goat   ˉₒtsʰa
gold   ˉₖsəˠ [LT *gser*]
good   ˉqa' tɕʰi
granddaughter   ˉtsʰa mu [LT *tsha mo*]
grandfather   ˉʔa wu
grandmother   ˉma ma
grandson   ˉtsʰa wu [LT *tsha bo*]
grass   ˉru
green   ´ɦdzɔ̃ kʰu [LT *ljong khu*]
grey   ˉₖtɕa' pʰe pʰe
gum   ´ja ʰke [LT *yar rkan*]
gun   ´ʈõ ₒda
hail   ´kʰa ᵐpʰo
hair   ˉm̥e; ´qʰa m̥e
hammer   ˉlu ´ɕe ta
Han Chinese   ´ɦdʐa [LT *rgya*]
hand   ˉle
handle   ´lu
hang [on the wall]   ˉʔə tʰə lɑ; ´ʔə xa la
happy   ´sẽ ₘbe ˉqa' tɕʰi; ˉɦga [LT *dga'*]
hard; solid   ˉqʰə' qʰə
hat   ´ʑa [LT *zhwa*]
have a fever   ´tsʰa pe ´rʷa tə
have a headache   ˉqʰo ´ɳo
have; exist   ´tɕo; ´tɕi
he; she; it   ´tsəˠ; ´ti; ´dzə
head   ˉqʰo
heart   ˉɳa' mi
heat up [cold rice]   ˉko ₗo
heavy   ˉʷlə' ʷlə
help   ´ʁo
herbivore   ´rə te
here   ´tɕə ke
hide   ´ta ɦba
high; tall   ´qo zə; ˉₜtʰõ ₘbu
highland barley   ˉʃəˠ
hit[a person]   ´tɛ ʰtu; ´ta ʰtu
hold;grasp   ˉqə ₘdzɯ
horn   ˉⁿtʃʰə
horse   ˉre
horse food   ˉri ₙdu
horse year   ˉₖta; ˉᵧre
hot   ˉₘdza' ₘdza; ˉₗɭu' ₗɭu
hot pepper   ˉhu tsʰa

hot water	´ʒə tʃʰɑ
house	´ze; ¯ze
how	´ⁿde´ pe ro
how many	´ⁿde ᵇta
I	´ŋa; ´ŋə n̠o
ice	´tɕʰa ro ¯sa
in the past	¯ɕə ɕə
incense	¯ʰpu
incorrect	´ma ze tə
inn; hotel	´ra wa
insect; worm	¯pə' tʃa
insert; plant	´pʰaj pʰaj ˆⁿdzɯ mə
inside	¯nɔ ŋa; ´ko ŋa; ¯ʔu gu
intestine	´ʱdzɯ ma [LT rgyu ma]
iron	¯ʰtɕɑ [LT lcags]
jewel	´no ʱbɯ [LT nor bu]
kettle	´ʈʰa xu
key	¯ʱde mi [LT lde mig]
khatak	¯kʰa te [LT kha btags]
kid	¯tsʰa' zi
kidney	¯ʰkʰi ma [LT mkhal ma]
kill	´tə sa
knee	¯ŋ̊i
kneel	¯ŋ̊i ´kə su
knife	¯ʈə' zi
knot	´ⁿdɯ pa [LT mdud pa]
knot (v)	´ⁿdɯ pa ´kə ra
know	¯ha ´la ku
know [how to write]	´ʔa ŋu; ´ʔa ŋi
lake	¯tsʰu [LT mtsho]
lama	¯ʷla me [LT bla ma]
language	¯ʰkə [LT skad]
last night	´pɯ ɕo
last year	´ji ᵛzi; ¯ji ᵛzi
laugh;smile	´ᵛru ᵛru tu tə
lax; loose	¯tə' ʰl̥a
leaf	´lo ma [LT lo ma]
lean meat	¯ɬo ¯qaᵛ' zi
learn	´kə ze
leave	´ta pʰə
left	¯jo [LT g.yon]; ¯jo qo ma; ¯pə' le
Lhagang	¯ɭa ʱgo [LT lha sgang]
lick;lap	´pə ʱdzi
light [weight]	´jɔ̃ wu
light (a fire)	´ᵐba [LT 'bar]

like this	ˉtɕə' be tə
lion	´se͂ gi [LT *seng ge*]
listen	´ᵐne
little	´ɳi ɳi̥
liver	´ze
lock	ˉʰtɕɑ lo
lock [the door]	ˉqʰo ´kə ru
log	ˉse
long	ˉsɛˠ sɛˠ
long time ago	ˉᵇtʰa la ᵇtʰa la
look	ˉkə sə re
look after	ˉta' ze
lose [thing]	´ma ´ta' tɕo
lotus	ˉpɛ ma ˉmə to
louse	ˉɕə [LT *shig*]
love;like	ˉꞕga [LT *dga'*]
low;short	ˉꞕmɛ ꞕmɛ [LT *dma' dma'*]
lower [the head]	ˆꞕgu ꞕgu ´la zo
lower half-body	´kʰʷa ɱɛ [LT *khog smad*]
lunatic person	ˉʁa' mu
lunch	ˆꞕgu za [LT *dgong zan*]
lung	ˉꞕlo wa [LT *glo ba*]
mani stone pile	˥ɭa ᵇtsʰa
many; much	ˉqa' ʑi
matter	ˉkə' lə ˉla la
mdzo	ˉwə' ʑi
meal;food	ˉᵐdu
meat	ˉᵗɬo
medicine	ˉɱɛ̥
melt	˥la ˅ʒɥ
merchant	´tsʰo͂ ᵐba [LT *tshong pa*]
middle	ˉʰtɕi kʰu
milk	ˉnɛˠ
milk (v)	´la ᵇtsə; ´tsa͂
milk cow	ˉꞕzo͂ ma [LT *bzhon ma*]
mirror	ˉɕə ꞕgu [LT *shel sgo*]
mole	ˉɱe wa [LT *sme ba*]
monastery	ˉꞕgo͂ ᵐbe [LT *dgon pa*]
money	ˉme ʑi
monk	ˉʈa' pe [LT *grwa pa*]
monkey	ˉʰʈe [LT *spre'u*]
monkey year	ˉʰʈi [LT *sprel*]
month	ˉʰɭi
moon	ˉꞕda [LT *zla ba*]
morning	´nĩ ᵐbe [LT *nyin pa*]

morning [before the noon]	ˊₒtˁa ra
mother [address]	ˉʔa ma
mother [reference]	ˉmi
mother's uncle	ˉʔə zo
mountain	ˉqʰo; ˊrə ʁo
mouse	ˉhʷa; ˉhʷə
mouse year	ˊɕə wa [LT *byi ba*]; ˉhʷə
moustache	ˉn̥a m̥e
mouth	ˉn̥ə
move [house]	ˊta pʰo
mow	ˉta qʰɑ
mule	ˊʈi [LT *drel*]
mushroom	ˉɕa mo [LT *sha mo*]
mute person	ˉꜝɦlɛ̃ ᵐba [LT *glen pa*]
myself	ˉʔə n̠o ʔə n̠o
nail	ˉₚtsaˠ
name	ˉn̠i; ˊn̠ə
narrate	ˊlə ᶲɕe
narrow	ˉɦdʐaˊza za
nasal mucus	ˊn̥ɑ pə
navel	ˉvɯ ɕu
near	ˊtˁɑ n̠i
neck	ˉʁe
necklace	ˉₚke ᵇʈi [LT *ske dkris*]
need	ˊzi tə
needle	ˉqʰɯ
new	ˉₚsa ɦbe [LT *gsar pa*]
New Year	ˊlo səˠ [LT *lo gsar*]
next year	ˊma se
nine	ˉɦgɯ [LT *dgu*]
nine [things]	ˉɦgɯʼ tɕʰo
noodles	ˊgu za
north	ˊɕɔ̃ [LT *byang*]
nose	ˉn̥i
now	ˊʔo ko; ˊʔə ko
nun	ˉʔa ne [LT *a ne*]
oat	ˊji pu [LT *yug pu*]
offspring of a bull and a female yak	ˉwəʼ zi
oil	ˉn̥a
old [thing]	ˉɦn̠ĩ ᵐbe [LT *rnying pa*]
old [person]	ˊkʷa ˀɦga pu
old man	ˀɦgə pu [LT *rgad po*]
old woman	ˀɦgə mu [LT *rgad mo*]

on [the table]	ˉᵇte [LT *steng*]
one	ˉtə
one [thing]	ˉtə' tɕʰo
onion	ˉtso [LT *tsong*]
open [a cover]	´ɦə tɕʰə; ´kə ᵖtɕʰə
open [a door]	´ka le ´ta tʰa
outside	ˉʔa ʋə; ´ʁa te
over there	´pʰa rə
owl	´ɣu pa [LT *'ug pa*]
ox	ˉʰlã̄ [LT *glang*]
ox year	ˉʰlã̄ [LT *glang*]; ´sə ⁿ̥tɕʰe [LT *sems can*]
paper	´ɕo ku [LT *shog bu*]
parents	ˉsʰe mi
paste	ˉkʷaˠ wa ˉqo ɭo; ˉkə ʒə la
paternal uncle	ˉʔa kɯ [LT *a ku*]
paternal uncle's wife	ˉʔa ne [LT *a ne*]
pea;bean	ˉᵇsɛ ma [LT *sran ma*]
peaceful	´ʑe
peach	ˉkʰã̄ ⁿbɯ [LT *kham bu*]
peacock	ˉʰma ɕa [LT *rma bya*]
peel	´ta kʷa
pen	´ɕe pi
person	ˉm̥ɯ
pick up	´ta ᵖtʰɯ ´la ⁿde
picture	´rə mu [LT *ri mo*]
pig	ˉʋe
pig food	ˉʋi ⁿdu
pig year	ˉpʰɑ [LT *phag*]
piglet	ˉpə' ʑi
pigsty	´ʋe ᵖtsʰo
pillar	ˉⁿdze
pillow	ˉqʰʷa' ʁo
pitiful	´ma ro pʰe pʰe
place	´ɕa
plairie	ˉru
plank	ˉɕẽ dzɑ
play	ˉtɕi tɕi ´la ɦzo
plough	ˉle
pony	ˉqa ʑi
poor	ˉtɕo' mə
porridge	ˆⁿdɛ tʰu [LT *'bras thug*]
potato	´jã̄ ji
power	ˆʰʁʷɑ [LT *dbang*]
press; push down	´ta tʰo
price	´kʷo [LT *gong*]

promise	ˊkʰɛ ˊta le
pull	ˊta ˑtʰɯ ˑtʰo
pull up	ˉqʰa
push	ˊta tɕʰu
put [soil] on	ˊtɑ pʰo
quarrel	ˊtɨ tɨ ˊla
quick;fast	ˉⁿ̥tɕʰoˈ ⁿ̥tɕʰo
rabbit	ˊrə ɣõ [LT *ri bong*]
rabbit year	ˈjo [LT *yos*]
rain	ˉhʷi
rain falls	ˉhʷi ˉtu; ˉmu ˉtu
rainbow	ˉⁿdza [LT *'ja'*]
raise [pigs]	ˊkə zu
raise [the tail]	ˊɦə tsʰe; ˊkə tsʰə
read	ˉȵa
red	ˉŋ̊eˈ ŋ̊e; ˉŋ̊iˈ ŋ̊i
reincarnated lama	ˉʰʈu ku [LT *sprul sku*]
remember	ˉʰsã̄be ˊʰsɔ tə
resemble	ˊⁿɖa ⁿɖa [LT *'dra 'dra*]
return [home]	ˉʔə ˑgu ˉɕoˈ tsə
rice	ˉᵐɖʰa [LT *'bras*]
rich	ˊtɕe tɕe
ride	ˊta ʰtɕa pe
right [hand]	ˉtoˈ le; ˉɦji pa
ring	ˊʔa lo; ˊla tʰɯ
ring in a cow's nose	ˉȵi tə tɕu
river	ˊʒə
road	ˊri; ˊɦdza la [LT *rgya lam*]
rock	ˉlu
roof	ˉʔə ˑde
root	ˉru
rough	ˊtɕaˈ tɕa
round	ˊɦwə ɦwə
run	ˉtə jə
saddle	ˉʰta ɦga [LT *rta sga*]
saliva	ˉqʰa ʒə
salt	ˉⁿ̥tɕʰi
salty	ˉⁿ̥tɕʰiˈ n̠õ tə
sand	ˊtɕə ma [LT *bye ma*]
saw	ˊso tɕi
scarf	ˊʰpɑ rɛ
school	ˉɕõ ˑtʰa
scoop up[water]	ˉʔə ˑtʰe
script	ˉɦgʷə
see	ˉru

seed	⁻ʱlɯˠ
sell	⁻ta ʱtɕi
seven	⁻ʱdɛ [LT *bdun*]
sew	´so tɕe
sew (v)	´so tɕe ´ta ɕe
shadow	´ʈə nɑ [LT *grib nag*]
shake [head]	´ta hu; ´hu hu
sheath	⁻ʈə' zi ´ku tʰɑ
sheep	´lu [LT *lug*]
sheep year	´lu [LT *lug*]
sheepfold	´lu qʰa tʰa
shit	´qə ʰlə
shoe	⁻zʷi; ⁻ʷzi
shoot	⁻tɕʰo ʰda ´kə rə
short	⁻tsʰɔ' tsʰɔ; ⁻ʰtsʰo ʰtsʰo
shoulder	´ʰʈa pe [LT *phrag pa*]
show	⁻kə sə re
Sichuan pepper	⁻ʱja ma [LT *g.yer ma*]
sickle	⁻ʱʐə
silver	⁻ʱŋʷa
silverweed	⁻zə
sit;stay	´ta ʰtu; ´la' ʰtso
six	´ʈu [LT *drug*]
six [things]	´ʈu' tɕʰo
skin	´ʱri; ⁻ʰl̥oˠ
sky	⁻mu
sleep	´kə zə; ´kə zɛ̃
sleeve	⁻pʰɯ l̥e
slim	⁻ɬo ´ma ʁʷə tə; ⁻ɬo ´ma ʁʷə tɕi
slow	´ta ta
small	´za za
smell	´ta ʷnu; ⁻ka' ʷna ⁻lo ʷno
smoke	⁻kʰu
smoke (v)	⁻kʰu ´ji tʰe
smooth	⁻n̥a' n̥a
snake	⁻pə re
snake year	⁻ʱdɯ [LT *sbrul*]
snap	´ta po ´ta ˠɕe
snore	⁻ʱɲi xɔ ´kə ra
snow	⁻kʰa [LT *kha ba*]
snuff	⁻n̥a tʰe
soft	⁻ʋə' ʋə
soil	´ɕa
soldier	⁻ʱmɑ mi [LT *dmag mi*]
son	⁻zi

son-in-law	ˉpə tʰo
song	´la jo; ˉɦluɯ [LT *glu*]
south	˧lo [LT *lho*]
sour	ˉᵖtɕʷaʼ ᵖtɕʷa
sow	ˉwaʼ ⁿɖɑ
speech	´tɕə ʰkɑ ´ᶠɕʷə
spicy; hot	ˉᵛzɑʼ ᵛzɑ; ˉno ᵛzo ʰtə
spit	ˉɬʰa ´la ɬʰuɯ
spleen	ˉᵒtsʰe ʰpa [LT *mtsher pa*]
spoon	ˉtɑʼ po
spring	ˉₕɕiʼ ta ɕa
sputum	ˉɬʰa
square	´ᵛʒə ʈuɯ ma
stable	´re qʰa tʰa
stairs	˧l̥iʼ ki
stand up	ˉʔə kʰo
star	ˉₕka ma [LT *skar ma*]
statue of Buddha	ˉₕsɑ ʰku [LT *sangs sku*]
steal	´ta kuɯ kʷa
steam (v)	´qʰə qʰa
steamed bun	ˉkaʼ wa
steelyard	ˉɦdʑa me [LT *rgya ma*]
stomach	ˉvu
stone	˧lu
stool	ˉtsuʼ tʰɑ
story	´qʰa ʰpi [LT *kha dpe*]
straight	´ʈo mu [LT *drang mo*]
street	´ɦdʑa la [LT *rgya lam*]
stūpa	´ᶠₕtɕʰa ʰte [LT *mchod rten*]
sugar	ˉʃʷa
suckle	´nuɯ nuɯ ´ɬʰe
summer	ˉɦja ʼ ta ɕa
sun	ˉmi tsi
surroundings	ˉₕkʰʷa ra ´la ʋi
sūtra	ˉtɕʰu [LT *chos*]
swear;vow	ˉɬʰo ´ŋuɯ
sweat	ˉȵaʼ ʒə
sweep	ˉʔə ᵑgu lə ´k̚a le
sweet	ˉɦŋa ɦbu [LT *mngar po*]; ˉɴuɯʼ ɴuɯ
table	ˉtɕoᵛ tse [LT *cog tse*]
tail	´nə
talk	ˉkʰa ʰda ´la bi
take	ˉʔa ɬʰe ˉwo ´ta ʰko
take with	ˉtaʼ ɦzo
taste	ˉʔa ze la ˉzo

tea	´tɕa [LT *ja*]
teach	´kə ze
teacher	⁻ɦge ɦge [LT *dge rgan*]
tear	⁻ɲe' ʒə
tear up	´ta ʂa
tell	´ɲo
ten	⁻ᵇtɕɯ [LT *bcu*]
ten [things]	⁻ᵇtɕɯ' tɕʰo
tent	´ra ko [LT *ras gur*]
that	´tu ku
that [over yonder]	´pʰa rə; ⁻ʔa və
there	´tu ku
these	⁻ʔə tɕə re
they	´ze ⁿdza; ´dzə ᵈtsʰə
thick	⁻ɭe' ɭe
thief	⁻ʰkɯ ma [LT *rku ma*]
thigh	⁻ɦla [LT *brla*]
thin	´ᵐɭa ᵐɭa, ⁻ᶲʃi' ᶲʃi
thin [in diametre]	⁻tsʰaˠ' tsʰaˠ
thing	⁻tɕa ka
think	⁻tse' tə
this	⁻ʔə tɕə; ⁻ʔə tɕi
this year	´pɯ zi
thorn	⁻tsʰəˠ [LT *tsher ma*]
thread	⁻ᵇtsə
three	´so; ⁻so
three [things]	´so' tɕʰo
three days later	⁻qʰo ti
three days ago	⁻ᵑgʷa la ᵑgʷa la
throat	⁻ʔo ᵈdi [LT *o mdud*]
thumb	´ᵊtʰe mo ɦdza ɦbu [LT *mthe mo rgyal po*]
thunder	´ⁿɖu [LT *'brug*]
thunder (v)	´ⁿɖu ´tɑ' tə
Tibetan	´po pe [LT *bod pa*]
tiger	⁻ᵇtɑˠ [LT *stag*]
tiger year	⁻ᵇtɑˠ [LT *stag*]
tight	´tã ᵐbu [LT *dam po*]
time	⁻tɕʰɯ tsʰo [LT *chu tshod*]
tip	⁻qʰo' ʁa
tobacco	⁻kʰu
today	⁻pɯ ɕə
together	´ɲə ɦbu ɕa
toilets	⁻tɕʰo kɔ̃ [LT *chab khang*]
tomorrow	´ʔa se
tomorrow night	⁻sa' me

tongue	ˉ ʰl̥i
tonight	´pɯ me
tooth	ˉki
touch	ˉkə ⁿdze la ⁿdzi
tread	´ta tʰo
tree	ˉɕe
trousers	ˉꜞɦdzɯ
true	ˉꜞɦde' tə
tsampa	ˉvə; ˉva
turn over	´kə ꜞkʰʷə ´jə ꜞkʰʷə
turn over [thing]	ˉtə ⁿkʰʷa
turquoise	ˉꜞɦjɯ [LT *g.yu*]
twelve animal years	´lo ʰtɑ [LT *lo rtags*]
twenty	´ɲ̥i ɕɯ [LT *nyi shu*]
twig fence	´ɦgu ra [LT *sgo ra*]
twins	ˉₑtsʰəˠ [LT *mtshe*]
twist	´ji ʰl̥ɑ
two	ˉɲ̥i; ˉɲ̥e
two [things]	ˉɲ̥i' tɕo
two of them	´tsəˠ ⁿdze
two of us	ˉʔa ⁿdzə
two of you	ˉne ⁿdze
ugly	ˉʰtsoˠ' ʰtsoˠ
uncover	´ɦə tɕʰu
under [the table]	´wa
understand	ˉha ´ku tə; ˉha ´ta ke
unseam [clothing]	´ta ʃa
upper half-body	´kʰʷa ʰta [LT *khog stod*]
upwards	ˉʔa ta
urine	´paˠ
village	´ʈõ ⁿbe [LT *grong pa*]
voice	ˉʰkə [LT *skad*]
vomit	ˉⁿpʰɔ' la tu; ˉⁿpʰã
vulture	ˉʰl̥ɑ [LT *glag*]
waist	ˉtɕɯ
wait	ˉꜞɦʑi; ˉʰkɯ' le ʁa
wake up	ˉʔə tɕʰu sə
wall	ˉʰtsi pa [LT *rtsig pa*]
walnut	ˉʰta ꜞɦga [LT *star kha*]
warm oneself [by a fire]	´kə roˠ
wash [clothes]	´la ʰtɕɯ
water	´ʒə
water spring	ˉtɕʰɯ mi [LT *chu mig*]
we	ˉʔa ŋ̥a re; ´ŋə ₑtsʰə

wear [clothes]	ˉta ke; ˉta ˌke
wear [ring]	´ɦə qə le
weave [basket]	ˉȵu' tə
weave [hair]	ˉˌɭa ˌɭa
weep	´tʰɑ jo tə
weigh [food]	´ʔə kʰə
west	´nu [LT *nub*]
wet	´tsaˠ tsaˠ; ˉtsaˠ' tsaˠ
what	ˉˌde; ˉˌdə
wheat	ˉɦlɯˠ
when	´ˌde ˌta
where	´la ka
whip	ˉɕe ˌtɕɑ
white	ˉˌʈʰoˠ' ˌʈʰoˠ
who	´ɕe
wind	ˉɭa; ´ɦlõˌkʰa
window	´tʰɑ lu
winter	´ɦge' ta ɕa
wipe	´ta ɕə ɕa
wolf	´ɦgo' ra; ´ɦgo' tə
wood	ˉse
wooden bowl	ˉʒa və; ´ʒa və
wool	´zu
work	´lɛ ˌka [LT *las ka*]
work (v)	´lɛ ˌka ´ˌla ˌla; ´ˌla ˌlo
wound	ˉɦmi
woven hair	ˉtʰi ɕe ˌdzə
write	´kə rə
yak	ˉˌʈɔˠ
yak hair tent	ˉɦwa [LT *sbra*]
yawn	ˉha' la ´tu' tə
year	ˉkʷa; ˉkʷo
year before last	ˉtsi' zi
year after next	´qʰʷə se
yellow	ˉȵə' ȵə
yesterday	ˉji' ɕə; ˉji' ɕə
yoghurt	´zo [LT *zho*]
you (sg)	ˉnə
you (pl)	´ne ˌtsʰə re; ´ne ˌtsʰə
young	´kʷa ´za za
younger brother	ˉme ˌbu; ˉza mə ˌtɯ
younger sister	ˉˌsɛ mu [LT *sring mo*]

Bibliography

Caplow, Nancy J.
   "Reconstructing stress in Proto-Tibetan: Evidence from Balti and Rebkong Amdo", *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area*, 39.2, pp. 180-221, 2016. [DOI: 10.1075/ltba.39.2.01cap]

Dai, Qingxia, Bufan Huang, Ailan Fu, Rig-'dzin dBang-mo, and Juhuang Liu
   Zangmianyu Shiwuzhong, Beijing, Beijing Yanshan Chubanshe, 1991.

Dawa Drolma and Hiroyuki Suzuki
   "Preliminary report of the linguistic area of Darmdo Minyag with a geolinguistic description of 'sun' ", *Studies in Asian Geolinguistics I --- Sun---*, pp. 72-78, 2016. Online: https://publication.aa-ken.jp/sag1_sun_2016.pdf (accessed 24 May 2018)

Häsler, Katrin Louise
   A grammar of the Tibetan Dege (Sde dge) dialect, München, Selbstverlag, 1999.

Hoshi, Izumi
   Gendai Tibettogo Doosi Ziten (Lhasa hoogen), Fuchu, Research Institute for the Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa, 2003.

Hoshi, Michiyo
   Ekusupuresu Tibettogo. Tokyo: Hakusuisya, 1991.

Huang, Bufan
   — "Muyayu", In Dai et al., pp. 98-131, 1991.
   — "Guanyinqiaohua yushu wenti yanjiu", *Language and Linguistics* 2.1, pp. 69-92, 2001.
   — "Chuanxi Zangqu de yuyan guanxi", *Chuanxi Zangqu de Yuyan*, pp. 1-17, Beijing, Zhongguo Zangxue Chubanshe, 2009.
   — "Zangmianyu de xiaosheyin", *Yuyanxue Luncong*, 45, pp. 157-174, 2012.

Huang, Bufan (ed)
   Zangmianyuzu Yuyan Cihui, Beijing, Zhongyang Minzu Xueyuan Chubanshe, 1992.

Ikeda, Takumi
   "Seinan Tyuugoku *Sensei minzoku sooroo* tiiki no gengo bunpu:

Reference siryoosyuu", In Osamu Sakiyama (ed.), *Syoometu no kiki ni hinsita gengo no kenkyuu no genzyoo to kadai*, pp. 63-114, Suita, National Museum of Ethnology, 2003.

sKal bzang 'Gyur med
    "Zangyu Batanghua de yuyin fenxi", *Minzu Yuwen* 2, pp. 16-27, 1985.

Kitamura, Hajime
    Tibetan (Lhasa dialect), Tokyo, Research Institute for Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa, 1977.

Ladefoged, Peter
    A Course in Phonetics, 5th edition, Boston, Wadsworth, 2006.

Litang Xianzhi Bianzuan Weiyuanhui
    Litang Xianzhi, Chengdu, Sichuan Renmin Chubanshe, 1996.

Lu, Shaozun
    "Zhabayu gaikuang", *Minzu Yuwen* 2, 67-76, 1985.

de Nebesky-Wojkowitz, René
    Oracles and demons of Tibet: the cult and iconography of the Tibetan protective deities, 's-Gravenhage, Mouton, 1956.

Nishida, Fuminobu
    "Tyuyugo no on-in taikei", *Tyuugoku Kenkyuu*, 16, pp. 77-85, 2008.

Ōno, Susumu, and Takesi Sibata (eds.)
    Iwanami Kōza Nihongo 11 Hōgen, Tokyo, Iwanami Syoten, 1977.

Nagano, Yasuhiko and Marielle Prins (eds.)
    rGyalrongic Languages Database, 2013. Online version: http://htq.minpaku.ac.jp/databases/rGyalrong/ (accessed 24 May 2018)

Rig 'dzin bsTan srung
    Mi nyag gi lo rgyus deb ther ljang gu, Lan gru, Kan su'u rig gnas dpe skrun khang, 2015.

Roche, Gerald and Hiroyuki Suzuki
    — "Mapping the Linguistic Minorities of the Eastern Tibetosphere", *Studies in Asian Geolinguistics VI —Means to Count Nouns—*, pp. 28-42, 2017. Online :

https://publication.aa-ken.jp/sag6_count_2017.pdf (accessed 24 May 2018)
— "Tibet's minority languages: Diversity and endangerment", *Modern Asian Studies*, first view, 2018. [DOI: 10.1017/S0026749X1600072X] (accessed 24 May 2018)

Schneider, Nicola
— "Le Minyag : sur les marches tibétaines du Sichuan", *Le renoncement au féminin : Couvents et nonnes dans le bouddhisme tibétain*, pp. 95-105, Nanterre, Presses universitaires de Paris Ouest, 2013. [En ligne] URL: http://books.openedition.org/pupo/3555 (accessed 25th May 2018).
— "The monastery in a Tibetan pastoralist context. A case study from Kham Minyag", *Études mongoles et sibériennes, centrasiatiques et tibétaines*, [En ligne], 47 | 2016, mis en ligne le 21 décembre 2016. URL : http://emscat.revues.org/2798 (accessed 25th May 2018).

Shirai, Satoko, Keita Kurabe, Kazue Iwasa, Hiroyuki Suzuki, and Shiho Ebihara
"Sun: Tibeto-Burman", *Studies in Asian Geolinguistics*, 1, 2016, pp. 14-17. Online: https://publication.aa-ken.jp/sag1_sun_2016.pdf. (accessed 25 May 2018)

Sichuansheng Kangding Xianzhi Bianzuan Weiyuanhui ed.
Kangding Xianzhi, Chengdu, Sichuan Cishu Chubanshe, 1995.

Song, Lingli
"Chuanxi Minzu Zoulang binwei yuyan gaikuang", *Jinan Xuebao (Zhexue Shehuikexue ban)*, 5, 2006, pp. 137-141.

Sun, Hongkai
"Liujiang liuyu de minzu yuyan ji xishu fenlei: jianshu Jialingjiang shangyou, Yaluzangbujiang liuyu de minzu yuyan", *Minzu Xuebao* 3, 1983, pp. 99-273.

Sun, Hongkai ed.
Zangmianyu Yuyin he Cihui. Beijing, Zhongguo Shehuikexue Chubanshe, 1991.

Suzuki, Hiroyuki
— "Kamutibettogo Kangding-Xinduqiao [Rangakha] hoogen no onsei bunseki", *Asian and African Languages and Linguistics*

(AALL) 2, 2007, pp. 131-162. Online: http://hdl.handle.net/10108/51094. (accessed 25 May 2018)

— "Zai yinbian guocheng zhong chansheng you xiaoshi de yuanehua yuanyin --- Yunnan Deqin Yanmenxiang Guzha Zangyu zhi li", *Kyoto University Linguistic Research* 30, 2011, pp. 35-49. Online: http://hdl.handle.net/2433/159068. (accessed 25 May 2018)

— "Yunnan Weixi Zangyu de r-jieyin yuyin yanbian --- Jiantan *erhua* yu *jinhou* zhi jiaocha guanxi", *Dongfang Yuyanxue*, 13, 2013, pp. 20-35.

— "New perspective on the suprasegmentals in mBrugchu Tibetan : an introduction to the tonogenesis triggered by breathy voice", *Bulletin of Chinese Linguistics* 8.1, 2015, pp. 117-139. [DOI: 10.1163/2405478X-00801007]

— *Dongfang Zangqu Zhuyuyan Yanjiu*, Chengdu, Sichuan Minzu Chubanshe, 2015.

— "Zangyu fangyanxue yanjiu yu yuyan ditu: Ruhe kandai "Kang fangyan"", *Minzu Xuekan* 2, 2016, pp. 1-13+92-94.

Suzuki, Hiroyuki and Sonam Wangmo

— "Lhagang Tibetan of Minyag Rabgang Khams: Vocabulary of two sociolinguistic varieties", *Asian and African Languages and Linguistics (AALL)* 10, 2015, pp. 245-286. Online: http://hdl.handle.net/10108/85072. (accessed 15 May 2018)

— "Lhagang Choyu: A first look at its sociolinguistic status", *Studies in Asian Geolinguistics II ---Rice---*, 2016, pp. 60-69. Online: https://publication.aa-ken.jp/sag2_rice_2016.pdf. (accessed 1 April 2018)

— "Vocabulary of Shingnyag Tibetan: A dialect of Amdo Tibetan spoken in Lhagang, Khams Minyag", *Asian and African Languages and Linguistics (AALL)* 11, 2016, pp. 101-127. Online: http://hdl.handle.net/10108/89211. (accessed 24 May 2018)

— "Lhagang Choyu wordlist with the Thamkhas dialect of Minyag Rabgang Khams (Lhagang, Dartsendo)", *Asian and African Languages and Linguistics (AALL)* 12, 2017, pp. 133-160. Online: http://hdl.handle.net/10108/91144. (accessed 24 May 2018)

— "Geolinguistic approach to the route of Tibetic loanwords in Lhagang Choyu", Hiroyuki Suzuki and Mitsuaki Endo eds. *Papers from the Fourth International Conference of Asian Geolinguistics*, Fuchu, Research Institute for Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa, 2018 (in press)

Tan, Gillian G.
   — "Transforming history and myth: On the mutuality and separation of shared narratives in Eastern Tibet", *The Australian Journal of Anthropology* 24, 2013, [online], pp. 193-212 | 2013, first published online: 9 June 2013. URL: http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1111/taja.2013.24.issue-2/issuetoc (accessed 25 May 2018).
   — "An ethnography of life and changes among Tibetan pastoralists of Minyag Dora Karmo, Ganzi Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture, Sichuan Province", *Études mongoles et sibériennes, centrasiatiques et tibétaines* [En ligne], 43-44 | 2013, mis en ligne le 20 septembre 2013. URL: http://emscat.revues.org/2111 (accessed 25 May 2018).

Timberlake, Alan
   A Reference Grammar of Russian, Cambridge, Cambridge University Press, 2004.

Tournadre, Nicolas
   "The Tibetic languages and their classification", Thomas Owen-Smith & Nathan W. Hill (eds.), *Trans-Himalayan Linguistics: Historical and Descriptive Linguistics of the Himalayan Area*, 2014, pp. 105–129. Berlin, Walter de Gruyter.

Wang, Tianxi.
   "Queyuyu", In Dai et al., pp. 46-63.

Yang, Jiaming
   Ganzi Zangzu Zizhizhou Minzuzhi. Beijing, Dangdai Zhongguo Chubanshe. 1994.

Ye-shes 'Od-gsal A-tshogs
   Chengzhang Zangyu de yinxi. Paper presented at Workshop of Tibeto-Burman Languages of Sichuan (Academia Sinica, Taipei), 2008.

Zhang, Jichuan
   Zangyu Cizu Yanjiu: Gudai Zangzu Ruhe Fengfu Fazhan tamen de Cihui, Beijing, Shehui Kexue Wenxian Chubanshe, 2009.

Zhu, Xiaonong
   Yuyinxue, Beijing, Shangwu Yinshuguan, 2010.

❖

Tibetan Studies and the Art of Dialogue*

Sarah H. Jacoby
(Northwestern University)

What follows is the author's keynote address spoken on June 19, 2016 to the International Association of Tibetan Studies Meeting in Bergen, Norway. The address begins with general reflections on dialogue, moves into an analysis of dialogue in the specific Tibetan context of the writings of the early twentieth Tibetan visionary Sera Khandro Dewé Dorjé (Se ra mkha' 'gro bde ba'i rdo rje), and concludes with a set of questions for reflecting on the value of dialogue for Tibetologists gathering at conferences such as the International Association of Tibetan Studies.

1. On Dialogue

"Dialogue" is an old word in English, in use by the thirteenth century to mean a conversation carried on between two or more people, or a literary work in which such conversation takes place.[1] It derives from even older words in Latin (*dialogus*) and Greek (διάλογος), with broad resonances and applications ranging from ancient literary genres for philosophical exploration to modern strategies for peace building and business success. Perhaps the most famous author of dialogue in the Western world was Plato, who was, in the words of his ancient Greek biographer Diogenes Laertius "*the* writer of dialogues."[2] Millennia after this, the early moderns also sometimes used dialogue as a literary genre for presenting scientific explorations, such as Galileo Galilei's seventeenth-century *Dialogue Concerning the*

---

[1] OED entry for dialogue, n. See http://www.oed.com/view/Entry/51915?isAdvanced=false&result=1&rskey=j6MZlW& accessed Sept. 20, 2018.

[2] As quoted in Dmitri Nikulin, *On dialogue* (Lanham, MD: Lexington Books, 2005), 5.

Two Chief World Systems, in which he defended the Copernican theory that the earth revolved around the sun.[3]

Beyond the many European works written *in* dialogue genres, in the past century there has also been an explosion of analysis *about* dialogue, particularly in the context of literary studies. One cannot think very long about dialogue without encountering the Russian philosopher and literary theorist Mikhail Bakhtin (1895-1975). Bakhtin's central interest was in the novel, a prose form he heralded for its "dialogic" nature. A great novelist, exemplified for Bakhtin by Fyodor Dostoevsky (1821-1881), is one who interweaves his narration with the languages of his protagonists, producing a polyphonic or multivoiced text. Bakhtin contrasted this to other literary forms such as lyrical poetry, which he presented as "monologic," or tending toward a single, authoritative voice. By "dialogic" Bakhtin did not refer only to actual instances of dialogue in the novel, but to a quality of the word itself, which according to him is "entangled, shot through with shared thoughts, points of view, alien value judgments and accents."[4] Slavic literary scholar Michael Holquist explains that for Bakhtin "a dialogue is composed of an utterance, a reply, and a relation between the two. It is the relation that is most important of the three, for without it the other two would have no meaning."[5] This relation of an utterance and its reply is what situates language and its individual users in a broader social field. The language that we use does not belong to us as individuals, but comes to our tongues already flavored with the tastes ascribed to it by previous users. As such, according to Bakhtin:

> The word in language is half someone else's. It becomes "one's own" only when the speaker populates it with his own intention, his own accent, when he appropriates the word, adapting it to his own semantic and expressive intention.[6]

Hence, for Bakhtin, the self is inconceivable as an independent entity, but rather only comes into being as an active participant in social dialogue.

---

[3]   Of course, this didn't work out as well for Galileo as dialogue had for Plato, given that he was tried by the Inquisition, convicted of heresy, and forced to spend the rest of his life under house arrest.

[4]   M. M. Bakhtin, "Discourse in the Novel," in *The Dialogic Imagination*, ed. Michael Holquist, trans. C. Emerson and M. Holquist (Austin: University of Texas Press, 1981), 276.

[5]   Michael Holquist, *Dialogism: Bakhtin and his world* (New York: Routledge, 1990), 38.

[6]   Bakhtin, "Discourse in the Novel," 293.

Bakhtin's writings on the dialogic nature of language demonstrate considerable influence from another prominent twentieth-century thinker, the Austrian-born Israeli philosopher Martin Buber (1878-1965). In his most influential work *I and Thou* (1923), Buber contrasts the direct, mutual, present, open, and dialogical relationship between oneself and another, the "I and Thou," with the indirect, nonmutual, instrumental, and monological relationship between "I and It," or subject and object. For Buber, human life finds its meaningfulness in relation to others; we understand ourselves "in the making present of another self and in the knowledge that one is made present in his own self by the other."[7] Dialogue is crucial to the encounter between "I" and "Thou," but not all that passes for dialogue is genuine dialogue. In his 1929 essay on "Dialogue" Buber distinguishes between three kinds of dialogue: the first is "genuine dialogue" in which "each of the participants really has in mind the other or others in their present and particular being and turns to them with the intention of establishing a living mutual relation between himself and them." The second is "technical dialogue," a feature of "modern existence" according to Buber that is "prompted solely by the need of objective understanding." The third type of dialogue is monologue disguised as dialogue. There are many varieties of this specter of dialogue—debate intended to strike another sharply without, in Buber's words, "the men that are spoken to being regarded in any way present as persons;" or conversations "characterized by the need neither to communicate something, nor to learn something, nor to influence someone, nor to come into connection with someone, but solely by the desire to have one's own self-reliance confirmed…"[8] Dialogue for Buber isn't just an open-hearted conversation between two people; by dialogue he refers to a broader relationality between persons and phenomena in the world, extending the "Thou" of the "I and Thou" relationship beyond the human. My favorite quotation from Buber expresses this beautifully:

> To all unprejudiced reflection it is clear that all *art* is from its origin essentially of the nature of dialogue. All music calls to an ear not the musician's own, all sculpture to an eye not the sculptor's, architecture in addition calls to the step as it walks in the building.[9]

---

[7]   Martin Buber, *The Knowledge of Man: A Philosophy of the Interhuman* (New York: Harper & Row, 1965), 71.

[8]   Martin Buber, "Dialogue," in *Between Man and Man*, trans. Ronald Gregor Smith (Boston: Beacon Press, 1955), 19-20.

[9]   Buber, "Dialogue," 25.

In the 21st century, dialogue appears pervasively as a panacea for the ills of the world. Some of these instances are quite profound. For example, the Pakistani activist Malala Yousafzai has said: "The best way to solve problems and to fight against war is through dialogue."[10] The context for these words is finding a peaceful resolution to conflicts with the Taliban, spoken in 2013 during her first major interview since she was attacked for championing girls' rights to education in Pakistan.

In a considerably less profound vein, dialogue is also popular corporate-speak, at least in the United States now.[11] Many people seem to be making a lot of money by positioning themselves as experts in training corporate managers and employees in effective dialogue techniques, therefore operationalizing dialogue as a tool for business management.[12] And in this era of the corporatization of mindfulness, we should not be surprised to find Buddhist-derived mindfulness practices for sale along with dialogue.[13]

2. Dialogue in Tibetan and in the writings of Sera Khandro

Moving on to thinking about the Tibetan cultural world, dialogue has roots as old as those in Europe not only as a textual genre but also as a literary device and as a feature of oral language arts. In the early

---

[10] Palash Ghosh, "Mala Yousafzai, Likely Nobel Peace Prize Winner, Wants Pakistan to Talk Peace With Taliban Militants who Shot Her," *International Business Times*, Oct. 7, 2013, accessed Sept. 24, 2018, https://www.ibtimes.com/malala-yousafzai-likely-nobel-peace-prize-winner-wants-pakistan-talk-peace-taliban-militants-who

[11] For a few examples of this trend, see Daniel Yankelovich, *The Magic of Dialogue: Transforming Conflict into Cooperation* (New York: Simon & Shuster, 1999) and William Isaacs, *Dialogue and the Art of Thinking Together: a Pioneering Approach to Communicating in Business and in Life* (New York: Currency, 1999).

[12] For one of many examples, see the website of Dialogos, a management consulting and leadership development firm, that describes its principle as follows: "Our principals originated many of the central techniques commonly found in successful business and consulting practices, including organizational learning, dialogue, and dialogic process consultation." (https://dialogos.com/about/our-heritage/, accessed Sept. 24, 2018.

[13] An example is the consulting company The Art of Dialogue: Mindfulness at Work (http://theartofdialogue.com), whose mission is "Bringing the wisdom of mindfulness together with the power of leadership in service of personal and organizational transformation." For insightful analysis of the corporatization of mindfulness, see Ron Purser and David Loy, "Beyond McMindfulness," accessed Sept. 26, 2018, https://www.huffingtonpost.com/ron-purser/beyond-mcmindful ness_b_351 9289.html, and Peter Doran, "McMindfulness: Buddhism as sold to you by neoliberals," accessed Sept. 26, 2018, https://theconversation.com/ mcmindfulness-buddhism-as-sold-to-you-by-neoliberals-88338.

Indian Buddhist world as in classical Greece, dialogue was an important literary genre and oral technique for philosophical analysis. This is evident in the dialogic form of Buddhist sūtras; the Buddha's wisdom is not abstracted but rather spoken to another in a particular time and place. In Tibet the dialogic nature of philosophical inquiry is clearly demonstrated in the form of debate found most often in Geluk (Dge lugs) monasteries. Beyond philosophy, dialogue is a Tibetan literary genre in the form of the large body of Tibetan religious works categorized as *dris lan* (replies to questions), alternatively called *zhus lan*.[14] And, of course dialogue is not only a Tibetan textual category, but also has rich oral resonances in Tibetan ranging from various types of call and response songs to comedy.

Fig. 1 Sera Khandro statue on shrine at Getsé Tralek Monastery (Dge rtse bkra legs)
in Kandzé (Dkar mdzes) Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture, Photograph by Sarah Jacoby, 2007.

---

[14]   *Dris lan* as a genre remains understudied in comparison to other Tibetan genres of writing; this has been noted by Jim Rheingans, "Introduction. Typologies in Tibetan Literature: Genre or Text Type? Reflections on Previous Approaches and Future Perspectives," in *Tibetan Literary Genres, Texts, and Text Types: From Genre Classification to Transformation* (Leiden: Brill, 2015), 3.

Surely there are many other oral and written Tibetan dialogical genres beyond those I've just mentioned, but now I would like to say more about dialogue in a Tibetan autobiography, that of the early twentieth-century Tibetan visionary Sera Khandro (1892-1940).[15] Out of all the features that render Sera Khandro's writing exceptional, the quality I find most compelling is its dialogic nature, or to use another of Bakhtin's terms, the polyphonic nature of her writing. Bakhtin describes polyphonic prose as that in which "the 'depicting' authorial language now lies on the same plane as the 'depicted' language of the hero, and may enter into dialogic relations and hybrid combinations with it."[16] In other words, multiple speakers hold court, at times talking louder than the narrator's own voice, serving not as mimes for her singular authorial intentions but actively intercepting the narrative flow, pushing and pulling the story of her life in their own directions. Sera Khandro's autobiography is polyphonic in the sense that it is comprised of many different voices ranging from bodhisattvas, ḍākinīs, local deities, demonic forces, animals, religious teachers, relatives, and neighbors. These voices are not entirely separate from Sera Khandro, who after all is inciting them to speak as the author of her text, nor are they identical to her—for as Bakhtin wrote, language "lies on the borderline between oneself and the other."[17] But of course we don't have to invoke Bakhtin to think about the ways in which Sera Khandro frames a thoroughly intersubjective account of herself, in particular one that is shot through with invectives and succor from

[15] By Sera Khandro's autobiography, I am referring in this essay to the long autobiography she completed circa 1934. Titled *Dbus mo bde ba'i rdo rje'i rnam par thar pa nges 'byung 'dren pa'i shing rta skal ldan dad pa'i mchod sdong*, this 400-plus folio work remained in unpublished manuscript form until it was first published by the same title in 2009. All quotations in this essay are drawn from this edition. It is noteworthy that Sera Khandro's long autobiography is experiencing a renaissance of popular interest in Tibet today. Since its initial 2009 publication in Tibetan, it has been published twice more in collections of Tibetan-language women's writings, including Si khron bod yig dpe rnying bsdu sgrig khang (eds), *Gangs can skyes ma'i dpe tshogs* (Chengdu: Si khron mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 2015) vol. 9, and again in the new 53-volume compilation of Buddhist women's writings published by nuns from Larung Gar, Bla rung ārya tāre'i dpe tshogs rtsom sgrig khang (eds), *Mkha' 'gro'i chos mdzod chen mo* (Lhasa: Bod ljongs bod yig dpe rnying dpe skrun khang, 2017), vol. 31. I am currently completing a full English translation of Sera Khandro's long autobiography. For a translation of her much shorter verse autobiography, see Sarah Jacoby, "The Excellent Path of Devotion: An Annotated Translation of Sera Khandro's Short Autobiography," in *Himalayan Passages: Tibetan and Newar Studies in Honor of Hubert Decleer*, eds. Benjamin Bogin and Andrew Quintman (Boston: Wisdom, 2014).

[16] M. M. Bakhtin, "Epic and Novel," in *The Dialogic Imagination*, ed. Michael Holquist, trans. C. Emerson and M. Holquist (Austin: University of Texas Press, 1981), 27-8.

[17] Bakhtin, "Discourse in the Novel," 293.

ḍākinīs, for she draws this from her own tradition as a Tibetan Buddhist Treasure revealer (*gter ston*).

From the title of my book, *Love and Liberation*, one might have the idea that Sera Khandro's life was full of love and spiritual liberation, a happy story all around.[18] This is reinforced by the book colors chosen by the publisher for the first hard cover printing (without consulting the author)—under the purple, blue, and pink dust jacket the book cover is pale pink with shiny purple writing on the spine—hardly the typical color palate for a scholarly book! This pastel-toned happy story is partially accurate; there is liberation in the sense that Sera Khandro narrates her life story according to the teleological progression generic to Tibetan biography, *rnam thar*, which charts a religious devotee's journey from suffering to sanctity. And there is love as well, in the shape of what I argue is an unusually prominent narrative of love between herself and her guru and consort Drimé Özer (Dri med 'od zer, 1881-1924), one of the eight sons of Dudjom Lingpa (Bdud 'joms gling pa, 1835-1904). Since I develop this argument about love in greater detail in the fifth chapter of *Love and Liberation*, I won't elaborate here. Instead today I thought we could listen to a few examples of some considerably darker dialogues through which Sera Khandro wrote the story of her life. There are many examples to choose from. Interactions with ḍākinīs permeate her visionary life—they threaten her when she avoids accomplishing her religious destiny to be a Treasure revealer, they prophesy about who should be her consort, and they encourage her about the virtues of the female body when all she can find in it is fault. Prominent male lamas take their part in these sorts of conversations as well, though at times their prognostications about who should be her consort clash with her own. Land deities have important speaking roles as well, demanding obeisance from Sera Khandro and in return granting her rights to reveal Treasures on their territory. Sera Khandro's fellow religious community members taunt her for her intensive commitment to the Dharma and joke about her developing intimacy with Drimé Özer. But to his consort Akyongza (A skyong bza'), this was no laughing matter. Dialogues between Sera Khandro and Akyongza, as well as several other female consorts with whom she competed, were fierce. Reading all this one is left with the impression that the cacophony of conversation in Sera Khandro's autobiography is as acrimonious as it is inspirational.

---

[18]   Sarah H. Jacoby, *Love and Liberation: Autobiographical Writings of the Tibetan Buddhist Visionary Sera Khandro* (New York: Columbia University Press, 2014).

The first dialogue I want to share with you occurred in 1921 when she was 29, according to her autobiography.[19] At this time, her decade-long relationship with her spouse (*tshe grogs*) Gara Gyelsé (Mgar ra rgyal sras), son of Gara Terchen Pema Dündül Wangchuk Lingpa (Mgar ra gter chen pad+ma bdud 'dul dbang phyug gling pa, 1857-1910) of Benak Monastery, Golok (Ban nag, Mgo log), was deteriorating, and she would soon leave him to go live with her guru Drimé Özer in Dartsang, Serta (Gdar tshang, Gser rta):

> When we were returning home, we arrived at a place called Rizap (Ri zab). That night, in my dream again the terrifying spontaneously born woman arrived and said,
>
> > Why are you going toward those with deteriorated commitment vows? It is as if you have mistaken brass for gold, water for wine. You cast away your destined bodhisattva as worthless. You turn away from upholding your profound Treasure. You are distracted, grasping onto *saṃsāra*. From the time you were young until now, I have given you honest advice. I have given you your paternal inheritance of profound Dharma Treasures. Although I have reared you like a mother loves her adorable child, repelling negative conditions, outer and inner obstacles, and so forth, still you are unable to be independent and you need only to be under others' power. What is the meaning of this?
>
> I explained,
>
> > It is not that I had too many thoughts and mistook who was or was not my consort. I didn't have the power to break the commands of gods and lamas, so I turned away from my own purpose and wondered if I could uphold [Gara Terchen] Dündül Wangchuk Lingpa's profound Treasures. Since I directed my intentions toward this, until now I have not accomplished my purpose. In particular, all my consorts and Dharma holders have fallen under others' sway. Because I am one with an inferior female body, I did not have a way to meet them. Now, too, I am powerless not to go [back to Gyelsé]. That is my response.
>
> She stated,

---

[19] Sera Khandro recorded her age according to the Tibetan system of tabulating age from conception, which I have modified to accord with the international convention of tabulating age from birth. Hence, when Sera Khandro writes that she was 30 in 1921, I give the age as 29.

> Thinking that since you were of bad ancestry, you needed to do all kinds of work without retribution, until now you have remained with the Gara family. From this year forward, you belong to us. The time for you to live with the Gara family is finished. Even so, if you are encouraged by a person with perverse aspirations, I don't know what will happen to your life, Dharma, and disciples. Like wind is to butter lamps, fire is to water, and iron is to rock, you need to be extremely careful.

> As she said this, I awoke from sleep. Then we went on. The encampment base of [Gyelsé's] residence had merged into the Gar [kinsmen's] circle. I told Tupzang (Thub bzang), "There aren't any good prophecies about the encampment base joining the Gar circle this year; it isn't a good omen."

> Tupzang said, "Yes, before when Gyelsé had no wealth or food, I never saw those who say they are 'the Gar kinsmen circle.' These days, when there is growing property and wealth thanks to your kindness, their identity as Gara family members is awakened and they say they need to take care of Gyelsé."

> I replied, "It is not acceptable for you to speak as if you are a young person with a child's intellect who doesn't know anything. If they hear you, they will say bad things."[20]

From this dialogue with both human and celestial interlocutors, Sera Khandro effectively communicates the difficulty of extricating herself from Gyelsé. But she does so carefully, using language in a way that resonates with what Bakhtin aptly called "the word with a sideward glance," or words that anticipate a particular response and attempt to mitigate it in advance.[21] She expresses her sense that she should be with Drimé Özer and not Gyelsé through her conversation with the *ḍākinī*, all the while voicing this viewpoint through the *ḍākinī*'s words and refuting it with her own. Through quoting her close disciple Tupzang, Sera Khandro conveys the resentment that presumably she also felt toward Gyelsé and his relatives' newfound interest in him. She skillfully claims through Tupzang's statement that she played an unacknowledged role in enlarging his stature, but then scolds him for saying this in her own voice.

All this resentment and discord eventually erupts into what becomes the climax of her life narrative: she becomes deathly ill, so

---

[20] *Dbus mo bde ba'i rdo rje'i rnam par thar pa*, 347-49.

[21] Mikhail Bakhtin, *Problems of Dostoevsky's Poetics* (Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1984), 196.

Gyelsé sends her off to live with Drimé Özer rather than have her blood on his hands because Drimé Özer was prophesied to be able to cure her. Not only does he nurture her back to health, but "the two, method and insight, actually merged as one taste," and they "entered the feast assembly of the *ḍākinī*s," where "there was an inconceivable celebration feast for completing the greatly secret quick path."[22] But I promised to elaborate on the dark side, and mutual enlightenment sounds pretty great to me, at least as Sera Khandro describes it. So, moving forward just three years later in 1924 when Sera Khandro had been living together with Drimé Özer in Dartsang, Serta, Gyelsé and his entourage returned to press a lawsuit over child custody. Since this translation is not included in *Love and Liberation*, and also since there are not many examples of such legal proceedings from early-twentieth-century Golok, I will quote this passage, also from Sera Khandro's autobiography, in full:

> Then, when I was thirty-two, the Yeru (G.yas ru) religious encampment members had a discussion and Dorla Tenzin (Rdor bla bstan 'dzin), Alo (A lo), Öchö ('Od chos), and Jikchö ('Jigs chos) came to my place. They said that if we, mother and children, went to live at the Yeru religious encampment it would be a way to end the dispute with the Gara family.
>
> The Master [Drimé Özer] considered their mutual commitment vows and said, "It is okay if she does this for a while."
>
> Gara [Gyelsé] replied to him, "It would displease me if she does this. This needs to be adjudicated by both the religious court of Lama Pelyul and the legal court of Akyong Kangen."[23]
>
> It was done this way. After the proceedings, I was found to be not guilty from both viewpoints,[24] so I was to give my share[25] of twelve

---

[22] *Dbus mo bde ba'i rdo rje'i rnam par thar pa*, 358.

[23] *Dbus mo bde ba'i rdo rje'i rnam par thar pa*, 389: "*Bla ma dpal yul sang gi chos sgo/ a skyong khang rgan sang gi khrims sgo gnyis la bzhag dgos zer.*"

[24] "Both viewpoints" (*lugs gnyis*) are the religious viewpoint (*chos lugs*) and the secular or worldly viewpoint (*'jigs rten pa'i lugs*). In this context, "both viewpoints" refers to the proceedings of the religious court (*chos sgo*) and legal court (*khrims sgo*), respectively.

[25] There are two types of marital wealth referred to by this term "share" (*skal*) in Golok nomadic contexts: dowry (*bag skal*) and bridewealth (*mag skal*). See Lobsang Gelek and Hai Miao, "Marital payments: The case of Tibetan nomads," *Chinese Sociology & Anthropology* 34, no. 4 (2002): 84-95.

dotsé.[26] Also, even though my little son was not Gara's, for him to temporarily be considered his, the settlement (*gzu 'phang*) called for fourteen *dotsé*.

At that time I said, "I won't accept a false settlement like this."

Even so, the Master didn't give me permission and there was nothing I could do. His disciples, mainly Sotrül,[27] agreed to support me in accordance with their means with provisions such as horses and livestock and so forth, and with that the lawsuit was settled (*gyod 'grigs*).[28]

Through dialogues and narration such as this, Sera Khandro's story of love and liberation is considerably less rosy, as powerful men in her community decided her fate and that of her son, Gyurmé Dorjé ('Gyur med rdo rje), then only five years old.[29] Tragically, the young boy succumbed to illness and died shortly after this, followed after a few days by Drimé Özer himself.

Passages like these are fascinating for the data they provide about life on the eastern Tibetan grasslands in early twentieth-century Tibet, in some cases providing information unavailable elsewhere about social customs, Tibetan dialects, famous personages, trade relations, political organization, religious life, and in this case divorce and child custody proceedings. But even more than what these passages of Sera Khandro's writing convey about Tibetan history and culture, they communicate something about what it means to be human—they are poignant, infused with emotion, and mired in the complexities, confusions, and sorrows of ordinary life.

This brings me to my final point about the dialogic nature of Sera Khandro's writing. If meaning is generated through the relation of an utterance and its reply, or in Bakhtin's terms if all rhetorical forms "are oriented toward the listener and his answer,"[30] then the dialogic nature of Sera Khandro's writing does not just come into being through the interactions she choreographs between the many speak-

---

26   One dotsé (*rdo tshad*) of silver is a Tibetan measure equal to fifty sang (*srang*) of silver according to the *Bod rgya tshig mdzod chen mo* vol. 2, ed. Krang dbyi sun (Beijing: The Nationalities Publishing House, 1993), 1445.

27   Sotrül is Bsod sprul sna tshogs rang grol (1869-1935), one of Drimé Özer's heart disciples. He was a member of the ruling Washül (Wa shul) family in Serta, eastern Tibet, as well as an incarnate lama at Sera Tekchen Chönkhor Ling (Se ra theg chen chos 'khor gling) Monastery in Serta.

28   *Dbus mo bde ba'i rdo rje'i rnam par thar pa*, 389-390.

29   Gyelsé and Sera Khandro also had a daughter Yangchen Drönma (Dbyangs can sgron ma, b. 1913) who would have been eleven years old at this time, but she is not mentioned in this lawsuit.

30   Bakhtin, "Discourse in the Novel," 280.

ing subjects in her narrative; it comes to life in relation to the reader. Reading is an active process of meaning making; we are not neutral word processors or invisible witnesses listening to the dialogues Sera Khandro unfolds. Like Buber's assertion that "music calls to an ear not the musician's own," or "sculpture to an eye not the sculptor's,"[31] literature calls to its readers and draws us into dialogue with it. Listening carefully to Sera Khandro's words involves us in an intersubjective relation; her writings sound inside our heads and are made audible by our voices, pushing them forward in time to be heard by new generations. In Bakhtin's words:

> The contexts of dialogue are without limit. They extend into the deepest past and the most distant future. Even meanings born in dialogues of the remotest past will never be finally grasped once and for all, for they will always be renewed in later dialogue.[32]

To transpose this into terms closer to Sera Khandro's worldview, the auspicious connections (*rten 'brel*) that came together (or didn't) to make things possible (or not) within the bookends of Sera Khandro's auto/biographical volumes are not contained there; they reach out to us too. It is then our call to pay greater or lesser attention, understand with greater or lesser skill, and choose how to respond.

3. The art of dialogue at the International Association of Tibetan Studies Meeting

Now that we've carried the theme of dialogue toward ourselves as listeners and speakers, I'd like to turn our attention to thinking about what we are doing here at the International Association of Tibetan Studies Meeting. I want to raise a series of questions about dialogue both how it relates to what we do within our international community of Tibetan Studies scholars and outside of it.[33]

---

[31] Buber, "Dialogue," 25.
[32] Bakhtin, *Estetika*, p. 373, as quoted in Holquist, *Dialogism: Bakhtin and his World*, 39.
[33] Many thanks to Karma Ngodup, lecturer at the University of Chicago's South Asian Languages and Civilizations Department, for translating these questions into Tibetan.

རྒྱལ་སྤྱིའི་བོད་རིག་པའི་མཐུན་ཚོགས་ནང་བགྲོ་གླེང་།
a. Dialogue within the IATS community

༡ ང་ཚོས་ཚོགས་འདུ་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ནང་ཕན་ཚུན་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད་པ་དང་། དེ་ཡང་མཝས་དབང་སྐུ་ཞབས་སྦུ་བེར་ལགས་ཀྱིས་གསུངས་པ་ལྟར་ "རྒྱུང་བཤད་བགྲོ་གླེང་གི་རྣམ་པ་ལྟ་བུའམ"་ཡང་ན་ང་ཚོ་སོ་སོའི་ཡུལ་སྐད་དང་། དེ་བཞིན་ཉམས་ཞིབ་ཀྱི་ཐབས་ལམ། ཡང་ན་སྤྱི་ཚོགས་དང་སྲིད་དོན་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཀྱི་འགྲེལ་བརྗོད་མི་འད་ནའང་ང་ཚོ་འདིར་དངོས་སུ་བགྲོ་གླེང་ཕྱུག་པོ་གནང་རྒྱུའི་ཆེད་སྙན་འཛོམས་གནང་གི་ཡོད་དམ།

1. Do we come to meetings like this to talk at each other, to engage in what Buber describes as "monologue disguised as dialogue," or to genuinely dialogue with each other though we may differ in terms of native language, research methodology, or interpretation of socio-political histories?

༢ སྤྱིར་ "རྒྱུང་བཤད་བགྲོ་གླེང་གི་རྣམ་པ་ལྟ་བུ"་ནས་དངོས་སུ་བགྲོ་གླེང་ཕྱུག་པོ་ཡོང་ཆེད་ཤུགས་རྐྱེན་ག་འད་ཞིག་སྤྲད་དགོས་སམ།

2. What would it take to push the typical "monologue disguised as dialogue" into genuine dialogue?

འདི་ལས་ཁྲོད་པའི་དངོས་སུ་དྲི་བ་འགའ་ཞིག་ཞུ་རྒྱུར།

To present a few more concrete questions about this,

༣ ང་ཚོས་རྒྱལ་སྤྱིའི་བོད་རིག་པའི་གྲོས་ཚོགས་འདི་ལྟ་བུའི་ནང་བརྗོད་གཞི་གཞན་གྱི་གཏམ་བཤད་ནས་གཡོལ་ཐབས། འཛིན་གླེང་ནང་གི་མི་གཞན་རྣམས་ང་ཚོས་གང་བྱས་པ་བཞིན་བྱེད་མཁན་དང་སྟབས་ཏུ་བཀའ་མོལ་གནང་རྒྱུའི་ཆེད་ཡང་ཡང་འདུ་འཛོམས་གནང་གི་ཡོད་དམ།

3. How often do we attend a meeting like IATS in order to talk with the few other people in the world who do exactly what we do, skipping sessions on other topics?

༤ ང་ཚོ་དང་སྔོན་ནས་ངོ་ཤེས་ཚོགས་བཅར་བ་དང་ལྷན་དུ་བགྲོ་གླེང་ལ་ཕེབས་ཀྱི་ཡོད་དམ། ཡང་ན། ཚོགས་འདུ་འདི་རིགས་དང་གཞན་སོགས་སྐབས་གང་དུའང་མཇལ་འཕྲད་ཀྱི་གོ་སྐབས་མེད་པའི་མི་དང་ལྷན་དུ་བར�སེ་ཚུལ་བརྗེ་ལེན་གནང་གི་ཡོད་དམ། (འདི་འད་ཞིག་ཡོང་ཆེད་འཛམ་གླེང་རྒྱལ་ཁབ་གང་སར་ནས་ཕེབས་འོས་པའི་དགེ་མཚན་ཞིག་རེད།)

4. Do we come to dialogue with the people we already know, or exchange with people we would never have a chance to meet outside of these meetings (*that is what makes it worth flying across the world to do this*)?

༥ སྔན་ཆོགས་གང་དུ་རང་ཉིད་ལ་གསུང་སྐད་ཀྱི་ཐད་ནས་གོ་བདེ་པོ་མེད་པ་སྟེ་དོ་སྣང་ཆེས་ཆེར་སྤྱོང་དགོས་པ་དང་། དོན་ཚིགས་པར་དཀའ་ཆོགས་ཡོད་པའི་རིགས་ཀྱི་ཚོགས་འདུའི་གཏམ་བཤད་ནས་ཇི་ཙམ་ཡང་ནས་ཡང་དུ་གཡོལ་ཐབས་གང་ཐུབ་གནང་གི་ཡོད་དམ། (འདིར་ཆོགས་བཅར་བ་ཁ་ཤས་གང་དུས་ཡིན་ཡང་འདི་གནང་དགོས། ཡིན་ནའི་ང་ཚོ་ལྷག་མ་རྣམས་ཀྱང་···)

5. How often do we avoid attending conference talks that are not in languages in which we are most comfortable, requiring us to listen attentively and struggle to comprehend? (*some of you have to do this all the time, but the rest of us should also…*)

༦ ཡོ་རབ་ཀྱི་ཡུལ་སྐད་མིན་པའི་མཁས་པ་སྟེ་དང་། ཡང་སྒོས་བོད་ནས་ཕེབས་པའི་མཁས་པ་རྣམས་ལ་དབྱིན་སྐད་ཐོག་ནས་ཆོགས་འདུའི་འགྲེལ་བརྗོད་རྣམས་བདེ་བླག་ཏུ་ཐོག་ཐུབ་པ་ཞིག་ཇི་ལྟར་བཟོ་དགོས་སམ།

6. How do we make our English-language conference presentations accessible to scholars who are not native speakers of European languages, and in particular to scholars coming from Tibet?

༧ ང་ཆོས་ཆོགས་འདུ་འདི་རིགས་ནས་རྒྱལ་མཚམས་རིས་མེད་དང་། སྲིད་དོན་དབྱེ་འབྱེད། དེ་བཞིན་སྐད་ཡིག་གི་འགོག་རྐྱེན་བཅས་ལས་ཐར་པའི་ཟུང་འབྲེལ་ཉམས་ཞིབ་ཀྱི་གོ་སྐབས་ཀྱི་གནས་ཚད་ཇི་ཙམ་བསྐྱེན་ཐུབ་བམ།

7. To what degree do we make use of meetings such as this to seek out opportunities for collaborative research across national borders, political divides, or language barriers?

༨ འདི་དང་གནད་དོན་གལ་ཆེ་ཞིག་ལ་ང་ཆོས་རྒྱ་མཆན་ཕྱུན་པ་དང་། བདེ་འཇགས་ཀྱི་སྒོ་ནས་བོད་ཀྱི་རིག་གནས་ཐོག་བགྲོ་སྟེང་གནང་ཐབས་མེད་པའམ། ཡང་ན་བརྗོད་བྱ་གང་གི་ཐོག་ང་ཚོའི་འཇགས་དང་བགྲོ་སྟེང་གནང་མི་ཐུབ་པ་བཅས་བོད་རིག་པ་ནང་གི་འབོད་སྐྲ་དེ་དག་གི་སྟེང་ལ་གཞན་ནས་དོ་སྣང་སྟེབས་ཕྱིར་ང་ཆོས་ཐབས་ལམ་གང་དང་གང་བསྟེན་དགོས་སམ།

8. And importantly, in what ways should we take note of the voices within Tibetan studies with whom we cannot reasonably or safely dialogue, and the topics about which we cannot safely dialogue?

རྒྱལ་སྤྱིའི་བོད་རིག་པའི་མཐུན་ཚོགས་ནས་ཕྱིའི་སྤྱི་ཚོགས་གཞན་དང་བགྲོ་སྟེང་སྐབས་གལ་ཆེའི་དྲི་བ་
མང་དག་ཞིག་སྟེང་ཡོད་པ་གཞུས་གསལ།

b. Dialogue with others outside of the Tibetan Studies scholarly community raises a number of other important questions

༡ དུས་རབས་འདིའི་ནང་ང་ཚོའི་རོགས་པ་འགའ་ཞིག་དབྱིན་སྐད་ནང་"དགོས་མེད་བཟོ་བ་"དང་
(ཨ་རིའི་མི་དེར་ཐད་ཀར་ལས་ཀ་ནས་ཕྱིར་འབུད་བྱས་པ་ཟེར་ཡོང་།) ང་ཚོས་འདོད་བློ་ཁེངས་པའི་
སློ་ནས་བོད་རིག་པའི་སྦྱི་རོལ་དུ་ཡོད་པའི་ཤེས་ཡོན་གྱི་སྦྱི་ཚན་གཞན་དང་། དེ་བཞིན་རྒྱ་ཆེའི་མང་
ཚོགས་ལ་བོད་རིག་པའི་ཤེས་ཡོན་གལ་ཆེ་པོ་ཡིན་པའི་སློར་ནན་བཤད་ཇི་ལྟར་གནང་དགོས་སམ།

1. In this era when some of our colleagues are "being made redundant" to use British English (Americans are more direct and call it getting fired), how do we convincingly present the importance of Tibetan Studies scholarship for those outside our field, both within other academic disciplines and in public discourse more broadly?

ཀ འགའ་ཞིག་གིས་ཤེས་ཡོན་སྟེ་ལུག་དང་། སྤྱི་ཚོགས་ཁྲོད། གཞན་ཡང་རྒྱལ་ཁབ་སོ་སོའི་ནང་
བོད་རིག་པའི་སློར་ནན་བཤད་བྱ་རྒྱུང་ཚོའི་ལས་འགན་མ་རེད་ཅེས་བརྗོད་ཀྱི་རེད། (འདིའི་རྒྱུ་
མཚན་ནི་རང་ངོས་ནས་གསལ་པོ་ཡིན་པ་དང་། ཡང་ན་ང་ཚོའི་དཀའ་ངལ་མ་རེད།) ཡིན་ཏེ་ང་
ཚོའི་ལས་རོགས་རྣམས་ལས་ཀ་ཕྱིར་པའི་སྐབས་ང་ཚོ་ཚང་མས་བོད་རིག་པ་དང་དེ་འབྲེལ་ཤེས་
རིག་གི་རྒྱ་ཁྱོན་དོན་སྙིང་ལྡན་བར་ཚོན་མས་དོན་དང་ཕྱན་པའི་བགྲོ་སྟེང་གནང་དགོས་པ་ངས་
རེ་བསྐུལ་ཞུ་རྒྱུ་ཡིན།

      a. Some would say that it is not our responsibility to convince others in the academies and public spheres of our respective countries of the relevance of Tibetan Studies, (because this is either self-evident or not our problem), but as our colleagues continue to face "redundancy" I would suggest that it is necessary for all of us to engage in productive dialogue about Tibetan Studies with others outside of our field and outside of academia.

༢ ང་ཚོས་བསམ་བློའི་ནང་འདི་བཟུང་བའི་སློ་ནས་བོད་རིག་པའི་སློབ་གཉེར་བ་མིན་པའི་མཁས་པ་
རྣམས་ལ་སློབ་གཉེར་གྱི་མཐུན་རྐྱེན་ཚོ་རིག་རྒྱ་ཚ་སོགས་ཇི་ཙམ་བསྐྱན་དགོས་སམ། (ཡིག་སྒྱུར་ལམ་
ལུགས་ལ་སོགས་པ་)

2. With this in mind, to what degree do we make our scholarship accessible to non-Tibetan Studies scholars (transliteration systems, etc.)?

༣ ང་ཚོས་དེ་ལྟར་བྱས་ཏེ་མི་རིགས་དང་སྤྱི་ཚོགས་ཚན་རིག་གི་ནང་བོད་ཀྱི་སྐོར་རྒྱ་ཁྱབ་ཆེ་བའི་ཐོག་མཁས་པའི་རྣམ་དཔྱོད་བརྗེ་ལེན་གནང་ཐུབ་བམ། དཔེར་ན་ཨུ་རུ་སུའི་ཚོམ་རིག་སྒྲགས་ཅན་གྱི་རྣམ་གཞག་བོད་རིག་པའི་མཁས་པས་ལུང་འདྲེན་གནང་བ་ཙམ་བྱ། དེ་བཞིན་ཨུ་རུ་སུའི་ཚོམ་རིག་སྒྲགས་ཅན་གྱིས་བོད་རིག་པའི་མཁས་པའི་གཏམ་ལུང་འདྲེན་གནང་བ་ལྟ་བུ།

3. How can we foster broader intellectual exchange about Tibet across the humanities and social sciences such that it is not only Tibetologists who cite Russian literary theorists, for example, but Russian literary theorists who cite Tibetologists?

༤ འགྲེལ་བརྗོད་གཞན་ཞིག་ནས་ཞུ་ན། ང་ཚོས་བོད་ཀྱི་ཐུན་མོང་མ་ཡིན་པའི་དཔལ་ཡོན་ལ་ཐུན་མོང་གིས་དོ་སྣང་ཡོད་པའི་ཀློག་པ་པོ་ཚམ་མ་ཟད། བོད་ཀྱི་གཞུང་ཆེན་ཚོམ་རིག་དང་། སྒྱུ་རྩལ། དེ་བཞིན་ཚན་རིག་བཅས་ལ་དོ་སྣང་ཡོད་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་ཆེད་དུ་འང་དཔྱད་ཚོམ་ཚད་ཕུན་ཇི་ལྟར་འབྲི་ཐུབ་བམ།

4. In other words, how can we best write for an audience of people not only defined by a mutual interest in Tibet as a unique civilization, but for an audience interested in great literature, arts, and sciences that happen to be Tibetan?

༥ མཐའ་དོན་དུ། སྒོམ་སྒྲུབ་ཚམས་ལེན་ནས་གཏེར་ཁ་བསྐྲུགས་འདོན་བར་བོད་དོན་དང་འབྲེལ་བའི་གནད་དོན་ཐོག་ལ་རྒྱ་ཆེའི་མང་ཚོགས་དང་བགྲོ་གླེང་གི་གནས་ཚད་ཇི་ཙམ་དང་རྣམ་པ་གང་གི་ཐོག་ནས་གནང་དགོས་སམ།

5. And finally, to what degree and in what forums do we dialogue with the broader public about issues relating to Tibet, ranging from meditation to mining?

དེ་འདྲ་སོང་ཚང་ངས་ད་ལན་དྲི་བ་མང་པོ་ཞིག་བཀོད་ཀྱང་ལན་འདེབས་ཤུང་ཤས་མ་གཏོགས་བྱུང་མ་སོང་། དེ་རིང་ཚོགས་འདུ་འདི་དང་མ་འོངས་པར་དྲི་བ་འདི་དག་དང་འདི་ལས་ལྷག་པར་ང་ཚོས་ལྷག་པོའི་སྐོ་ནས་བགྲོ་གླེང་ཨང་པོ་གནང་བའི་རེ་བ་ཞུ་རྒྱུ་ཡིན།

So I have raised lots of questions and provided far fewer answers. At this conference and those in the future, I hope we can engage in many genuine dialogues about these questions and more!

Bibliography

Bakhtin, M. M. *The Dialogic Imagination*. Edited by Michael Holquist. Translated by C. Emerson and M. Holquist. Austin: University of Texas Press, 1981.

Bakhtin, Mikhail. *Problems of Dostoevsky's Poetics*. Edited and Translated by C. Emerson. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1984.

Dbus bza' mkha' 'gro. "Dbus mo bde ba'i rdo rje'i rnam par thar ba nges 'byung 'dren pa'i shing rta skal ldan dad pa'i mchod sdong," in *Dbus bza' mkha' 'gro'i gsung 'bum*. Edited by Mgo log khul gna' rtsom bya ba'i gzhung las khang. Chengdu: Si khron mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 2009, vol. 1.

Bla rung ārya tāre'i dpe tshogs rtsom sgrig khang (eds). *Mkha' 'gro'i chos mdzod chen mo*. Lhasa: Bod ljongs bod yig dpe rnying dpe skrun khang, 2017.

Buber, Martin. "Dialogue," in *Between Man and Man*. Translated by Ronald Gregor Smith. Boston: Beacon Press, 1955.

Buber, Martin. *The Knowledge of Man: A Philosophy of the Interhuman*. New York: Harper & Row, 1965.

Doran, Peter. "McMindfulness: Buddhism as sold to you by neoliberals." Accessed Sept. 26, 2018. https://theconversation.com/mcmindfulness-buddhism-as-sold-to-you-by-neoliberals-88338.

Friedman, Maurice. "Martin Buber and Mikhail Bakhtin: The dialogue of voices and the word that is spoken." *Religion & Literature* 33, no. 3 (2001): 25-36.

Gelek, Lobsang and Hai Miao. "Marital payments: The case of Tibetan nomads." *Chinese Sociology & Anthropology* 34, no. 4 (2002): 84-95.

Ghosh, Palash. "Mala Yousafzai, Likely Nobel Peace Prize Winner, Wants Pakistan to Talk Peace With Taliban Militants who Shot Her." *International Business Times*, Oct. 7, 2013, Accessed Sept. 24, 2018. https://www.ibtimes.com/malala-yousafzai-likely-nobel-peace-prize-winner-wants-pakistan-talk-peace-taliban-militants-who

Holquist, Michael. *Dialogism: Bakhtin and his world*. New York: Routledge, 1990.

Isaacs, William. *Dialogue and the Art of Thinking Together: a Pioneering Approach to Communicating in Business and in Life*. New York: Currency, 1999.

Jacoby, Sarah H. *Love and Liberation: Autobiographical Writings of the Tibetan Buddhist Visionary Sera Khandro*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2014.

Jacoby, Sarah H. "The Excellent Path of Devotion: An Annotated Translation of Sera Khandro's Short Autobiography," in *Himalayan Passages: Tibetan and Newar Studies in Honor of Hubert Decleer*, Edited by Benjamin Bogin and Andrew Quintman. Boston: Wisdom, 2014.

Nikulin, Dmitri. *On dialogue*. Lanham, MD: Lexington Books, 2005.

Purser, Ron and David Loy, "Beyond McMindfulness." Accessed Sept. 26, 2018. https://www.huffingtonpost.com/ron-purser/beyond-mcmindfulness_b_3519289.html.

Rheingans, Jim. "Introduction. Typologies in Tibetan Literature: Genre or Text Type? Reflections on Previous Approaches and Future Perspectives," in *Tibetan Literary Genres, Texts, and Text Types: From Genre Classification to Transformation*. Leiden: Brill, 2015.

Si khron bod yig dpe rnying bsdu sgrig khang (eds), *Gangs can skyes ma'i dpe tshogs*. Chengdu: Si khron mi rigs dpe skrun khang, 2015.

Yankelovich, Daniel. *The Magic of Dialogue: Transforming Conflict into Cooperation*. New York: Simon & Shuster, 1999.

❖

Pilgrimage Guide of the Tibetan Buddhist Holy Mountain Brag dkar sprel rdzong

Nakza Drolma (Zhuoma)

(Qinghai Normal University, Xining, 810008)

I. Introduction

A pilgrimage guide (*gnas yig)* is a guidebook to a sacred place. It gives directions and information about specific routes of Buddhist holy sites. The guides are often written by great religious specialists like yogis and masters. The texts are usually composed for pilgrims so that they could locate the sites. There are important written descriptions about the sacred places. Pilgrimage guides are considered to be a special literature genre (e.g. Wylie 1965, Dowman 1988, Cobezón 1996). A number of scholars in the West have studied pilgrimage guides to Tibetan Buddhist holy places (e.g. Filibeck 1988, Buffetrille 1997, Huber 1997, Macdonald 1997).

Brag dkar sprel rdzong Mountain, also known as Sprel rdzong Mountain, is considered a Buddhist holy mountain (*gnas ri*). It is one of the three holy places in Qinghai; the other two are Kokonor Lake to the north and A myes rma chen Mountain to the south. These three holy places are said to be the embodiment of the three holy places: Ti se Mountain, Ma pham g.yu mtsho Lake and Tsa ri Mountain in Tibet. Thus, these three holy places in Qinghai follow the pilgrimage tradition of those in Tibet, according to which Brag dkar sprel rdzong is said to be the second Tsa ri Mountain. The degrees of blessings received in these three places are considered to be equal to those of the three holy places in Tibet. The most auspicious and benevolent year for Sprel rdzong Mountain, like Tsa ri, falls in the Year of the Monkey, according to the lunar calendar. The Year of the Monkey is known as the 'Great Pilgrimage' (*gnas 'dus*). Such auspicious years attract a large number of pilgrims to the mountain.

The object of the present research is a Tibetan text belonging to the literary genre of the *gnas yig*. It is the guide to the holy place of Brag dkar sprel rdzong Mountain, the mountain hermitage of Zhabs dkar tshogs drug rang drol(1781–1851). The author of this text is 'Bri gung dbu smyon chos kyi grags pa. The manuscript was found in Bragdgon pa stan pa rab rgyas's (1801–?) religious history book of A

mdo *Mdo smad chos 'byung,* and was completed in 1865. The current text is from *Mdo smad chos 'byung* (1982: 317-321). The dimensions of the folios are 210 mm x 285 mm. The text is versified. Except the information provided by the name of the author, there is no other indication of his background in terms of lineage and tradition. The first part of his name bears 'Bri gung, which is the name of 'Bri gung lineage of the Bka' rgyud pa School of Tibetan Buddhism. In her guidebook translation, *Two Guidebooks to Ti se and La phyi*, Filibeck writes, "the 'Bri gung pas, follow the practice of meditating in the hermitages in the mountains since Phag mo gru pa" (1110-1170) (Filibeck 1988: 7). The author also mentions 'Bri gung 'jig rten mgon po (1143-1217), the founder of 'Bri gung pa Sect. He writes in the pilgrimage guide the master's image is naturally formed at the site. It could be assumed that the author of this *gnas yig* to Brag dkar sprel rdzong Mountain had some associations with the 'Bri gung lineage in Central Tibet. In his translation work *The Life of Shabkar*, Ricard mentions the birth and death dates of the author 1597-1659 (Ricard 2001:204). According to his research, the pilgrimage guide was written in the early 17th century.

In the author's time, 'Bri gung pas still played active roles in the veneration of holy mountains. That lineage held the tradition of sending hermits to the mountains. It was a very common practice for the hermits to make their sacred journeys to various holy places across Tibetan cultural geography. Thus, it is possible the author of the pilgrimage guide to Brag dkar sprel rdzong made his journey from central Tibet to Amdo, and composed the text.

Unlike the pilgrimage guides of the three holy places Ti se, La phyi and Tsa ri, which are widely known to scholars, the pilgrimage guide to Brag dkar sprel rdzong is little known. Mathew Ricard only translated its first two verses in his introduction to Brag dkar sprel rdzong Mountain, where Zhabs dkar tshogs drug rang grol meditated before his sacred journey to Central Tibet.

II. A Brief Analysis of the Pilgrimage Guide

1. Forms and Purposes of the Text

Pilgrimage guides are a special Tibetan Buddhist literature genre. Such texts often have their own forms and purposes, particularly pilgrimage guides to holy mountains. The more detailed pilgrimage guides contain the origins of the *gnas* (places), the characteristics of the *gnas*, the process of opening the *gnas sgo* (door of a place) which leads to the pilgrimage routes for circumambulation around the holy mountains, de-

scriptions of specific pilgrimage routes, and the benefits of circumam-
bulating the *gnas*.[1] The content of the texts often reflects the author's
background and the school he follows. The purposes of the writing
transcend mere guides for the pilgrims and serve the purposes of eleva-
tion and propagation of a religious school.

The pilgrimage guide to Brag dkar sprel rdzong follows the afore-
mentioned forms. The first verses deal with the origin of the *gnas,* in
which the narrative traces to the enlightened master Padmasambhava,[2]
the Guru Rinpoche, who "comes" to the holy mountain to subdue the
local gods and spirits. Gods, *nagas*, *gnyan*, *btsan*, semi-gods and *srin po*
are common motifs in pilgrimage guides. These "non-Buddhist" gods
and spirits play major roles in local human affairs. Tibetans worship
territorial gods and beseech them for various worldly needs and wish-
es. The rituals practiced for such mountain gods belong to the *yul lha zhi
bdag* category of popular religion, which differs from the *gnas ri* type of
mountain as the former is merely concerned with worldly affairs and
remaining in the cycle of *saṃsāra*, while the latter seeks eternal libera-
tion.[3] The narration from this text shows spiritual beings as opponents
to the master Padmasambhava, who is the emanation of the white
dharma (*dkar po cho*s), Buddhism. The subjugation of local gods and
srinpo by Padmasambhava includes the mountain god Gnyan sprel
zlaba chen po, and some other adjacent territorial gods.

In terms of the characteristics of the *gnas*, the narrative points out
that Brag dkar sprel rdzong Mountain is the second Tsa ri Mountain.
Tsari is considered to be one of the three most important holy places of
'Bri gung pa, one of the twenty-four prominent Buddhist holy locations,
and the palace of 'Khor lo sdom pa'. The narrative says its blessings are
equal to that of Tsa ri Mountain. Next, the guide to Brag dkar sprel
rdzong shows that the mountain plays an important role among the
bordering regions.

Regarding the process of opening the *gnas sgo*, the text is mainly
concerned with the confrontation of the master Padmasambhava with
those outer unruly autochthonous forces and empowerment of the
place. The master subdues them through his magical power; he con-
verts the mountain god Gnyan sprel zla ba chen po into *dharma* protec-

---

[1]   See Slob dpon bso nams bzang po ,1982; D. R. Filibeck, Elena ,1988.

[2]   He is the master from Oḍḍiyāna who, along with Śāntarakṣita and King Khri
       srong lde btsan, formally established Buddhism in Tibet during the 8ᵗʰ century. In
       particular, he is renowned for his suppression and conversion of malevolent spir-
       its and hostile non-Buddhist forces, as well as for introducing Tibet many oral
       transmissions and the texts of Mahāyoga and Atiyoga. To practitioners of the
       Rnying ma School and all those who follow the practices of Mahāyoga and Ati-
       yoga, he is revered as a 'second Buddha'.

[3]   Karmay 1998:433.

tor,[4] along with other mountain gods like his consort Brang dmar ma, and the adjacent territorial god A myes rma chen. As a superior hero, this *tantric* master then bestows his blessings over the landscape by praying, hiding treasures and leaving imprints of his feet on the rocks. Finally, he takes control of the mountain, and its access is open to the Buddhist devotees for ritual practice.

The next parts of the pilgrimage guides deal with the descriptions of specific pilgrimage routes on the mountain, which are the main objective of the text. Objects on these routes include naturally formed Buddhist deities, holy icons and materials like stones, earth and water. It is believed that these objects and materials are sacred; one gets blessings when seeing or touching them.

The last verses of the text focus on the circumambulation of the holy mountain. According to the text, there are three circumambulation paths around the mountain: the outer path, known as *phyi skor*, the middle and inner circumambulation paths (respectively, *bar skor* and *nang skor*). The narrative describes the length of these paths, as well as the four directions, the four lakes, and the four corners of the mountain gods. Then the author concludes the *gnas yig* by pointing out that he dares not describe the benefits of circumambulation because he is afraid he might not be able to explain them clearly and the words he would need to use might be too complicated.

2. Types of Pilgrimage Routes

The narrative shows several types of pilgrimage routes based on the characteristics of each *gnas sgo*. One way of categorizing pilgrimage routes is determined by their origins, explained in the myth of the great tantric master Padmasambhava's empowering over the mountain, and subduing the unruly autochthonous forces. This type of *gnas sgo* is described in the first verses of the pilgrimage guide. It is the most important pilgrimage route of the holy mountain.

The other categorization of pilgrimage routes is based on one's cognitive ranking. Most people who visit the sacred mountain Brag dkar sprel rdzong as pilgrims are described as falling into two classes, which are "excellent persons" or "saints" (*skyes bu rab*), and "ordinary persons" (*skyes bu phal ba*). This classification of the pilgrims is derived from Buddhist conceptions of a person's *karma*, cause and effect. One's capability of seeing some of the special pilgrimage places is based on the merits one accumulated in both his previous lives and the present one. The *karma* ascribes a pilgrim ranking as "pure" (*dag pa*) or "impure beings" (*ma dag pa*). These two cognitive rankings determine two types

---

[4]   See Nebesky, 1975.

of pilgrimage routes. The first one includes the physical obvious pilgrimage routes that everyone is able to see and venerate. This type of pilgrimage routes includes Padmasambhava's Cave and the Holy Water. The other routes involve *tantric* visionary interpretation, which can only be envisioned by the "excellent persons" through their pure vision. The narrative shows a number of such pilgrimage routes where one can envision the presence of celestial realms, meditational deities, and other divine beings and sacred objects. For example, the text goes:

> "On the right side of that (referring to the previous pilgrimage route), on the wall of the cave, hold the torchlight above the footprint, look up from below the *maṇḍala*, [in] the marvellous Dharmadhātu Palace of Akaniṣṭha, the Five Buddha Families dwell at the centre and in the four directions. The Five Families of the Most Supreme dwell at the centre and in the intermediate directions. There are different perceptions of them……" "Then walk out and at the path of the doorway, entering the narrow *Bardo*[5] Passage on the right, will calm the fears in the intermediate state later. There are numerous entrances to holy sites here and there on the rocks. And there are many treasures at those [sites], the fortune to be able to see [them] depends on one's *karma*."

Another way of viewing the pilgrimage routes is to classify them according to the three levels of the universe. The notion of the "three levels" (*sa gsum*) traces to Buddhist *tantric* interpretations, in which Buddhist holy mountains are considered to be the abode of a high-class deity. Those mountains often have twenty-four pilgrimage routes matching the twenty-four *rtsa* of the deity's body. The twenty-four sites are divided into three sets of eight, which form a "three levels" (*sa gsum)* organization of space: upper (sky), middle (earth) and lower (underground) spaces. Each set of eight sites is respectively known as "the eight *gnas* of celestial action" (*mkha' la sbyod pa'i gnas brgyad*), "the eight *gnas* of action on earth" (*sa la sbyod pa'i gnas brgyad*), and "the eight *gnas* of action underground" (*sa 'og na sbyod pa'i gnas brgyad*).

The narrative of the pilgrimage guide to Brag dkar sprel rdzong does not clarify the eight sets. However, there are quite a number of pilgrimage routes that reflects these three levels. One is those routes of celestial realms and meditational deities belonging to the category of the eight *gnas* of celestial action. There are several pilgrimage routes that show such type of *gnas sgo*. The other type is the ones on earth including great masters and holy waters. The last type of the pilgrimage routes are the ones underground. Such examples include the routes to the *Bardo* Passage, the Lord of Death, and the Three Lower Realms. Although it

---

5   Bardo indicates an interval or intermediate period of experience between death and rebirth.

is uncertain whether every pilgrimage route matches to one of the set of eight sites, from those examples above we can see the narrative at least follows the tradition of the "three levels" in composing the text.

In conclusion, this text plays an important role in the making of that mountain into an acknowledged holy place as it explains the blessings found on that holy mountain. The text is one of the earliest written sources about that holy mountain and a central guide on pilgrimage practice. This pilgrimage guide represents unique Tibetan Buddhist literary tradition that opens for both the intellectuals and lay people. As a traditional written text, the manuscript has a significant position in local history and literary contribution.

III. Translation of the Pilgrimage with subtitles

In the following translation, I divide the verses into 51 sections and put 18 subtitles based on the completeness of their meaning.

[1. Opening of the site and taming of the *srin* spirits]

1. In this degeneration age, Guru Padmasambhava himself, will go to Lake Khri gshog rgyal mo. In the middle of the G.yer mo thang, at the shore, [he] subdue the nine vow-breaking siblings. There [he] hide many treasures of *sādhana* and Dharma, [and] opened gates to sacred places and the Dharma.
2. Then at dusk and dawn, a *srin po* with a long mane of blood, [and] a *srin mo* with nasty fangs, [and] their seven children, escaped and stayed at Sprel rdzong brag.
3. When] meditating in the cave, while the Master will remain in a state of *samādhi*, of blazing enchantment and destruction, the Rakshasis will block the top entrance of the cave with a rock. [Padmasambhava] descended from above brandishing [his] *vajra*. Even though remaining in a state of *samādhi*, on the left side of the 'Dus mo rdzong, on the upper part of the rock, appeared as if a blasting fire, there is a dimming rocky shelter, [the demon] retreated to the border. [Padmasambhava] struck with the thunderbolt too, [and] destroyed [him] like the dust of dew. There are traces of such liberation, the faces of male and female demons and so on; vivid evidence can be found today.
4. The *srin po* gave up evil wishes. Because of that reason, in the future, some people will be reborn by the *srin po*, [and] preach the Dharma and spells, immoralities harmful to the Doctrine, all kinds of unpleasant things [they] will commit,

the red-handed butchers will occupy some countries. As an antidote for controlling such incidents, the master stayed at Yang rdzong Cave, of Sprel rdzong brag dkar.

[2. Binding the mountain god under oath]

5.   In the palace of Rdo rje klo dkar, during his meditation, a being, who has a human body, and a monkey's head appeared, and said 'I am the guardian of this place'. [Padmasambhava] bound under oath the guardian of this place. Thereby, making [him] the protector of the Doctrine. [He] gave empowerment, bound [him] in an oath and gave [him] a name G.nyan sprel zla ba chen po.

[3. Hiding treasures and leaving imprints of
     Padmasambhava's feet on the rocks]

6.   Then Padmasambhava prayed and wished, that future harm will not come from the demon. [He] hid many treasures and other things. When [Padmasambhava] made the offering cake, [he] performed the dance and so on, the imprints of his feet emerged on the rocks in great number, [and he] left his footprints on the rocks in four directions.
7.   This Sprel rdzong brag dkar, where three valleys meet, was the place where [Padmasambhava] conquered the demon in the past; [therefore it is] the holiest among the border-taming regions.[6]

[4. Guide to the holy place of Rdo rje klo dkar gsal ba and other deities]

8.   In the supreme holy place of Rdo rje klo dkar gsal ba, Five Families and the seed in the manner of *avadhūtī*, *rasanā* and *lalanā*, three bodies [and] six syllables that block the door of rebirth, the self-manifested Gurusiddhi rise in relief. Inside, at the upper half, is the shrine room of the enlightened ones. When entering it, take off ornaments and wear light clothes, go inside holding a butter lamp and torch. And look above to the open space, [there one can see] Cakrasaṃvara, Guhyasamāja, Hevajra and Yamāntaka and others. And the *maṇḍalas* of the four classes of *tantras* are presented in relief.

---

[6]   Here the bordering region refers to Amdo, the area where the mountain of Brag dkar sprel rdzong is located, is the bordering region between Inner Mongolia and the north-eastern part of Tibet.

[5. Guide to the pure crystal cave]

9. Coming out from there and going to the left, there is the crystal cave of -the Pure Glory. Go in there with a lighted butter lamp and a torch. In the pure paradise of Khecara and the magnificent Cāritra, open miraculously formed divine palace, [that] naturally emerged in relief. There are four big ravines and four lakes, all self-manifested, [and] an assembly of two thousand and eight hundred divine beings in relief. At the summit, four animal-headed *ḍākiṇī* and so forth are clearly visible, the gates of lower rebirths are blocked merely by seeing them.

[6. Guide to the cave of Garuḍa and other holy places surrounding it]

10. Then come out, like before, with a butter lamp, light a torch at the end of a long cane of a wood, and go up to the third floor, there's the Garuḍa,[7] the emanation of the mind of the Enlightened One, raising [its] head and hovering in the sky, small horns are adorned with a wish-fulfilling jewel, on seeing the jewel, the sufferings of poverty will be dispelled. Wings are stretched out to the right and left, and the feet, tail feathers and so on are clearly visible. By merely seeing [them], one will recover from various, malevolent diseases caused by *nāgas* and the lord of the earth.

11. To the right side of the Garuḍa are one thousand statues of the Buddha; to [the] left is the 'Bri gung 'jig rten gsum mgon.

12. On the right side of that, on the wall of the cave, hold the torchlight above the footprint, look up from below the *maṇḍala*, [in] the marvellous Dharmadhātu Palace of Akaniṣṭha, the Five Buddha Families dwell at the centre and in the four directions. The Five Families of the Most Supreme dwell at the centre and in the intermediate directions. There are different perceptions of them.

13. On the rock face outside the cave, Padmasambhava from Oḍḍiyāna[8] resides clearly.

---

[7] A mythological bird normally depicted with an owl-like sharp beak, often holding a snake, and with large and powerful wings. In *tantric* Buddhism, the Garuḍa is associated with Vajrapāṇi and certain wrathful forms of Padmasambhava, and may symbolize the trans-mutative power which purifies certain malevolent influences.

[8] Oḍḍiyāna is the name of an ancient kingdom, probably in the remote north-west of the Indian subcontinent, where a large corpus of tantric literature is said to

14.   On the left side are eight teachings with the appearance like a box, adorned with the dharma wheel, umbrella and top. A hundred families of peaceful and wrathful supreme deities dwell clearly.
15.   To the left are ten wrathful deities and so on dwell clearly.
16.   To its left, Shri Devi dwells vividly.
17.   In the innermost corner of the cave is a *sādhana* spring of Oḍḍiyāna; drinking from and bathing in it will purify diseases, evil spirits, sins and defilements. In this cave, the doors to the three holy sites are located.

[7. Guide to the *maṇḍala* of the eighty spheres of *stag sgrol*]

18.   Next go out and reach the gate, and on the right and left. On the outer walls on the sides of the gate are the Four Great Kings. To one side, in the valley on the left, there is a cave with an entrance facing to the southeast, looking up above it, there is the *maṇḍala* of the eighty spheres of *stag sgrol*.
19.   To the right side of the door is a precious elephant. Above the entrance is the eleven-faced Avalokiteśvara, [and] Padmasambhava [in his manifestation] as the Twisted Nectar and, the venerable Acalā and others are clearly manifested. On the corner are Amitāyus,Vajravārāhī and so forth clearly manifested.
20.   At the corner of the entrance, knock on the door with a stone in a careful manner, the sound reaches all the heavenly realms; it is the same as visiting. Looking to the upper steps from the corner [of the entrance], Avalokiteśvara and Supreme Attribute are clearly visible, [and] Supreme Rāhula and others are manifested clearly [as well]. The entrances to the holy place will be opened one time.
21.   On the platform attached to the entrance, Marba, the translator, the enlightened sages and others are clearly visible.
22.   On the middle of the doorway, there is a stone, with Padmasambhava's footprint, please venerate it!

[8. Guide to the shady side of Brag dkar sprel rdzong Mountain]

23.   Then on the shady side [of the mountain] there is a cave, with the entrance facing the north; go there carrying a torchlight and butter lamp. There is the alms bowl of Guru Pad-

have been propagated in the human world for the first time. The land of Oḍḍiyāna is associated with the great *tantric* master Padmasambhava in particular (Coleman 1994: 355).

masambhava, on which self-manifested Sanskrit syllables are visible. At the beginning of the eon (*bskal ba*), the opening was [turned] up, after that, in the middle of the eon, it was lying [with the opening to the side].At the present eon of degeneration, it is turned upside down. Signs of time and the world ages and so on are visible on it.

24.   If one goes further, one can see a pond in the plain. When ascending from down there, one can see a feast and offerings bestowed by *ḍākiṇīs*. In front of this, appears like a throne of Oḍḍiyāna, illuminate it with a torch underneath, on a treasure chest, treasure letters are visible.

25.   Then walk on to the wall to the left side, there is a crystal rock with a turquoise colour, above the centre of it is the Medicine Buddha's, lapis lazuli (*vaiḍurya*) alms bowl with four sides, filled with various jewels and medicine, and gold and silver are stuffed inside the chest. It has been sealed with seven layers. One will be liberated from hunger and diseases by touching and seeing [them].

26.   On the left side above there are self-manifested [images] clearly visible in relief. There are the Eight Medicine Buddhas.The Medicine Buddha, the supreme healer of the three poisons and diseases, liberating [one] from the four hundred and four diseases.

27.   After that, go up to the summit of the cave, enter the small cave located there, in all directions self-manifested [images of] assembly of divinities dwell, those who have accumulated pure *karma* will be able to see them, while they are difficult to perceive for the ordinary ones.

28.   Then come out and on the left side, there is a cave entrance facing southeast. Bring a bright torch there. On the right side of the path, on the surface of the rock, Vajrakīla and Sixteen *phur ba* Protectors are manifested.

29.   Then when gradually going upwards, if someone familiar [with the place] observes the surface on the left, there are temples and celestial palaces, archways, porches, four pillars and so on clearly visible.

30.   In the centre of the visible wheels, there are umbrellas and victory banners, and the Sixteen Arhats are spontaneously present. The Four Great Guardian Kings stay at the gate,

31.   Along the path to the cave is the bosom of the wishing cow, for the fortunate ones milk is really available; when consumed by whomever, all desired wishes for this life time will be granted.

32.   Walking to the end, at the distance of three arm-spans, water

flows in summer and the path cannot be crossed. It is only possible to cross in autumn and winter. There are some treasures and entrances to the holy sites.

[9. Guide to the *bardo* passage]

33.   Then walk out and at the path of the doorway, entering the narrow *Bardo* Passage on the right, will calm the fears in the intermediate state later. There are numerous entrances to holy sites here and there on the rocks. And there are many treasures at those [sites], the fortune to be able to see [them] depends on one's *karma*.

[10. Guide to the cave of the Buddha Maitreya and the Eight Bodhisattvas]

34.   When arriving at the door of this sacred place in the east, there are rocky hills on either side of the entrance, resembling white silk curtains stretched and between [them]. To the right side, the sky is merely visible. There is a valley in the south that leads towards the north, go there where there is a cliff resembling a hoisted flag. There is a cave facing towards the south. Lighten the torch and go inside, there stand the Buddha Maitreya and the Eight Bodhisattvas.

[11. Guide to the site of the ladder to liberation and the Buddha of Avalokiteśvara]

35.   Then come out and go to the southern side, and if one takes the path that is merely recognisable, one will see a white rock looking like a hoisted flag in the west. To its side there is a cave facing towards the east. Lighten a butter lamp and look around, and the landscape of Sukhāvatī[9] is clearly visible. On its surface are many self-manifested [images].

36.   Come out and go along the circumambulation route to the right, [one will see] a ladder with forty-nine rungs to heaven and liberation. Every step will leave the cyclic *saṃsāra* behind.

37.   When arriving there, on the left side of the rock, "Thee, noble son, go to Sukhāvatī;" pray for Avalokiteśvara[10]'s prophecy with devotion.

---

9   This term refers to the Pure land of the Buddha Amitābha.
10   *Yama* means the lord of death.

[12. Guide to the cave of the victorious Vairocana]

38.   On the back side, between the meadow and rock entrance, there is a cave entrance, lighten the butter lamp, [one will see] Victorious Vairocana with eight bodhisattvas disciples stand.

[13. Guide to the holy site of Padmasambhava's footprints]

39.   When one returns to the path, one will see a fearsome black rock, on which, the footprint of Padmasambhava from Oḍḍiyāna is actually visible. If one goes upward from the rock, on the foot of the rock, which upper part resembles a blazing fire, there are destroyed faces of male and female *yamas*[11], and traces of eliminated demons and so forth.

[14. Guide to the cave of the three lower realms]

40.   There are three caves at the end of the circumambulation path, entering there one will be liberated from [rebirth in] the three lower realms.

[15. Guide to the meditation caves]

41.   And then if one climbs to the upper peak, there are numerous extraordinary places for meditation. Padmasambhava resides in the middle of the cave. There are remnants of an altar, a drum and other things.

42.   [In the] red rock, the precious crystal palace, the Five Families, Three Families and Supreme Hundred Families reside. In the self-appeared immense palace, seven hundred and twenty divinities of the eight *sādhana* teachings reside.

43.   In other caves the divine abodes of the Five Families are present, countless manifestations of the assembly of deities reside [there], and the eight manifestations of the Guru [Padmasambhava] reside [there] clearly.

44.   Outside there is the essence of the Lords of the Three Families and so on, [and] the self-manifested syllables and so on clearly show. In the complete *maṇḍala* of the eight *sādhana* teachings, [and] there are many treasure and holy places ful-

ly encircled by chests. If those familiar with it look, they can take [from the chests]. The white and red *bodhicitta*, the so-called *sindhurā*, [can be taken] as one's wishes and needs. The story can be found in the explanation of "The Explanatory *Tantra*".

[16. Guide to routes of the Lord of Death and hells]

45.   Between the north and the west is the ladder to liberation. If one could walk on three paths, one's three obscurations would be removed. Right below are the Lord of Death and, hot and cold hells [with] the roaring sounds of demons. [These can be] clearly found if an intelligent person examines.

[17. Guide to the Holy Waters]

46.   In the time of going on the pass should not change the departure. Beneath the mountain corner at the left side of the entrance to the holy site, beneficial medicinal springs with six tastes flow. Either drinking or bathing [there] will give seventeen good qualities, without doubts [they] will wash away diseases and evil spirits.

[18. Guide to the corner of Brag dkar sprel rdzong]

47.   Then at the corner of the mountain [there are] handprints and so on, and self-manifested syllables can be seen.
48.   To the right there is [a mountain] called Chu bzang brag dkar, a male mountain and the abode of heroes.
49.   In a valley is Rma chen spom ra, and, footprints are visible; [the deity] liberates human beings and livestock from epidemics.
50.   To the left lies Spel mo brag, a female mountain and the abode of heroines.
51.   In the front is Zhing skyong ral ba can, to its left is his consort Brang dmar ma. Both the Father and Mother, are Dharma and Field Protectors.

❖

References

[1] 'Bri gung dbu smyon chos kyi grag pa. 'Brag dkar sprel rdzong gi

dkar chag', in *Deb ther rgya mtsho* by 'Brag dgon dkon mchog btan pa rab rgyas, reprinted in 1982, as *Mdo smad chos 'byung*. Lanzhou: Kan su mi rigs dpe skrun khang, pp.317-321.

[2] Buffetrille, Katia (1997). 'The Great Pilgrimage of A myes rma chen: Written Traditions, Living Realities', in Mandala and Landscapes, ed. A. W. Macdonald. New Delhi: D.K. Printworld, pp. 75-132.

[3] Cobezón, José Ignacio & Roger R. Jackson, eds. (1996). *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion.

[4] Coleman, Graham, ed. (1994) *A Handbook of Tibetan Culture: a Guide to Tibetan Centres and Resources throughout the World*. Boston: Shambhala.

[5] Dowman, Keith (1988).*The Power-Places of Central Tibet: the Pilgrim's Guide*. London: Routlege& Kegan Paul.

[6] D. R. Filibeck, Elena (1988). *Two Tibetan Guidebooks to Ti se and La phyi*. Bonn: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag.

[7] Huber, Toni (1997). 'A Guide to the La-phyi Mandala: History, Landscape and Ritual in South-Western Tibet', in *Mandala and Landscapes*, ed. A. W. Macdonald. New Delhi: D.K. Printworld, pp. 233-86.

[8] Karmay Samten G. (1998) "The Cult of Mountain Deities and Its Political Significance" in *The Arrow and the Spindle Studies in History, Myths, Rituals and Beliefs in Tibet*. Kathmandu: Mandala Book Point, pp.432-450.

[9] Macdonald, A.W., ed. (1997). *Mandala and Landscapes*. Delhi: D.K. Printworld.

[10] Nebesky-Wojkowitz, René de (1975). *Oracles and Demons of Tibet: The Cult and Iconography of the Tibetan Protective Deities*. Graz: AkademischeDruck-u.Verlagsanstalt.

[11] Ricard, Mathieu (2001). *The life of Shabkar. The Autobiography of a Tibetan Yogin*. Ithaca, N.Y.: Snow Lion Publications, p.204.

[12] Slob dpon bso nams bzang po (1982). *Tsa ri gnas yig*. Library of Tibetan Works and Archives.

[13] 'Bri gung skyabs mgon che tshang rinpoche (1990). Yul nyer bzhi'i gnas mchog gangs dkar tise'i gsol 'debs byin rlabs kyi churgyun

[14] Wylie, Turrel V. (1965). 'The Tibetan tradition of geography' in *Bulletin of Tibetology*, 2/1, pp. 17-25.

❖

Material culture as proxy for language: the Himalayan evidence[*]

Maheshwar P. Joshi
(Doon Library and Research Centre,
Dehradun,Uttarakhand, India)[**]

> Words in a language are of course symbols, but material things also serve in symbolic roles. Humans, it is said, live in a forest of symbols, and to understand what makes humans tick, it is necessary to consider how those symbols work. That leads us on to a relatively new field in the study of prehistory — cognitive archaeology — that is still in early development (Renfrew 2008: 67).

1. Introduction

Studying material culture as proxy for language involves cognitive archaeology a relatively young discipline. There are several competing theories of language cognition, among which the modular and non-modular ones have gained wide currency. The modular theory posits language as a genetically endowed, biological system, i.e., the faculty of language is innate (see, Chomsky 2006). According to the non-modular theory it is behavioural therefore learned (see, Lieberman 2013: *in passim*; 2016; Bickerton 2009). There is no doubt that language is a very complex behaviour that involves the interweaving of many components. Since archaeological evidence is behavioural in nature, it can be invoked in studying language origin and evolution (see, Leroi-Gourhan 1993 [1964]; Isaac 1976).

Stone tools fashioned by our remote ancestors are the earliest surviving components of material culture; therefore, our enquiry begins with the Lower Palaeolithic. The evolutionary typology in archaeological record is defined in simplistic terms as Mode system of lithic technology (Clark 1977: 23-38, *in passim*, table 5). This process of evolution passed through four major successive transitions, namely, the Lower Palaeolithic Transition, the Lower-to-Middle Paleolithic Tran-

---

[*]   Revised and updated version of the special lecture delivered to the 24th Himalayan Languages Symposium, Department of Linguistics, University of Lucknow, June 8-10, 2018.

[**]   Dedicated to the fond memory of Dr. Corneille Jest, the Founder Director of the UPR 299, CNRS.

sition, the Middle-to-Upper Paleolithic Transition, and the Paleolithic-Mesolithic Transition (see papers in Camps and Chauhan 2009). Accordingly, Mode 1 technology represents the Lower Palaeolithic, advent of Mode 2 marks the Lower Palaeolithic Transition, of Mode 3 the Lower-to-Middle Palaeolithic Transition, of Mode 4 the Middle-to-Upper Palaeolithic Transition, and of Mode 5 the Palaeolithic-Mesolithic Transition.

Leroi-Gourhan's pioneering studies leading to formulation of the *chaîne opératoire* or operational sequences (1993 [1964]: Chs. 7-8) is a 'key theoretical and methodological concept' that can be applied universally in all applications including language cognition (see, White 1993). According to Leroi-Gourhan (1993 [1964]: 234), human operational behaviour 'involves several highly complex processes' bearing on operational sequences at two levels: Operational Memory and Mechanical Operational Sequences. There are three succeeding stages of operational sequences, 1- an automatic form of behaviour directly connected with our biological nature termed as 'automatic', 2- mechanical behaviour taking place in a state of dimmed consciousness, termed as 'mechanical', and 3- 'lucid' or 'fully conscious' behaviour (*Ibid*: 230-31).

Leroi-Gourhan (*Ibid*: 133) notes that we have to 'rely exclusively on the stone industry' to unfold 'technical evolution stretching back from *Homo sapiens* to the Australanthropians'. Showing critical importance of bipedalism and the anatomical changes that accompanied, he discusses at great length as to how in sync with these changes our remote ancestors progressively advanced in lithic technology from simple 'choppers' (Mode 1) of the 'pebble culture' to the 'microliths' (Mode 5) (*Ibid*: Chs. 3-4). Thus, his study demonstrates that 'the process of extraction of a cutting edge from a lump of flint varied in time proportionally with the ratio between the length of cutting edge obtained and the volume of flint required to obtain it', which he explains in 'figure 64' of his work (*Ibid*: 134-37). Leroi-Gourhan further shows remarkable similarity in the 'increase in brain volume and technical evolution', which, when translated into a diagram (*Ibid*: 137-38, figure 65), runs as two almost flat parallel lines up to the Acheulian (Mode 2 technology), and thereafter 'rise steeply during the Moustero-Levalloisian period' (Mode 3 technology), 'while those representing brain volume flatten out and remain flat until the present day'. Significantly, Leroi-Gourhan observes that occurrence of flattening of brain volume was 'a radical biological crisis' that 'was resolved with the disappearance of the prefrontal bar... a radical turning point in our biological evolution as a zoological species governed by the normal laws of species behavior.' He synthesises technical evolution with the capacity of language as follows:

There is probably no reason, in the case of the earliest anthropoids, to separate the level of language from that of toolmaking: Throughout history up to the present time, technical progress has gone hand in hand with progress in the development of technical language symbols. It is possible, in the abstract, to conceive of a purely gestural technical education; in practice, even completely silent instruction will actuate a reflective symbolism in both teacher and pupil. The organic link appears to be strong enough to justify crediting the Australopithecinae [authors of Mode 1 technology] and the Archanthropians [authors of Mode 2 technology] with language at a level corresponding to that of their tools...

Techniques involve both gestures and tools, sequentially organized by means of a "syntax" that imparts both fixity and flexibility to the series of operations involved. This operating syntax is suggested by the memory and comes into being as a product of the brain and the physical environment. If we pursue the parallel with language, we find a similar process taking place...

The early Palaeoanthropians [authors of Mode 3 technology] were the direct inheritors of this situation, but their possibilities became gradually extended. The exteriorization of nonconcrete symbols took place with the Neanderthalians, and technical concepts were thenceforth overtaken by concepts of which we have only manual operating evidence – burial, dyes, curious objects. This evidence, however, is sufficient to establish with certainty that thought was being applied to areas beyond that of purely vital technical motor function...

If language really sprang from the same source as technics, we are entitled to visualize language too in the form of operating sequences limited to the expression of concrete situations, at first concurrently with them and later involving the deliberate preservation and reproduction of verbal sequences going beyond immediate situations (*Ibid*: 114-16).

The above citation from Leroi-Gourhan is a prelude to his postulation of 'The Birth of Graphism' (*Ibid*: 187-216) in which he discusses at length the relationship between 'palaeolithic art' and 'verbal language':

Parallel with the extraordinary acceleration of the development of material techniques following the emergence of *Homo sapiens*, the abstract thought we find reflected in paleolithic art implies that language too had reached a similar level. Graphic or plastic figurative representation should therefore be seen as the means of expression of symbolic thinking of the myth-making type, its medium being graphic representation related to verbal language but independent from phonetic notation. Although no fossil records of late Paleolithic languages have come down to us, evidence fashioned by the hands

of humans who spoke those languages clearly suggests that their symbolizing activities – inconceivable without language – were on a level with their technical activities, which in turn are unimaginable without a verbalized intellectual supporting structure...

Although the interplay between the two poles of figurative representation – between the auditive and the visual – changed considerably with the adoption of phonetic scripts, the individual's capacity to visualize the verbal and the graphic remained intact. The present stage is characterized simultaneously by the merging together of the auditive and the visual, leading to the loss of many possibilities of individual interpretation, and by a social separation between the functions of symbol making and of image receiving (*Ibid*: 215-16).

I strongly feel that Leroi-Gourhan's monumental work anticipates nearly all subsequent developments in the field of sensory-based internal systems and material culture vis-à-vis language, for subsequent researches in language cognition seem to strengthen his postulates with new data, though his intellectual debt is barely remembered (cf. White 1993). In this connection I will cite two major contributions: that of Isaac (1976) and of Wynn (1991) that develop two opposite lines of argument.

Thus, in his pioneering persuasive attempts to trace 'archaeological indicators of the development of language capabilities', Isaac (1976) addresses this issue in two parts: I- evolutionary implication of the material culture, and II- archaeological reconstruction of the behaviour of early hominids. In the first part he builds:

on the large-scale features of the archaeological record on the assumption that hominid capacity for conceiving and executing increasingly elaborate material culture designs has been connected with rising capacity for manipulating symbols, naming, and speaking' (Isaac 1976: 276).

He works out four steps of these developments (*Ibid*: 282-83). Accordingly, the first step '(2½-1½ Million Years ago)' characterises 'simple tools', step two '(1½-.2 Million Years Ago)', advent of 'the handaxe', step three '(.2-.04 Million Years Ago)', 'Late Acheulian, Mousterian, Middle Stone Age, etc.', and the fourth step '(.04 Million Years Ago, Upwards)' is marked by tools with 'maximum level of design complexity and of differentiation... Explicit traces of representational and abstract art' and 'ritual and overt symbolism became more and more frequent'. Thus,

Step 4 material culture has long given archaeologists a feel of being organized on much more elaborate principles than Step 3, and there is still heated debate over whether the change from 3 to 4 in-

volved the spread of genes determining superior capabilities. Alternative hypotheses more recently advanced suggest the spread of cultural and/or linguistic innovations that put behavior across a crucial organizational threshold, perhaps a cognitive and communications equivalent of the agricultural revolution.

In the second part, he briefly points out certain behavioural traits, namely, 'Bipedal Locomotion; Tool-Making; Meat Eating; Gathering (?); Home Bases; and Food Sharing', and divides them into three phases beginning with Phase I marked by 'establishment of the first protohuman adaptive complex (bipedalism, transport, tool-making, food sharing).' It put selection pressure on the enhancement of communication and information exchange systems, 'which went on to mature during Phase II.' In this Phase 'a host of indicators imply a basically human grade of organization' among 'which capabilities for language were first important'. Archaeological record of Phase III assigned to between 'about 50,000 and 100,000 years ago' shows 'a quickening of the tempo of change', and by 'about 30,000-40,000 years ago, the record gives the appearance that a threshold was crossed with the emergence of much more complex and more style-ridden systems of material culture. From this same period, as we have seen, come the first surviving manifestations of art and of bodily adornment.' Isaac suggests 'that crucial developments in language may provide the best explanation of the Upper Paleolithic cultural spurt. This remains an untested, but, in my view, very plausible hypothesis' (*Ibid*: 286).

In sum, Isaac posits that material culture unfolds that from 'step 1' (the ape grade adaptive behaviour in the Lower Palaeolithic) to 'step 4' (the anatomically modern human like behaviour in the Upper Palaeolithic) human cognitive faculty shows a progressive development, and 'capabilities for language' played critical role throughout the course of this evolution (see, *Ibid*: 277-81, and Figures 1-4, showing diagrammatic representations and time-tables; compare it with figures 64-65, and pp. 134-37 of Leroi-Gourhan 1993 [1964]). Isaac's paper reinforces Leroi-Gourhan's formulation of succeeding complexity in material culture as an expression of human behavioural change due to biological cum technological evolution as noted above.

Wynn (1991) examines language issue from cognitive perspective and uses grammar as one of the important indicators to examine presence of language in the earliest stone tools represented, in chronological order, by the Oldowan and the Acheulian biface respectively. He notes that language 'employs complex domain-specific features in grammatical constructions', such is not the case with 'tool behaviour'. Thus, stone tools representing Oldowan clearly show an *ad hoc* tech-

nology aimed at obtaining a sharp-edged artefact closely tied to an immediate task, which was abandoned after its use, and possibly re-used at a later episode. However, 'notion' of a tool is implied in fashioning a biface, even if it was based on 'traditional knowledge'. Wynn accounts for this development in 'constellations of knowledge' in which 'sequence construction' is central. Though 'tool sequences are organized like strings of beads', which, superficially, may appear similar to the process of 'string-of-beads' in language acquisition, they do not follow any rules of grammar, rather they are 'learned by observation and memorization'. Independent of language, 'apprenticeship is essential to the learning of tool-use and tool-making' (*Ibid*: 193-4). In sum, compared to the Oldowan tool-use, 'making and using a biface was in this sense more cognitively complex' because its technology appears to be 'hierarchically more complex'. It was not meant for obtaining a sharp edge to address an immediate task, it exhibits 'symmetry imposed on some of these early bifaces' (*Ibid*: 203-04). In his subsequent study, Wynn (2000) discusses at length development of 'hominid-imposed symmetry' over time from two-dimensional symmetries to true congruent symmetry to three-dimensional symmetries, as noticed in stone tools, bone tools, and cave paintings dating back from the Lower Palaeolithic through the Upper Palaeolithic. Wynn contends that it 'reflects the evolution of hominid spatial perception-cognition... and developments in skill' associated with 'an aspect of the neural processing' (*Ibid*: 131). He concludes: 'It did not, however, require language' (*Ibid*: 139). Interestingly, in his 1991-paper, Wynn is non-committal about the presence of language among the authors of the Oldowan and biface tools. However, in his 2000-paper, citing his own 1991-paper, he says: 'It is clear, for example, that people learn tool use largely by observation, replication and repetition (apprenticeship), and that *language plays only a minor role*' (*Ibid*: 119, italics mine).

According to Marwick (2003), the African evidence suggests use of 'arbitrary bi-directional symbols and expression of displacement communication system' after '1.9 million years ago' when 'the first *Homo habilis* fossils appear'. This inference is drawn from gradual increase in the distance of raw material transfer from 3 to 13 kms 'during the period 1.9–1.6 million years ago', 4 to 15 kms during '1.6 to 1.2', and '15 km to 100 km' after '1.2 million years ago'. Accordingly, this accounts for human 'ability to pool information collected by individuals through face-to-face negotiation and the use of a proto-language' (*Ibid*: 71), which also facilitated human colonization outside Africa. Experimental archaeology also supports that: 'Linguistic communication plays a key role in this system of apprenticeship by

facilitating joint action and the cultural construction of identity' (see for details and further references, Stout 2010).

It is clear then that howsoever primitive, hominids were equipped with verbal communication during the Lower Palaeolithic. On the basis of 'independent studies' over the past four decades, discussed by celebrated cognitive scientist Philip Lieberman (2013; 2016), it is clear that 'the neural mechanisms implicated in speech production were present in earlier hominins', that 'the intonation of speech involves neural structures that have a deep evolutionary history (Lieberman 2013: Ch. 3, and *in passim*) 'which can be 'traced back to therapsids, mammal-like reptiles' of the Triassic, Jurassic, and early Cretaceous eras' (Lieberman2016: 138). He concludes:

> A full appraisal of the biological bases of human language remains in the distant future. However, some of the neural circuits that confer the ability to master and execute the complex motor commands that underlie speech and other aspects of behavior are becoming evident. These neural circuits involve structures that also play a part in "mental" aspects of language such as associating words with their meanings and syntax. Similar neural circuits involving the same cortical and subcortical structures are implicated in a range of "higher" cognitive acts. Though many of these neural structures are "recycled" – being present in archaic species far removed from humans, they have taken on new functions and have been modified by Natural Selection acting on genetic and epigenetic events, some occurring in the last 200,000 years or so and specific to humans (*Ibid*:142).

It draws our attention to Bickerton's studies. He suggests that social pressure triggered the episodic memory of our remote ancestors to categorise objects (predators, gender, food, etc.,) and activities (grooming, food sharing, etc.), which account for the evolution of language (Bickerton 2000). He has elaborately discussed this issue in his later study (Bickerton 2009). He explicitly says that initially humans exchanged messages in the same way as chimps by using ACS (animal communication system). In course of evolution, their biological structure and foraging needs forced them to organize socially to meet the challenges from other competing species and predators for survival. It required better information flow than the 'indexical units' of the ACSs, which are mainly manipulative, hence bound to the condition of 'the here and now'. To free humans from this limitation of 'the here and now', primarily informative rather than manipulative means of messaging was required. This was achieved by substituting 'symbolic units' of language for 'indexical units' of the ACSs, for the symbols 'can refer to things outside of the here and now. This capacity is something linguists generally refer to as "displacement"' (*Ibid*:

48-50). Initially it was a modified ACS. It enabled our ancestors to free themselves from the condition of 'the here and now', which bear on the emergence of 'protowords', followed by 'words'. It was a great leap – perhaps the greatest – in human cognition initiated by a 'Stone Age Einstein' owing to 'some particular, highly specific set of circumstances that forced words to emerge' (*Ibid*: 72; cf., Tomasello 2003). In this process human activities were concentrated primarily on survival strategies for which humans created a 'niche' within a particular geographical area leading to the birth of a protolanguage. Termed as 'niche construction theory' (Bickerton 2009: 150-53), it accounts for a series of speciations in the six-stage evolutionary model that Bickerton has suggested for the development of language (Bickerton 2009: 189).

According to Bickerton, 'the modified ACS remained, just like an ant ACS, mired in the business—a vital one, you have to admit—for which it had been originally developed' (*Ibid*: 142). Our ancestors continued to live in the protolanguage niche for a considerably long time 'at the bee/ant level or only a little beyond it' to signal warnings against predators/sudden natural calamities or give recruitment calls for exploiting bigmammal-scavenging (*Ibid*: Ch. 7-8). Then, shortly after 'the bigmammal-scavenging phase' they started producing a 'teardrop- or pear-shaped' object called Acheulian hand axe which remained unchanged for more than a million years (*Ibid*: 142-43). The other tools, 'the so-called borers and scrapers were basically variations on this tool' (*Ibid*: 213). Whatever was their function, the 'basic form' common to all was that 'they were all single, stand-alone pieces'. During this very stage they developed protolanguage to invoke group co-operation to exploit food and to secure safety against predators/natural calamities. Obviously, since in the beginning the role of language was 'fully functional', it required few words sufficient to serve the limited functions of social organization aimed at surviving strategies (*Ibid*: Ch. 8). 'If the first one or three or five protolanguage signs didn't have a substantial payoff, no one would have bothered to invent any more' (*Ibid*: 165). Bickerton holds that like the modern pidgin languages these words were combined like 'beads-on-a-string' to deliver messages (*Ibid*: Ch. 9).

The next evolutionary phase started some ninety thousand years ago with the appearance of the 'Aterian point' in North Africa. It heralds the stage of the concepts substituting for categories (*Ibid*: Ch. 10). Though the Aterian point looks like a miniature Acheulian tool, it cannot be used as a stand-alone piece, it requires hafting. It needed stone for the point, wood for the shaft, mastic (a sticky resin) to bond and gut or vine to bind. The point was provided with a tang and two transverse flaring barbed-flanges terminating towards top into a

point. Unlike the Acheulian tool type which could be fashioned by trial and error, it was a carefully conceived tool employing a tang to fit into the shaft, mastic for gluing together the tang and the shaft, and gut for their added security. The idea was aimed at fashioning a 'barbed-weapon' that would penetrate skin of the prey animal and hold there even if the animal tried to let loose the weapon by shaking its body.

Bickerton adds that the ACSs are complete by themselves therefore there is no question of their combinability. A word by itself cannot convey the required message therefore needs to be combined with another word to give the required call. Thus, in the evolution of language the process started with an increase in phonological complexity leading to modification of the ACS, the modified ACSs emerged into words, the words combined to signal messages in the manner of beads-on-a-string like the modern pidgin languages (*Ibid*: Ch. 11). According to Bickerton 'the earliest protolanguage words... would have been indivisible chunks of sound, sharing no features with other words', and in its later evolutionary stages protolanguage acquired syntax-like features. Interestingly, Bickerton constructs a modern pidgin version of 'the barbed-weapon scenario' to explain the structure of any given language in its evolutionary stage, and by analogy, suggests that 'there would probably have been a statistical preponderance of what, in a true language, you'd have to call "subject-first" sentences' (*Ibid*: 231).

Bickerton points out that due to absence of syntax long and complex sentences in the beads-on-a-string chaining would become ambiguous, besides it takes long time to deliver them as they are not supported by 'any brain-internal processing'. The barbed-weapon scenario again provides a clue to the brain-internal processing through which concepts recognised 'two most crucial kinds of words', namely, nouns and verbs, accordingly, 'the two templates (roughly, phrases and clauses)' were 'headed, respectively, by nouns and verbs' (*Ibid*: 235-37). Eventually, our ancestors reached the stage of fully syntactical language with Merge as its core (*Ibid*: Ch. 12). Thus, Bickerton traces three stages in the evolution of human language from the ACS to protolanguage to fully syntactical language which he developed with his colleague Calvin (see, Calvin and Bickerton 2000).[1]

Bickerton's studiesare appealing, for he situates his formulations in the evolutionary context coupled with verifiable ant/bee and pri-

---

[1]   Due to my absolute lack of French language, I have not been able to use this book. However, its introductory chapters do suggest commonality with those of the Leroi-Gourhan.

mate behaviour. The Aterian point cited by him is crucial to our understanding of the cognitive evolution. Its appearance is almost contemporaneous with those of the Blombos Cave artefacts. However, it is an open issue whether humans associated with material remains from the Blombos Cave, dated to about 75,000 BP, were equipped with 'syntactic' or 'fully syntactic' language as some scholars strongly contend(Henshilwood*et al* 2002; Henshilwood and Marean 2003; Henshilwood and Dubreuil 2009; d'Errico *et al* 2003; d'Errico and Vanhaeren 2009; d'Errico and Vanhaeren 2012). It may be noted that 'syntax evolved gradually in terms of steps or stages' (Botha 2009: 96), i.e., as a 'historical process' (Tomasello 2003), and in syntactic theory 'the grammatical structure of language is the mediator between signal and meaning' (Kinsella 2009: 6, and *in passim*), thus suggesting a long process and complex cognitive ability, as Bickerton has vividly described.

Botha compellingly argues that to infer existence of syntactic or fully syntactic language from material remains from the Blombos Cave fails to withstand the test of 'Pertinence Condition' because material 'things' related to putative 'syntactic' language are 'not actually language', it cannot be accepted a 'right process'. Therefore, Botha suggests that inferences about language need to be 'underpinned by a principled linguistic ontology' (Botha 2009: 101, 107-08; see also, Balari*et al* 2011; Malafouris 2013: Ch. 5 *in passim*) grounded in 'an appropriate bridge theory'.

Significantly, to resolve this issue we can invoke Barnard's (2010) work in which he deals with 'working-memory' vis-à-vis 'system-level' properties. Based on his earlier studies spanning over past two decades, he explores how the 'working memory' progressively evolves from 'a four-subsystem architecture' of 'a prototypical mammal' like a zebra to 'nine-subsystem human architecture'. Mammalian minds were augmented by successive interacting 'additions of one new subsystem' ultimately leading to enhanced working-memory capacities in modern humans. He proposes nine-subsystem human architecture in somatic and visceral response mechanism to evaluate 'evidence concerning relationships between cognition and emotion in both normal healthy individuals and those with various psychopathologies'. Accordingly, six-subsystem architecture matches the capability of great apes and by inference of the last common ancestor shared with modern humans. The remaining three subsystems represent the three successive evolutionary steps to attain *H. Sapiens sapiens* architecture (see, *Ibid*: fig. 3 on page 45). Applying this 'system-level' approach to the archaeological record, he shows 'increasing differentiation limited to the articulatory domain' of *Homo erectus*. He conceives presence of properties of entities that would 'fit to as-

sign the emergence of a seven-subsystem architecture to *Homo erectus*' (using Acheulian biface technology, i.e., Mode 2). He adds that the Levallois flakes 'provide good evidence' of eight-subsystem human architecture. Finally, use of intricately prepared compound adhesives in hafting found at Sibudu in southern Africa from 70 kya illustrates the 'nine-subsystem human architecture' as contrasted to the single adhesive use of noncompound materials such as bitumen in Neanderthal hafting. Furthermore, the nine-subsystem architecture also includes 'appearance of art and personal ornamentation and the use of mineral pigments', which are 'all traditionally associated with the emergence of symbolic representation' (*Ibid*: 51-52; see also Barnard *et al* 2017). He notes:

> The emphasis here on a sequence of well-specified architectures brings into focus the idea that evolution enabled minds with more advanced architectures to do more things at the same time. By the very nature of the sequence, our proposals inherently provide tight couplings between the evolution of cognitive processes, language, meaning, and more refined emotions. The system-level account directs our attention away from evidence pinpointing the emergence of particular capabilities such as the use of iconic, indexical, and symbolic representations and more toward asking questions about the "whole package" of theoretically derived capabilities that come with a mind organized in a particular way (Barnard 2010: S50-S51).

The above summary suggests that oral signalling was central to the social behaviour of our species from *Homo erectus* to Anatomically Modern Humans and that evolution of stone technology and language run as two parallel rising trajectories over time. It also suggests that material culture can be studied as proxy for language.

2. Material culture of Himalaya

It is important to note that, barring a few sites, most of the Palaeolithic find-spots in Himalayan region are surface finds (cf. Chauhan 2007). Furthermore, whereas the western Himalayan region has been subjected to extensive investigation, we have meagre information about the prehistory of the remaining vast stretch of Himalaya to the east of Himachal Pradesh, the only exception being the Siwalik region of southern- Central- and Western Nepal which was subjected to intensive and extensive explorations by Corvinus. Her extensive studies extending over two decades from 1980s onwards unfold that geoarchaeologically Central and it's adjoining Western Nepal has proved to be the most promising area of Stone Age Culture studies in the

Himalayan region, and it serves as an index to the prehistory of Himalaya. Her exhaustive report on the prehistoric archaeology of Nepal was published posthumously (Corvinus 2007). This monumental work not only deals with 'mostly stratigraphically controlled' and 'more or less securely established' artefact-bearing sites in 'a chronological order' dating back from the Lower Palaeolithic through the Neolithic, but also situates them in appropriate South Asian, East Asian, and Southeast Asian archaeological context. Corvinus' work leads us to better our understanding of the early human activities in Himalaya. To this may be added site-specific detailed analysis of tool types of certain sites carried out by different scholars. These studies suggest site-specific homogenous character of artefacts and associated technology and by implication presence of related named stages of techno-cultural complexes, i.e., Mode 1 to Mode 5, albeit with a caveat that such artefacts are time-transgressive. However, this classification based on techno-cultural traits shows existence of various hominin stone knapping techniques in the Himalayan region without situating them in chronological framework. Hopefully, this exercise liberates a non-specialist of my tribe from the bounds of specialists' culture specific classificatory terminology. In sum, synthesis of these studies leads to suggest that the Himalayan region was one of the cradles of our remote ancestors. It will be clear from the following table.

Site/region	Techno-facie	Stratigraphy	Date	Reference
Potwar & Jammu-Kashmir	Soan' (Mode 1 to Mode 4 type?)	Geological context (Now outdated)	Pleistocene Different glacial sequences (Now outdated)	de Terra and Paterson 1939
Riwat	Pre Acheulian* (Mode 1)	Geological context	~2 mya/ 2.6 mya	Dennell *et al* 1988/ Dennell 2009
Dina & Jalalpur, North Pakistan	Acheulian* (Mode 2)	Geological context	7 mya & .4 mya	Rendell and Dennell 1985
Uttarbaini, Jammu & Kshmir	Pre Acheulian* (Mode 1)	Geological context	2.8 ± 0.56 mya.	Verma 1991
Nalagarh, Himachal Pradesh	Acheulian* (Mode 2	Geological context	Pinjor: Lower Pleistocene	Verma 1975
Masol, Punjab	Pre Acheulian* (Mode 1)	Geological context	2.6 mya	Malassé *et al* 2016/ Gaillard *et al* 2016

Toka, Himachal Pradesh	Post-Acheulian* 'Mode 1 and Mode 3'	Homogeneity of artefacts and site context	Mid-Late Pleistocene	Chauhan 2007
Atbarapur, Punjab	Acheulian* (Mode 2)	Homogeneity of artefacts and site context	Upper Siwalik sediments, > 0.6 mya	Gaillard *et al* 2008
Dzama Thang, Spiti Valley, Himachal Pradesh.	Prepared core technology & blade elements* (Mode 3 & Mode 4)	Homogeneity of artefacts and site context	Late Pleistocene 50–30 ka	Chauhan *et al* 2017/ Joshi 2017
Kalsi, Uttarakhand	Unifacial & bifacial artefacts (Mode 1 type)	Surface finds	No date	Verma *et al* 2012
Narayan Ganga Valley, Uttarakhand	Flakes & scrapers Levalloisian technique (Mode 3?)	Surface finds	No date	*IAR 1977-78*
Suwal Valley, Uttarakhand	Microliths (Mode 5 type)	Surface finds	No date	Joshi 1981; 2008
Gadari	Acheulian*	Stratigraphical contex	>early Mid-Pleistocene	Corvinus 2007
Satpati Hill	Acheulian* (Mode 2)	Stratigraphical contex	Early Pleistocene to early Middle Pleistocene	Corvinus 2007
Brakhuti W. Southern-Central & Central-western Nepal	Large flake core industry (Mode 1 type, time-transgressive)	Stratigraphical contex	>early Mid-Pleistocene	Corvinus 2007
Arjun complex, Central-western Nepal	Prepared core/ Levallois & blade elements* (Mode 3)	Stratigraphical contex	Eemian age 100 ka-70 ka (Middle Palaeolithic)	Corvinus 2007
Brakhuti Industry, Central-western Nepal	Unutilised & utilised flakes, blade-flakes, corescrapers, choppers, unifaces and sumatraliths* (Mode 4)	Stratigraphical contex	25ka-40 ka (Upper Palaeolithic)	Corvinus 2007
Ammapur, Lamahi, & Bhatarkund	Microlithic* (Mode 5)	Stratigraphical contex	Late Pleistocene	Corvinus 2007
Chabeni, Central Nepal; Patu,	Mesolithic	Stratigraphical contex	Before 7,000 BP	Corvinus 2007

Eastern Nepal.				
Garo Hills Assam	Assorted tools (Mode 1 to Mode 5 types?)	Surface finds	No date	Sankalia 1974; Sharma 1974; 1979; Sharma 1996
Kale, Teehum, Glow, Alubari & Chamba, Arunachal Pradesh	Assorted tools (Mode 1 to Mode 4 types?)	Surface finds	No date	Sharma 1979; Sharma 1996
Khangkhul Khullen, & Agartala, Manipur	Assorted tools (Mode 1 to Mode 5 types?)	Surface finds	No date	Sharma 1979; Sharma 1996
Teliamura, Jirania, Sonai Bazar, Sonaram, Mohanpur, Agartala, & Jamjuri	Assorted tools (Mode 1 to Mode 5 types?)	Surface finds	No date	Sharma 1996

* *sensu* Clark 1977.

Table 1: Outline of different techno-facies discovered in Himalaya[2]

Rock drawings: In addition to the above-mentioned lithic artefacts, the Himalaya is also dotted with petroglyphs and pictographs. [Problem with table alignment in the Word file - but corrected in the PDF file]

State/Region	Idiom	Theme	Date	Reference
Eastern Himalaya	Petro-glyphs	Depressions/ Zoomorphs/ Anthropomorphs/ Floral/Geometric motifs	Uncertain Neolithic(?)	Bezbaruah 2014
Central Himalaya				
Nepal	Petro-glyphs	Depresions/ Zoomorphs/ Anthropomorphs/	'older than the Neo-lithic'	Pohle 2003

---

[2]   If these dates are accepted, the artefacts found in Potwar and Siwalik sites are the earliest in Asia, next to the 'Pre-Oldowan' stone tools from Lomekwi 3 in West Turkana, Kenya, dated to 3.3. mya and christened 'Lomekwian' (Harmand *et al* 2015).

		Floral/Geometric motifs		
Uttarakhand	Petro-glyphs	Depressions/ Zoomorphs/ Floral/Geometric motifs	Lower Palaeolithic(?) to Megalithic	Rivett-Carnac 1877; Joshi 1987; 2014: In press
	Picto-graphs	Zoomorphs/ Anthropomorphs/ Floral/Geometric motifs	Upper Palaeolithic to Mesolithic	Joshi 1974; 2014: In press
Himachal Pradesh, Spiti Valley	Petro-glyphs & Picto-graphs	Depressions/ Zoomorphs/ Anthropomorphs/ Floral/Geometric motifs	Mesolithic(?) to Neolithic (excluding Buddhist)	Bellezza 2015; Chauhan and Joshi 2017; Dowad and Norbu 2017
Kashmir, adjoining North-Pakistan, Western Tibet & Afghanistan	Petro-glyphs and Pic-tographs	Depressions/ Zoomorphs/ Anthropomorphs/ Floral/Geometric motifs	Mesolithic(?) to Bronze Age (excluding Buddhist)	Allchin1987; Bruneau 2007; Bruneau and Bel-lezza 2013; Olivieri 2010; Mock 2013; Vernier 2016

Table 2: Profile of petroglyphs and pictographs of Himalaya

The above table (No. 1) clearly shows that stratigraphically controlled archaeological studies in Nepal unfold existence of discrete named stages of techno-cultural complexes, i.e., Mode 1 to Mode 5, and that in the Old World the Himalaya witnessed the earliest hominin activities next to Africa. What is central to the present study is the presence of the Middle Palaeolithic (Mode 3) techno-cultural complex that marks quantum leap forward in human cognition and matching language acquisition skills as evident from Wadley's study of Middle Stone Age industry (corresponding to the Middle Palaeolithic) called the Howiesons Poort. It may be noted that stone tools exemplified by segments 'have been found in the earliest Central African MSA, with an age of about 300,000 years. In southern Africa, between about 70,000 and 55,000 years ago, segments and other backed tools were

the most common stone tools in an MSA industry called the Howie-sons Poort' (Wadley 2010: S112). Wadley's (2010) experimental study clearly shows that in this industry segments as multipurpose artefacts could be used both as tools and weapons, and their hafting was an intricate process. She summarizes:

> Mental rotation, a capacity implying advanced working-memory capacity, was required to place the segments in various positions to create novel weapons and tools. The compound glues used to fix the segments to shafts are made from disparate ingredients, using an irreversible process. The steps required for compound-adhesive manufacture demonstrate multitasking and the use of abstraction and recursion. As is the case in recursive language, the artisan needed to hold in mind what was previously done in order to carry out what was still needed. Cognitive fluidity enabled people to do and think several things at the same time, for example, mix glue from disparate ingredients, mentally rotate segments, talk, and maintain fire temperature. Thus, there is a case for attributing advanced mental abilities to people who lived 70,000 years ago in Africa without necessarily invoking symbolic behaviour (*Ibid*: S111).

Interestingly, Bar-Yosef (2008) draws our attention to the intricacy of the Levalloisian technology and states that it involves oral communication to impart this knowledge. He posits that, like Out-of-Africa scenario, the Levalloisian technology was invented in 'a specific region of the Old World and only later spread all over to be shared by many other groups, enriched in due course by a series of additional technical improvements' (*Ibid*: 376-77; see also, Lieberman 2013: Ch. 5). It may be inferred then that the inhabitants of Himalaya were exchanging information through oral communication long before the emergence of the named languages.

3. Material culture and language: the Himalayan evidence

Recent archaeological investigations in Europe, Africa and Near East suggest two models of language evolution, namely, 'Human Revolution scenario', and 'Out-of-Africa scenario', the former credits Europe for this evolution and the latter Africa (see for details and further references, Botha and Knight (eds.) 2009; see also, Possehl 2007; Dennell and Petraglia 2012). However, these studies become redundant in the light of Lieberman's recent studies (2013; 2016) cited above.

   Be it as it may, genetic studies indicate dispersal of anatomically modern humans representing 'three Y chromosome founder lineages, accompanying mtDNA haplogroups M and N' from Africa to South

Asia 'approximately 70–50 thousand years ago' via 'the southern [coastal] route' and 'the coalescence times of mtDNA haplogroups M, N and R are remarkably similar and ancient, ~65, 000 years' (Chaubey*et al* 2006; Endicott *et al* 2007: 235; see also, Mellars 2006; Mellars *et al* 2013; Atkinson *et al* 2008; Zegura 2008; Petraglia *et al* 2010; Li and Durbin 2011; Henn *et al* 2012; see for recent studies in human colonization of Asia in the Late Pleistocene, *Current Anthropology*, Volume 58, Supplement 17, December 2017).

In this connection it is also to be noted that genetic and paleoanthropological evidences suggest a late Pleistocene 'great demic (demographic and geographic) expansion' of modern humans that began 'approximately 45,000 to 60,000 y ago in Africa and rapidly resulted in human occupation of almost all of the Earth's habitable regions' (Henn *et al* 2012). In case of Southern Asia, 'the history of the genetic lineages now inhabiting the region' suggests a '5-fold increase in population size' by ~ 52 kya, and that these 'estimates of effective population size through time show that Southern Asia was not only a key waypoint in the human expansion from Africa but also a major chapter in human prehistory' (Chaubey *et al* 2006; Atkinson *et al* 2008: 471-72). Genetic signatures also disclose that the new geographical environment of South Asia was instrumental in generating genetic differences during this time (see, Chaubey *et al* 2006; Sankhyan 2013). Significantly, Kivisild *et al* (2003: 216) observe:

> The Indian haplogroup M lineages differ substantially from those found in eastern and central Asian populations and most likely represent *in situ* diversification in the sub-continent since the Palaeolithic...
>
> Thus, what we see as specific to Indian subcontinent is the presence of diverse sub-clusters of haplogroups M, R, and U that are virtually absent elsewhere. All these sub-clusters show coalescent times at around 50,000 BP. Given their high overall frequency in India this suggests a very limited gene flow – at least as far as maternal lineages are concerned – beyond the subcontinent over a long time span, likely since its initial colonization.

Hard archaeological evidence from different sites in South Asia (Mellars 2006; Mellars *et al* 2013; Corvinus 2007: Ch. VIII; James 2007; Petraglia *et al* 2009; Petraglia *et al* 2010) also supports human expansion. Significantly, Dunbar (2003) postulates that time invested in social grooming is crucial to social bonding and therefore determines its group size. Maintenance of larger social group size requires matching investment in time for social grooming within the limited time budget, which constraint was overcome by vocal grooming and ultimately language. On the basis of material culture bearing on symbol-

ic cognition, particularly from the Blombos Cave near Still Bay in South Africa, it has been suggested that 'anatomically modern humans' were already language users at the time of their dispersal from Africa (Renfrew 1994; McBrearty and Brooks 2000; Henshilwood*et al* 2002; Henshilwood and Dubreuil 2009; Mellars 2004; Zilhão 2007; Knight 2009; Watts 2009). Therefore, there is no reason to believe that they arrived in South Asia without language.

Scholars engaged in linguistic and genetic studies have observed 'a remarkable similarity between the linguistic tree and the genetic tree' (Henn *et al* 2012: 17761). These studies also suggest dispersal of language using humans from Africa to different parts of the Old World (Nichols 1999 [1992]; Cavilli-Sforza 2001; Creanza *et al* 2015). The tree of origin of human languages originally drawn by Merritt Ruhlen and modified by Cavalli-Sforza (2001: 169) shows Africa as the root of the language of *Homo sapiens sapiens* (100-70 kya), whence it branched off into three sub-families, namely, Khoisian, Congo-Saharan, and Asian, the last one is assigned to '70-50 kya'. She also adds (*Ibid*: 155) that possibly the ancestors of the speakers of Khoisan languages 'were responsible for the first expansion from Africa to Asia', although 'linguistic methods have not yet generated a complete tree growing from a single source' (*Ibid*: 139-40; cf., Zegura 2008; Gell-Mann and Ruhlen 2011).

In terms of language dispersal, Himalaya is a 'residual' zone (Nichols 1999 [1992]: 21), and together with the Caucasus, offers considerable language diversity owing to climatic, geographical, and political factors, which 'make it possible for a relatively small community to survive autonomously' (*Ibid*: 44, 234). The linguistic profile of the Himalayan region is interesting:

> The greater Himalayan region is the principal meeting point for the two largest language families of the world, Indo-European and Tibeto-Burman. The same massifs have also been home to two smaller language families (Austroasiatic and Dravidian), and to two language isolates (Burushaski and Kusunda). Despite their physical prominence, the Himalayas constitute not so much an insurmountable barrier but rather a region of interaction between these various language families (Turin and Zeisler 2011: 1).

It may be noted here that whereas Burushaski is spoken 'in the central Hunza Valley of northern Pakistan', Kusunda is spoken by a precariously small group of former foragers commonly known as the 'Ban Raja' (Watters 2006: 9; Blench 2008). Variously addressed as Raute, Raji, Banraja or Banraji, the people inhabiting Far West Nepal and eastern Kumaon in Uttarakhand, India, are different from the

Kusunda-speaking 'Ban Raja' of Nepal.[3] The language of the former is called Raute or Raji (see for further references, Bandhu 2017; Rastogi 2017), and its origin remains disputed (Krishnan cited in Zoller 2016: 3). Interestingly, not only in terms of language isolates, Himalaya is equally important from the perspective of history of Indo-European language phylum as it has at least two regions, namely, Lahaul and Spiti sub-division of Himachal Pradesh in Western Himalaya (Sharma 1983) and Bangan in Garhwal division of Uttarakhand in Central Himalaya (Zoller 1988; 1989; 2007; 2008; see also, Abbi 1997; Drocco 2016), where traces of 'Old Indo-Aryan' have survived, whereas they have disappeared in most other places since long.

Arguably, in terms of time depth there are deep-rooted connections between the forebears of the speakers of the above-mentioned languages and the authors of material culture of the Himalaya. To the best of my knowledge, this issue has not attracted scholars working on the prehistory of Himalaya and its linguistic prehistory. Surprisingly, despite 'Munda and related Austro–Asiatic languages' that existed in South Asia for 'several millennia' and pre-date Old Indo-Aryan (Southworth 2005: Ch.3; van Driem 2012), in the archaeological context studies in the dispersal of language using humans in South Asia is generally dominated by the Indo-European speakers vis-à-vis agriculture (see, for example, Renfrew 1987: Ch. 8; 1992; 1994; Erdosy 1997 [1995]; Southworth 1997 [1995]; 2005; Witzel 1997 [1995]; van Driem 2001; Blench and Spriggs (eds.) 2004 [1998]; Blench 2008; Bellwood 2001; Bellwood and Oxenham 2008; Fuller 2003; 2007; Fuller *et al* 2011; Gray *et al* 2011; Tewari *et al* (eds.) 2007-2008).[13] This is despite availability of adequate material culture bearing on symbolic cognition (James 2007), implying use of spoken language long before the Neolithic.

> Thus, according to these linguistic hypotheses, the ancestors of close to 100 per cent of the indigenous languages spoken in India today came to India during the Holocene... consequently, all the preceding pre-Neolithic languages were totally replaced. If this is indeed so, how extensive was the genetic replacement caused by these events? (Kivisild *et al* 2003: 216).

---

[3] Variously known as Raute, Raji or Banraji in Far WestNepal the 'population of Rautes and their cultural and linguistic relatives who live in the Nepal/India border region [i.e., estern Kumaun, India, and its adjoining Far Western Nepal] is estimated to be about 700 Rautes, 2,500 Rajis, and 2–3,000 Banrajis' (Fortier 2009: 4). The Raute, Raji or Banraji are different from Kusunda-speaking folks who call themselves '*mihaq* Ban Raja' (Watters 2006: 14). I am thankful to Prof. Dr. Chudamani Bandhu (Tribhuwan University, Kathmandu, Nepal) and Prof. Dr. Kavita Rastogi (Lucknow University, Lucknow, India) for this information.

While studying the rock paintings of Central Himalaya (Uttarakhand), a preliminary attempt at reading signatures of language was made by me a few years ago (Joshi 2014: in press). In the meantime, I got the opportunity to work with a team of archaeologists of Himachal Pradesh Government headed by Dr. Hari Chauhan. Their (Chauhan *et al* 2017) recent discovery of the Palaeolithic tools with prepared core technology in the lower Spiti Valley (Himachal Pradesh) has added new dimensions to Indian archaeology. Though these tools have been found on the surface, circumstantial and inferred archaeological evidence (e.g., prepared core technology, Levallois-like flakes, predominance of blade elements and absence of microliths; find-spot situated along a palaeolake dated to '50–30 ka' by Phartiyal *et al* 2009; and discovery of almost similar tools dated to 'minimum' 30 kya in adjoining Western Tibet by Aldenderfer *et al* 2008) suggest that they represent local transitional phase from the Middle Palaeolithic to the Upper Palaeolithic (Joshi 2017).

What is central to the present study is that, as we already have noticed, the Levallois-like technology implies adequate oral communication. It draws our attention to Burushaski, a language isolate, considered to be one of the branches of Basque (Cavalli-Sforza 2001: 142, 149). van Driem (2008) affiliates Burushaski with 'Greater Yenisseian'. According to Bengtson (2009, and further references therein) Kusunda, Burushaski and Basque form part of a larger language family, called 'Dene-Caucasian'. However, in a recent paper Gerber (2017) has thoroughly examined the possibility of parcelling these languages into one larger language family linguistically, but he found no 'genealogical relationship' between these languages. He concludes:

> all languages involved in this paper are typologically similar to each other and exhibit similarly complex verbal morphology [but do] not provide evidence for genealogical relationship...
> Especially in the case of the comparison of Burushaski, Kusunda, Yenisseian and Athabaskan-Eyak-Tlingit, the assumed time depth makes it unlikely that these languages, even if they were in fact related to each other, would still preserve enough of the original positions and categories to resemble each other in the way that they actually do nowadays.
> All these considerations lead to the conclusion that a genealogical relationship between Burushaski, Kusunda, Yenisseian and Athabaskan-Eyak-Tlingit cannot be demonstrated at the present stage. This finding corroborates my personal conjecture that the time depth of a putative Dene-Kusunda family is just too great to enable us to detect convincing vestiges of a common origin. Convincing statements concerning language relatedness beyond a certain time

depth are not possible, and the Dene-Kusunda hypothesis lies well
beyond this horizon (*Ibid*: 191-192).

It is obvious then that great time depth makes it difficult to identify
the forebears of speakers of modern language isolates based on lin-
guistics. However, as noted above, there is 'a remarkable similarity
between the linguistic tree and the genetic tree' and therefore, in the
absence of any other convincing hypothesis, we can follow the sug-
gestion that genetic studies indicate that Basque is 'related to the lan-
guage spoken by Cro-Magnons, the first modern humans in Europe'
(Cavalli-Sforza 2001: 112, 121, 141-42, 149, 158; see also, Piazza and
Cavalli-Sforza 2006). If it is so in Eurasia, what about the forebears of
Burushaski-speaking folks and, in the same vein, of Kusunda- and
Raute/Raji-speaking folks in the Himalaya? Let us examine the Him-
alayan archaeological record.

    To the best of my knowledge, van Driem is the only scholar who
has cited archaeological evidence in his linguistic studies of the
Himalaya, but it is restricted to the Neolithic (van Driem 2001; 2008).
He cites Corvinus' (2007) study of material culture of pre-Neolithic
Nepal but, to the best of my understanding, he does not articulate it
with any Himalayan language (van Driem 2012: 211-12). However,
his studies point out that the first language using occupants of Hima-
laya were 'the Austroasiatic speaking populations' (van Driem 2001:
414; 2011; 2012). They were followed by the Kusunda speakers
'whom the Tibeto-Burmans must have encountered when they first
entered the Himalayan region millennia ago' (van Driem 2001: 333).
In a more recent study, van Driem suggests that 'Kusunda might be
the remnant of the same ancient Greater Yenisseian migration into
the Himalayas' as Burushaski (van Driem 2013: 164), but neither he
gives any chronology of such an event nor he refers to any material
culture of Himalaya bearing on such a migration. Arguably, if Bu-
rushaski and Kusunda belong to 'Greater Yenisseian', and together
with Basque form part of yet greater language family termed 'Proto-
Yeniseian' (see for details and further references, Vajda 2012: 15-16),
we should look for their roots in the Upper Palaeolithic. Admittedly,
it refers to the geographical area of Eurasia and North-West South
Asia. A recent study of human activities in Gissar Range, Pamir, Hin-
du Kush and Kashmir during prehistoric times by Malassé and Gail-
lard (2010) shows close interaction of peoples in this area. They sum
up:

> The data suggest that the hunting territory in high plateaus was a
> biotope exploited during summer, since the Late Pleistocene, by
> Central Asian hunters and that a huge territory opened from the
> second half of the Holocene, including lower valleys not only such

as Gissar and Afghani Badakhshan, but also Chitral, Swat, Indus and may be other regions awaiting further investigations in Himalayas and Western China. Without those movements which allowed interbreeding between the tribes, the genetic variability would have declined (*Ibid*: 8).

Since discovery of the 'Acheulian, Middle Acheulian, proto-Levalloisian, early Levalloisian, distinctly Levalloisian, and the late Levalloisian of Europe' have been reported from Potwar and Kashmir by Paterson (1939: 303, 307-68, 310), it presupposes existence of speakers of syntactic language. Therefore, it is not unlikely that some of the folks using the Levallois technology in the area under reference were the forebears of Burushaski, which, following Cavalli-Sforza (2001: 158, and figure showing tree of language on page 169), belonged to 'Dene-Caucasion' superfamily of language that included two major families, namely, 'Sino-Tibetan and Na-Dene'. This suggestion may also lend support to van Driem's 'Greater Yenisseian' hypothesis provided we assign it to the Upper Palaeolithic.

The above account gives us general information about presence of language using folks on the basis of stone artefacts. However, these are the rock drawings which make our understanding of linguistic prehistory of Himalaya somewhat explicit. I have discussed this issue in some detail elsewhere (Joshi 2014: in press; 2017: in press; see also, Joshi *et al* 2015; Joshi *et al* 2017; Chauhan and Joshi 2017; Joshi: forthcoming). In sum, we have two idioms of rock drawings in Himalaya, namely, petroglyphs and pictographs (see above, table 2). Petroglyphs are ubiquitous in Himalaya but pictographs are restricted to Central Himalaya (Uttarakhand) and Western Himalaya. Furthermore, on circumstantial and stylistic grounds, the Central Himalayan rock paintings form a class by themselves and may be assigned to the Upper Palaeolithic-Epipalaeolithic (see for details, Joshi 2014: in press). Since, as already stated above, the Neolithic has been subjected to extensive studies in the context of language and agriculture dispersal, in the discussion that follows I will address the rock drawings of the Pre-Neolithic Central Himalaya vis-à-vis language.

Stylistically, Central Himalayan rock paintings have two distinct categories, the one showing anthropomorphic, zoomorphic, and aniconic signs. This category may further be divided into two subgroups: the first shows human figures arranged linearly with horizontal orientation, for example, Lakhu-udyar (Pl. 1), Lwethap (Pl. 2), and Phalsima (Pl. 3), all situated in District Almora (Kumaon, Uttarakhand). The second sub-group shows human figures jumbled up in conglomeration. Significantly, so far the latter sub-group is noticed only in two sites, namely, Gvarkhyavadyar (near Village Chhinka. Pl.

4), and Ghatgarh rock shelter (near Adi Badri, Pl. 5), both in District Chamoli (Garhwal). The second category is unique in that it shows a perpendicular row of hieroglyph-like motifs having creeper-like shoots painted in steel-grey colour as found at Hudoli, District Uttarkashi (Pl. 6). In terms of symbolic cognition the first category compares well with the earliest rock paintings of Bhimbetka in that it shows overwhelmingly large number of barehanded anthropomorphic figures, few wild zoomorphic figures, simple iconicity, and small variety of aniconic motifs. Furthermore, except stick-like object, that too occurring rarely, these paintings do not show any such object as indicates any advanced tool technology. The abstract depictions in the rock paintings under reference include vulvas, dots, varied alignments of short lines and a long wavering line as may be seen at Phalsima (Pl. 7), and Lakhu-Udyar (Pls. 8-10). Whereas Leroi-Gourhan (1968: 199-200) associates such signs with femininity, according to Lewis-Williams (2012 [2002]: 127-33, 151-54) such depictions in the Upper Palaeolithic drawings are produced due to 'entopic phenomena' experienced by the shamans. These characteristics tend to suggest that these paintings belong to the pre-Neolithic phase of material culture of Central Himalaya (see for details, Joshi 2014: in press).

There is a general consensus among scholars that Munda is one of the 'primary' branches of Austroasiatic (see, Blust 2013: Ch. 11, see also Kumar and Reddy 2003; Sidwell 2015; cf. Majumdar 2010). Significantly, Sharma (2003) has shown that Munda is the sub-stratum of 'Tibeto-Himalayan languages'. Thus, we have three major candidates whose forebears may have left their signatures in the Pre-Neolithic material culture of Himalaya, namely, the Munda-, the Burushaski-, and the Kusunda-speaking folks. We already have noticed that the forebears of the Burushaski-speaking folks may represent some or the other groups using the Levalloisian technology. Interestingly, the Levalloisian flakes have also been found in close proximity of Ghatgarh rock-shelter (*Indian Archaeology 1977-78 – A Review*: 83). If the Ghatgarh rock paintings are accepted as the Upper Palaeolithic, association of the Levalloisian flakes with them is plausible. In that case, it is an open issue whether the authors of Ghatgarh rock paintings as well as the other ones found in Central Himalaya, represent the forebears of the Munda-speaking folks. In any case, they were using adequate language to communicate through these paintings.

There is a solitary example of perpendicular arrangement of motifs located at Hudoli. Perpendicular arrangement of symbols is found on 'Oracle bones' representing 'the earliest undisputed' Chinese texts in 'late Shang dynasty (c. 1300–1200 bc) inscriptions' from the area of 'the last Shang capital, Yinxu, near Anyang (Henan)' (Demattè 2010).

However, Chinese characters start appearing from 'the Late Neolithic (*c*. 3000–2000 BC)'. Interestingly, inscription on the Dinggong pot-sherd shows horizontal arrangements of character (*Ibid*: 214 and Fig. 2c), hence, the source of perpendicular arrangement of Chinese characters needs to be searched somewhere else. According to van Driem (2008: 44), 'most Tibeto-Burman language communities and even most branches of the language family are exclusively represented outside of China'. Therefore, can it be suggested that the authors of Hudoli paintings were the forebears of the Kusunda-speaking folks? For, it has been suggested that the Tibeto-Burman speakers 'must have encountered' Kusunda speakers 'when they first entered the Himalayan region millennia ago' (van Driem 2001: 333). In that case, it is not unlikely that the Hudoli paintings served as a prototype that inspired development of pictographic script and perpendicular alignment of characters. The Tibeto-Burman speakers learned it from the authors of Hudoli paintings and passed on the system to their counterparts in China. Alternatively, the Tibeto-Burman speakers themselves invented the characters and perpendicular alignment of motifs after settling in Hudoli area whence the idea spread north-wards into China. It is difficult to surmise otherwise, for there is no resemblance between the Hudoli motifs and early Chinese characters (see for early Chinese characters, Huisheng 1995; Demattè 2010). If it is so, the Hudoli paintings might date back to the Early Neolithic phase of South Asian Northern Neolithic (*circa* 7000 BC). I reserve it for a future study. In this connection it is also to be noted that recent linguistic and genome studies have complicated the identity of the Kusunda-speaking people because of Kusunda's closeness to 'Indo-Pacific family of languages' (Whitehouse *et al* 2004; Rasmussen *et al* 2011; cf. van Driem 2011).

It seems that prehistoric community resorted to depictive symbol-ism, what Leroi-Gourhan's pioneering study terms as 'The Birth of Graphism' (Leroi-Gourhan 1993 [1964]: 187-216), to give expression to its perception of mundane as well as metaphysical world effectively due to their deficiency in spoken language. This practice was aban-doned in course of time when humankind developed an adequate vocabulary and syntactic language to narrate the same. Interestingly, in Africa, the San continued the tradition until their last paintings in the nineteenth century, because the Bushman still use click mode of communication.

4. Concluding observation:
why material culture is proxy for language

In the preceding section of this essay an attempt was made to identify forebears of speakers of three putatively most ancient language families of Himalaya, namely, Munda, Burushaski, and Kusunda with the authors of material culture of the Himalaya. As regards techno-facies of the stone artefacts, their approximate dates cannot be disputed. Therefore, it is obvious that humans with adequate language skills were roaming in the Himalaya at least some 70,000 years ago. However, such is not the case with rock paintings. Despite several scientific attempts at dating prehistoric rock paintings 'a reliable scientific method to establish their absolute antiquities' is yet to come into view (Watchman 1997: 21). Therefore, scholars take into account circumstantial, inferred archaeological, comparative, and stylistic grounds to work their chronology. No doubt, it is speculative and subject to sudden death the moment a compelling scientific method is developed in the light of which these paintings declared Neolithic or much later. If so, what about the explanations given here of the rock paintings, their authors vis-à-vis different languages spoken in antiquity in the Himalaya? Its answer lies in the semiotic study of these paintings. In the discussion that follows I will summarily point out few representative examples.

     Thus, there is a highly symbolic representation located at Pethsal (Pl. 11). It represents a conically roofed pyramidal motif showing three upward receding tiers of arched niche-like panels in red with a human figure in black within each panel. The topmost tier consists of a single conical niche-like panel. The motif is superimposed on three human figures in red depicted outside the niche-like panels, below on the right. Moving towards right, three conical patterns of varying sizes in black are depicted in vertical order, and on the extreme right, there is a vertically arranged serpentine motif. There is no doubt that the colour combination of red and black pigments in the motif under reference is indicative of cognitive complexity. Does it suggest association of red with life and black with death? In that case, the human figures in black may represent deceased ancestors, the arched panel-like niches in red (symbolising life) as ochre-furnished graves to bring life to the deceased, and the three conical patterns in black on the right as the graves emptied by them during the ancestor worship (*śrāddha* ceremony in Brahmanical religion). Significantly, these conical patterns are devoid of any base or ground, as if floating in the sky, suggestive of their locations in the three worlds of departed ancestors in the sky. The three human figures in red below on which this three-

tiered motif is superimposed might denote the resurrected immediate ancestors referred to above.

It may be noted that association of the deceased ancestors (*pitṛi*-s) with the three worlds is explicitly mentioned in several Brahmanical texts (see, Kane 1953: 458; 503). Interestingly, it has been suggested that some sort of belief system in the three worlds finds expression widely in the prehistoric rock drawings (see, Lewis-Williams 2012 [2002]: 144, 149, 165, 209; Boyd 2012; Hays-Gilpin 2012; McNiven and Brady 2012; Rozwadowski 2012; see also Bloch 2008; Layton 2012: 442). It is likely that such beliefs continued echoing in the subsequent phases of human history and resurfaced in the form of *pitṛi-pūjā* of the Indo-Aryan culture as evidenced in the *Rigveda*. Interestingly, according to Staal (1963: 268) Vedic rituals related to deceased members of one's family known as *preta-karma*, which also include *pitṛi-pūjā*, are non-sanskritic in origin (see also Jośī 2011: *Adhyāya* 4-5). Singh (1997) draws our attention to copious references in the *Rigveda* which clearly show that their authors had not lost memory of the Pre-Neolithic phase of human culture in South Asia. Accordingly, depiction of the three tiers in the motif under reference may refer to the three worlds of the *pitṛi*-s.

Another noteworthy example of symbolism is found at Lwethap (upper rock shelter). It shows a long frieze of human figures together with other motifs in different hues of red, some of which are superimposed (Pl. 2). In this frieze we come across few curious figures, each looking like a slightly slanted vertical line surmounted by 'X'-like (in one case 'star-like') sign in solid red, and, if it is not due to the impact of bleeding of calciferous rock, encased in deft thin white lines. The composition seems to depict a procession of anthropomorphic figures including some differentiated human figures wearing peaked headdresses or masks (?); the figurative representation of coalition ritual activity is beyond doubt. It reminds us of the Katyūrī *jāgar* ritual (a group spirit possession séance) still in vogue in Central Himalaya in which possessed spirits are differentiated on the basis of their socio-political antecedents and seated in a specific order accordingly. It plays vital role in bringing about group solidarity, and in perpetuating shared beliefs through time (cf., DeMarrais 2011). A spectacular show of such activities takes place in the annual fair at Ranibagh near Kathgodam (District Nainital), where the *jāgar* rituals start with processions lead by possessed mediums (see for details and photographs, Joshi 2014).

Significantly, Central Himalayan rock paintings clearly show that when used in association with black, red pigment tends to superimpose on the black. It may explain the contents of a section of rock paintings at Phalsima depicting medley of black and red figures (Pls.

3, 12). Following shamanistic interpretation, it may be suggested that the black figures may denote evil spirits being subdued/vanquished by the superimposed life-giving red ones representing benevolent spirits, or else a struggle between the evil and the benevolent spirits, a common belief system enacted in spirit possession in Central Himalaya. Two singularly drawn headless human figures in black at Phalsima (Pl. 3) clearly support association of death/evil spirits with black colour (cf., Petru 2008: 226). In this case they might represent vanquished, beheaded evil spirits.

In the same vein, another example of colour symbolism is noticed on the large rock shelter near the Forest Checkpoint at Lakhu-udyar (Pl. 9). It shows a large number of variously shaped alternating white and red coloured motifs, somewhat resembling 'l' 'c', 's', 'y', of the Roman letters, and reverse '*da*' of the Devanagari script, besides different combinations of straight/semi-curved lines, all arranged in a horizontal row. It may be explained as a structural representation of 'nothingness that is before birth, the world in the ice age' (cf. Kandinsky 1977) represented by white strokes and birth/life represented by red ones. Indeed, plants stemming through snow/ice cover in the spring season is still a common experience for the residents of higher altitudes of the Himalaya.

Yet another interesting example of symbolic use of red colour is noticedin the same painted rock. Here a considerably long irregular thin red line is drawn on the side face of the rock, which at random would appear as meaningless (Pl. 10). Interestingly, in African rock drawings such irregularly drawn long thin red lines, albeit in association with human and animal figures, have been interpreted as 'lines of potency', which could be both malevolent and benevolent (Lewis-Williams 1981; Power 2004). In Central Himalayan rock paintings also red lines are clearly associated with human figures as may be noticed at Lwethap (Pl-13, lower painted rock) and Lakhu-Udyar below Forest Checkpoint (Pl. 14).

Cognitive archaeology has shown that 'the symbolic capacities needed for art are also needed for language, and are interpreted by some as indicative of the presence of language' (Johansson 2006; cf. Davidson and Noble 1989). Deacon's (1997) studies show the centrality of symbols in the spread of language communication, and Rappaport (1999: Ch. 3; cf., Renfrew 2001) has persuasively shown that certain indexical signs 'would be impossible to conceive or denote in the absence of language'. In the same vein, motifs in Himalayan rock drawings were used as symbols which needed adequate means of communication for explaining their contents to the viewers of the society who used them. If symbolism is separated from the above-mentioned examples of Central Himalayan rock paintings what else

could be the intent of these paintings? So long as we do not find an answer to this poser, it would not be an overstatement to say that the examples cited by us represent proxy for language in the material culture of Himalaya. It needs further research to associate these paintings with the forebears of different named language-speaking groups, i.e., Munda-, Burushaski-, Kusunda-, Raute/Raji-speaking folks of Himalaya.

Bibliography

Abbi, Anvita. 1997. Debate on archaism of some select Baṅgāṇi words. *Indian Liniustics*, 58: 1-14.

Allchin, Bridget. 1987. South Asian rock art. *Journal of the Royal Society of Arts*, 135 (5366): 138-56.

Aldenderfer, Mark S., John W. Olsen and P. Jeffrey Brantingham. 2008. Archaeological Research Conducted in Ngari Prefecture, Tibet Autonomous Region and in the Amdo Region, Qinghai in 2007. A Report of Investigations Carried Out under a Program of Research Entitled "Defining the Paleolithic Presence on the Tibetan Plateau" Supported by the American Council on Learned Societies & the Henry Luce Foundation. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/242200868

Atkinson *et al* 2008: Atkinson, Quentin D., Russell D. Gray and Alexei J. Drummond. 2008. mtDNA variation predicts population size in humans and reveals a major Southern Asian Chapter in human prehistory. *Molecular Biology and Evolution*, 25 (2): 468-74.

Balari *et al* 2011: Balari, Sergio, Antonio Benítez-Burraco, Marta Camps, Vıctor M. Longa, Guillermo Lorenzo and Juan Uriagereka. 2011. The Archaeological record speaks: bridging anthropology and linguistics. *International Journal of Evolutionary Biology*, 2011, Article ID 382679: DOI: 10.4061/2011/382679

Bandhu, C.M. 2017. Rāuṭe and Rāji: Two endangered tribes of Central Himalayas. *In*: B.K. Joshi and Maheshwar P. Joshi (eds.), *Unfolding Central Himalaya*: *The Cradle of Culture*: 81-98. Dehradun: Doon Library and Research Centre and Almora: Almora Book Depot.

Barnard, Philip J. 2010. From executive mechanisms underlying perception and action to the parallel processing of meaning. *Current Anthropology*, 51 (Supplement 1): S39-S54.

Barnard *et al* 2017: Barnard, Philip, Iain Davidson and Richard W. Byrne. 2017. Toward a richer theoretical scaffolding for interpreting archaeological evidence concerning cognitive evolution. *In*: Thomas Wynn and Frederick L. Coolidge (eds.). 2017. *Cognitive*

Models in Palaeolithic Archaeology: 45-67. New York: Oxford University Press.

Bar-Yosef, Ofer. 2008. Can Paleolithic stone artifacts serve as evidence for prehistoric language? *In*: John D. Bengtson (ed.), *In Hot Pursuit of Language in Prehistory: Essays in the Four Fields of Anthropology. In Honor of Harold Crane Fleming*: 373-79. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company.

Bellwood, Peter. 2001. Early agriculturist population diasporas? Farming, language, and genes. *Annual Review of Anthropology*, 30: 181-207.

Bellwood, Peter and Marc Oxenham. 2008. The expansions of farming societies and the role of the neolithic demographic transition. *In*: J.-P. Bocquet-Appel and O. Bar-Yosef (eds.), *The Neolithic Demographic Transitionand its Consequences*: 13-34. Dordrecht: Springer.

Bellezza 2015: See, John V. Belletza's website reporting discoveries of petroglyphs and pictographs in Tibet, Jammu & Kashmir, and Himachal Pradesh, http://www.tibetarchaeology.com; http://www.tibetarchaeology.com/july-2015/

Bengtson, John D. 2009. "Dene-Yeniseian" and the Rest of Dene-Caucasian: Part 3: The Burusho-Yeniseian (Karasuk) Hypothesis. Part 4: Burusho-Dene. Working Papers in Athabaskan Languages. http://jdbengt.net/articles/Athabascan2009Bengtsonx.pdf

Bezbaruah, D. 2014. Megalithic monuments and the context of rock art in NE India. *In*: B.L. Malla (ed.) *Rock Art Studies: Concept, Methodology, Context, Documentation and Preservation*. New Delhi: Indira Gandhi National Centre for the Arts and Aryan Book International.

Bickerton, Derek. 2000. How protolanguage became language. *In*: Chris Night, Michael Studdert-Kennedy and James R. Hurford (eds.), *The Evolutionary Emergence of Language Social Function and the Origins of Linguistic Form*: 264-84. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

___. 2009. *Adam's Tongue*: *How Humans Made Language and Language Made Humans*. New York: Hill and Wang.

Blench, Roger and Matthew Spriggs. 2004 (1998). Introduction. *In*: Roger Blench and Matthew Spriggs (eds.), *Archaeology and Language*, Vol. II: *Archaeological Data and Linguistic Hypotheses*: 1-19. London: Routledge 1998/Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2004.

Blench, Roger. 2008. Re-evaluating the linguistic prehistory of South Asia. *In*:ToshikiOsada and AkinoriUesugi(eds.), *Linguistics, Archaeology and the Human Past*: 159-178. Occasional Paper 3. Kyoto: Indus Project Research Institute for Humanity and Nature.

Bloch, Maurice. 2008. Why religion is nothing special but is central. *In*: Colin Renfrew, Chris Frith and LambrosMalafouris (eds.), *The*

Sapient Mind: *Archaeology Meets Neuroscience*, 363 (1499): 2055–2061.London: Philosophical transactions of the Royal Society B.

Botha, Rudolf. 2009. Theoretical underpinnings of inferences about language evolution: the syntax used at Blombos Cave. *In*: Rudolf Botha and Chris Knight (eds.), *The Cradle of Language*: 93-111. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Botha, Rudolf and Chris Knight (eds.).2009. *The Cradle of Language*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Boyd, Carolyn E.2012. Pictographs, patterns, and peyote in the Lower Pecos Canyonlands of Texas. *In*: Jo McDonald and Peter Veth (eds.), *A Companion to Rock Art*: 34-50. West Sussex: Blackwell Publishing Ltd.

Blust, Robert. 2013. *The Austronesian Languages*. Revised Edition. Canberra: Asia-Pacific Linguistics Research School of Pacific and Asian Studies, Australian National University.

Bruneau, Laurianne.2007. A preliminary study of rock art of the Western Himalaya. *Puratattva*, 37: 104-11.

Bruneau, Laurianne and John V. Bellezza. 2013. The rock art of Upper Tibet and Ladakh: Inner Asian cultural adaptation, regional differentiation and the Western Tibetan Plateau Style. *Revue d'EtudesTibetaines*, 2013, 28: 5-161. <halshs-00947955>

Calvin, William. H . y Derek Bickerton. 2000. *Lingua ex Machina. La conciliación de las teorías de Darwin y Chomsky sobre el cerebro humano*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: The MIT Press.

Camps, Marta and Parth Chauhan. 2009.*Sourcebook of Paleolithic Transitions: Methods, Theories, and Interpretations*. New York: Springer.

Cavalli-Sforza, Luigi Luca. 2001. *Genes, Peoples and Languages*. Translated by Mark Seielstad. London: Penguin Books.

Chaubey *et al* 2006: Chaubey, Gyaneshwer, Mait Metspalu, Toomas Kivisild and Richard Villems. 2006. Peopling of South Asia: investigating the caste–tribe continuum in India. *BioEssays*, 29: 91–100. DOI: 10.1002/bies.20525

Chauhan, Hari and Maheshwar P. Joshi. 2017. Petroglyphs, rock paintings and symbolic behaviour: Recent discoveries in Himachal Pradesh (A preliminary study). *In*: Hari Chauhan (ed.), *Rediscovering Spiti*: *A Historical and Archaeological Study*: 14-39. Shimla: State Museum.

Chauhan *et al* 2017: Chauhan, Hari, Surender Kumar, Narendra Kumar and VikasBaniyal. 2017. Newly discovered Palaeoliths from the Spiti Valley (Himachal Pradesh): A preliminary study. *In*: Hari Chauhan (ed.), *Rediscovering Spiti*: *A Historical and Archaeological Study*: 1-13. Shimla: State Museum.

Chauhan, Parth R. 2007. Soanian cores and core-tools from Toka, Northern India: Towards a new typo-technological organization. *Journal of Anthropological Archaeology*, 26: 412–441.

Clark, Grahame. 1977 (1961). *World Prehistory: In New Perspective*. Third Edition. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Chomsky, Noam. 2006. *Language and Mind*. Third Edition. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Corvinus, Gudrun. 2007. *Prehistoric Cultures in Nepal: From the Early Palaeolithic to the Neolithic and the Quaternary Geology of the Dang-Deokhuri Dun Valleys*, Vol. 1 (text) and Vol. 2 (Plates). Wiesbaden: HarrassowitzVerlag.

Creanza *et al* 2015: Creanza, Nicole, Merritt Ruhlen, Trevor J. Pemberton, Noah A. Rosenberg, Marcus W. Feldman, and Sohini Ramachandran. 2015. A comparison of worldwide phonemic and genetic variation in human populations. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences (PNAS)* 112 (5): 1265–1272. DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1424033112

Current Anthropology, Volume 58, Supplement 17, December 2017. *Human Colonization of Asia in the Late Pleistocene*. Wenner-Gren Symposium Supplement 17.

Davidson, Iain and William Noble. 1989. The archaeology of perception: traces of depiction and language. *Current Anthropology*, 30 (2): 125-155.

Deacon, Terrence W. 1997. *The Symbolic Species: the Co-evolution of Language and the Brain.* New York: W. W. Norton & Company.

d'Errico *et al* 2003: d'Errico, Francesco, Christopher Henshilwood, Graeme Lawson, Marian Vanhaeren, Anne-Marie Tillier, Marie Soressi, Frédérique Bresson, Bruno Maureille, April Nowell, Joseba Lakarra, Lucinda Backwell and Michèle Julien. 2003. Archaeological evidence for the emergence of language, symbolism, and music—an alternative multidisciplinary perspective. *Journal of World Prehistory*, 17 (1): 1-70.

d'Errico, Francesco and Marian Vanhaeren. 2009. Earliest personal ornaments and their signifcance for the origin of language debate. *In*: Rudolf Botha and Chris Knight (eds.), *The Cradle of Language*: 16-40. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

d'Errico, Francesco and Marian Vanhaeren. 2012. Linguistic implications of the the earliest personal ornaments. *In*: Maggi Tallerman and Kathleen R. Gibson (eds.), *The Oxford Handbook of Language Evolution*: 299-302. Oxford: Oxford University Press

DeMarrais, Elizabeth .2011. Figuring the group. *Cambridge Archaeological Journal*, 21 (2): 165-86.

Demattè, Paola.2010. The Origins of Chinese Writing: the Neolithic Evidence. *Cambridge Archaeological Journal*, 20: 211-228. DOI: 10.1017/S0959774310000247

Dennell, R.W., H. M. Rendell and E. Hailwood.1988. Late Pliocene Artefacts from Northern Pakistan. *Current Anthropology*, 29 (3): 495-498.

Dennell, R.W. 2009. *The Palaeolithic Settlement of Asia*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Dennell, Robin and Michael D. Petraglia.2012. The dispersal of Homo sapiens across southern Asia: how early, how often, how complex? *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 47: 15-22.

de Terra, H. and T.T. Paterson.1939. *Studies on the Ice Age in India and Associated Human Cultures*. Washington: Carnegie Institute Publication No. 493.

Dowad, Michael and TseringNorbu. 2017. Spiti River Valley rock art: A preliminary study. *In*: Hari Chauhan (ed.), *Rediscovering Spiti*: *A Historical and Archaeological Study*: 40-102. Shimla: State Museum.

Drocco, Andrea. 2016. Some preliminary observations about Baṅgāṇī pronominal and nominal declension. *Linguistica e Filologia*, 36: 69-98.

Dunbar, Robin. 2003. The Social Brain: Mind, Language, and Society in Evolutionary Perspective. *Annual Review of Anthropology*, (32): 163-181.

Endicott *et al* 2007: Endicott, Phillip, Mait Metspalu and Toomas Kivisild. 2007. Genetic evidence on modern human dispersals in South Asia: Y chromosome and mitochondrial DNA perspectives: *The world through the eyes of two haploid genomes. In*: Michael D. Petraglia and Bridget Allchin (eds.), *The Evolution and History of Human Populations in South Asia Inter-disciplinary Studies in Archaeology, Biological Anthropology, Linguistics and Genetics*: 229–44. Dordrecht: Springer.

Erdosy, George. 1997 (1995). Language, material culture and ethnicity: theoretical perspective. *In*: George Erdosy (ed.), *The Indo-Aryans of Ancient South Asia*: *Language, Material Culture and Ethnicity*: 1-31. New Delhi: MunshiramManoharlal Publishers.

Fortier, Jana. 2009.*Kings of the Forest*: *The Cultural Resilience of Himalayan Hunter-Gatherers*. Honolulu: University of Hawai Press.

Fuller, Dorian. 2003. An agricultural perspective on Dravidian historical linguistics: archaeological crop packages, livestock and Dravidian crop vocabulary. *In*: Peter Bellwood and Colin Renfrew (eds.), *Examining the Farming/Language Dispersal Hypothesis*: 191-213. Cambridge: The McDonald Institute for Archaeological Research.

___. 2007. Non-human genetics, agricultural origins and historical linguistics in South Asia. *In*: Michael D. Petraglia and Bridget Allchin (eds.), *The Evolution and History of Human Populations in South Asia*: *Inter-disciplinary Studies in Archaeology, Biological Anthropology, Linguistics and Genetics*: 393-443. Dordrecht: Springer.

Fuller *et al* 2011: Fuller, Dorian, Nicole Boivin, Tom Hoogervorst and Robin Allaby. 2011. Across the Indian Ocean: the prehistoric movement of plants and animals. *Antiquity*, 85: 544-58.

Gaillard *et al* 2008: Gaillard, Claire, Mukesh Singh and Kulbhushan Kumar Rishi. 2008. Technological analysis of the Acheulian assemblage from Atbarapur in the Siwalik Range (Hoshiarpur District, Punjab). *Manand Environment*, XXXIII (2): 1-14.

Gaillard *et al* 2016: Gaillard, Claire, Mukesh Singh, Anne Dambricourt Malassé, Vipnesh Bhardwaj, BaldevKarir, Amandeep Kaur, Surinder Pal, Anne-Marie Moigne, Cécile Chapon Sao, Salah Abdessadok, Julien Gargani and Alina Tudrynd. 2016. The lithic industries on the fossiliferous outcrops of the Late Pliocene Masol Formation, Siwalik Frontal Range, northwestern India (Punjab). C. R. Palevol (2016), http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.crpv.2015.09.017

Gell-Mann, Murray and Merritt Ruhlen. 2011. The origin and evolution of word order. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 108 (42): 17290-17295. www.pnas.org/cgi/doi/10.1073/pnas.1113716108

Gerber, Pascal. 2017. The Dene-Kusunda hypothesis: a critical account. *Man in India*, 97 (1): 111–204. file:///C:/Users/user/Desktop/gerber-dene-kusunda-hypothesis.pdf

Gray *et al* 2011: Gray, Russell D., Quentin D. Atkinson and Simon J. Greenhill. 2011. Language evolution and human history: what a difference a date makes. *In*: Andrew Whiten, Robert A. Hinde, Christopher B. Stringer and Kevin N. Laland (eds.), *CultureEvolves*, 366 (1567): 1090-1100. London: Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B. DOI:10.1098/rstb.2010.0378

Harmand *et al* 2015:Harmand, Sonia, Jason E. Lewis, Craig S. Feibel, Christopher J. Lepre, Sandrine Prat, Arnaud Lenoble, Xavier Boës, Rhonda L.Quinn, Michel Brenet, Adrian Arroyo, Nicholas Taylor, Sophie Clément, Guillaume Daver, Jean-Philip Brugal, Louise Leakey, Richard A. Mortlock, James D. Wright, Sammy Lokorodi, Christopher Kirwa, Dennis V. Kent and Hélène Roche. 2015. 3.3-million-year-old stone tools from Lomekwi 3, West Turkana, Kenya. *Nature*, 521: 310-15 [310-26]. -DOI: 10.1038/nature14464.

Hays-Gilpin, Kelley. 2012. Engendering rock art. *In*: Jo McDonald and Peter Veth (eds.), *A Companion to Rock Art*: 199-213. West Sussex: Blackwell Publishing Ltd.

Henn *et al* 2012: Henn, Brenna M., L. L. Cavalli-Sforza and Marcus W. Feldman. 2012. The great human expansion. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* (*PNAS*), 109 (44): 17758–17764. DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1212380109

Henshilwood *et al* 2002: Henshilwood, Christopher S., Francesco d'Errico, Royden Yates, Zenobia Jacobs, Chantal Tribolo, Geoff A. T. Duller, Norbert Mercier, Judith C. Sealy, Helene Valladas, Ian Watts and Ann G. Wintle. 2002. Emergence of modern human behavior: Middle Stone Age engravings from South Africa. *Science*, 295: 1278-1280.

Henshilwood, Christopher S. and Curtis W. Marean. 2003. The origin of modern human behavior: critique of the Models and their test implications. *Current Anthropology*, 44 (5): 627-51.

Henshilwood, Christopher Stuart and Benoît Dubreul. 2009. Reading the artifacts: gleaning language skills from the Middle Stone Age in southern Africa. *In*: Rudolf Botha and Chris Knight (eds.), *The Cradle of Language*: 41-61. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Huisheng, Tang. 1995. Chinese pictographic characters and rock art. *NORA*: *InternationalNewsletteron Rock Art*, 11: 13-18.

IAR 1977-78:*Indian Archaeology 1977-78 – A Review.*

Isaac, Glynn. 1976. Stages of cultural elaboration in the Pleistocene: possible archaeological indicators of the development of language capabilities. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 280 (1): 275-288.

James, Hannah V.A. 2007. The emergence of modern human behavior in South Asia: *A review of the current evidence and discussion of its possible implications* [italics in original]. *In*: Michael D. Petraglia and Bridget Allchin (eds.), *The Evolution and History of Human Populations in South Asia*: *Inter-disciplinary Studies in Archaeology, Biological Anthropology, Linguistics and Genetics*: 201-27. Dordrecht: Springer.

Johansson, Sverker. 2006. Constraining the time when language evolved. *In*: Angelo Cangelosy, Andrew D.M. Smith and Kenny Smith (eds.), *The Evolution of Language*: Proceedings of the 6th International Conference (EVOLANG6): 152-59. Singapore: World Scientific Publishing Co.

Joshi, Maheshwar P. 1974. Newly discovered painted rock shelters from Kumaon. *In*: G. M. Bhattacharya (ed.), *Summaries of Papers.* All India Oriental Conference, XXVII Session:219-20.Kurukshetra: Kurukshetra University.

___. 1981. Prehistoric remains from Kumaon. Paper presented to the Silver Jubilee Year Conference, Department of Ancient Indian History, Culture and Archaeology, Allahabad: Allahabad University.

___. 1987. Dots, cup-marks and pits vis-à-vis megaliths: new evidenc-
    es from Kumaon. *Puratattva*, 16: 25-28.

___. 2008. Prehistoric cultures of Western Himalaya: some enigmatic
    issues. *In*: Hari Chauhan (ed.), *Cultural Heritage of Himalaya*: 1-19.
    Chamba: Bhuri Singh Museum.

_____. 2014. The Bhārata/Jāgara of Maulā alias JiyāRānī as Narrated
    in Doti (Far Western Nepal) and Uttarakhand (India): Text and
    context. *European Bulletin of Himalayan Research*, 44: 9-38.

___. 2017. The horse and rider in the rock drawings of Spiti. *In*: Hari
    Chauhan (ed.), *Rediscovering Spiti*: *A Historical and Archaeological
    Study*: 119-50. Shimla: State Museum.

___. 2014: In press. Rock paintings of Central Himalaya and symbolic
    cognition: a new look at prehistoric rock paintings of South Asia.
    Ancient India: *Bulletin of the Archaeological Survey of India*, New Se-
    ries, Number2 & 3.

___. 2017: In press. Cognition: Some aspects of symbolism in rock
    drawings of Central Himalaya. National Seminar on Theoretical
    and Cognitive Aspects of Rock Art, 3rd-5th April, 2017 at IGNCA,
    New Delhi.

___. Forthcoming. *Cognition and Archaeology*: *Global Perspective on
    Himalaya Before the Neolithic* (*With a Special Reference to Petroglyphs
    and Rock Paintings*).

Joshi *et al* 2015. Joshi, Maheshwar P., Vijay Bahuguna, Kalyan Singh
    Rawat, C.P. Fuloriya, S.C. Tamta, D.N. Dimri, K.C. Nauriyal and
    Piyush Bhatt. 2015. Prehistoric rock engravings and painting:
    New discoveries in Uttarakhand Himalaya. *Manimahesh: A Journal
    of Himalayan Studies*, 6: 1-10.

Joshi *et al* 2017: Maheshwar P. Joshi, Hari Chauhan, Vijay Bahuguna,
    D.N. Dimri and K.C. Nauriyal. 2017. Petroglyphs and rock paint-
    ings of Uttarakhand and Himachal Pradesh: A semiotic study. *In*:
    Sadasiba Pradhan and Dibisat B. Garnayak, *Rock Art in India*, Vol.
    II: 447-67. New Delhi: B.R. Publishing Corporation.

Jośī, Maheśvara Prasāda.2011. *Śūdroṁ kā Brāhmaṇattva*: *Madhya
    Himālayī Anubhava*. Dehradun: Śrī Yugaśaila Kalyāṇa Samiti
    (raji.).

Kandinsky, V. 1977. *Concerning the Spiritual in Art*. (Translated by
    M.T.H.   Sadler).   New   York: Dover   Publication
    (http://www.webexhibits.org/pigments/indiv/color/whites.ht
    ml).

Kane, PandurangVaman. 1953. *History of Dharmaśāstra* (*Ancient and
    Mediaeval Religious and Civil Law*), Vol. IV. Poona: Bhandarkar
    Oriental Research Institute.

Kinsella, Anna R. 2009. *Language Evolution and Syntactic Theory*. Cam-
    bridge: Cambridge University Press.

Kivisild *et al* 2003: Kivisild, Toomas, Siiri Rootsi, Mait Metspalu, Ene Metspalu, Juri Parik, Katrin Kaldma, Esien Usanga, Sarabjit Mastana, Surinder S. Papiha and Richard Villems. 2003. *In*: Peter Bellwood and Colin Renfrew (eds.), *Examining the Farming/Language Dispersal Hypothesis*: 215-22. Cambridge: The McDonald Institute for Archaeological Research.

Knight, Chris. 2009. Language, ochre, and the rule of law. *In*: Rudolf Botha and Chris Knight (eds.), *The Cradle of Language*:281-303. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Kumar, Vikrant and B. Mohan Reddy. 2003. Status of Austro-Asiatic groups in the peopling of India: An exploratory study based on the available prehistoric, linguistic and biological evidences. *Journal of Biosciences*, 28 (4): 507–522.

Layton, Robert. 2012. Rock art, identity, and indigeneity. *In*: Jo McDonald and Peter Veth (eds.), *A Companion to Rock Art*: 439-54. West Sussex: Blackwell Publishing Ltd.

Leroi-Gourhan, André. 1968. *The Art of Prehistoric Man in Western Europe*. Translated by Norbert Guterman. London: Thames and Hudson.

___. 1993 (1964). *Gesture and Speech.* Translated from the French [*Le Geste et la parole*, 1964] by Anna Bostock Berger and introduced by Randall White. Cambridge, Massachusetts: An October Book, The MIT Press .

Lewis-Williams, J. David. 1981. The thin red line: Southern San notions and rock paintings of supernatural potency. *The South African Archaeological Bulletin*, 36: 5-13.

___. 2012 (2002). *The Mind in the Cave*: *Consciousness and the Origins of Art.* Reprinted paperback edition. London: Thames & Hudson.

Liberman, Philip. 2013. *The Unpredictable Species: What Makes Humans Unique*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.

___. 2016. The evolution of language and thought. *Journal of Anthropological Sciences*, 94: 127-146. DOI: 10.4436/jass.94029

Li, Heng and Richard Durbin. 2011. Inference of human population history from whole genome sequence of a single individual. *Nature*, 475 (7357): 493–496. DOI: 10.1038/nature10231

Majumder, Partha P. 2010. The human genetic history of South Asia. *Current Biology*, 20: 184–187. DOI 10.1016/j.cub.2009.11.053

Malafouris, Lambros. 2013. *How Things Shape the Mind: A Theory of Material Engagement*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: The MIT Press.

Malassé, Anne Dambricourt and Claire Gaillard. 2010. Relations between climatic changes and prehistoric human migrations during Holocene between Gissar Range, Pamir, Hindu Kush and Kashmir: The archaeological and ecological data. *Quaternary International*, xxx: 1-9. DOI: 10.1016/j.quaint.2010.04.001

Malassé *et al* 2016: Malassé, Anne Dambricourt, Mukesh Singh, BaldevKarir, Claire Gaillard, Vipnesh Bhardwaj, Anne-Marie Moigne, Salah Abdessadok, Cécile Chapon Sao, Julien Gargani, Alina Tudryn, Thomas Calligaro, Amandeep Kaur, Surinder Pal, Manjil Hazarika. 2016. Anthropic activities in the fossiliferous Quranwala Zone, 2.6 Ma, Siwaliks of Northwest India, historical context of the discovery and scientific investigations. C. R. Palevol (2016). http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.crpv.2015.06.004

Marwick, B. 2003. Pleistocene exchange networks as evidence for the evolution of language. *Cambridge Archaeological Journal*,13 (1): 67–81.

McBrearty, Sally and Alison S. Brooks. 2000. The revolution that wasn't: a new interpretation of the origin of modern human behavior. *Journal of Human Evolution*, 39: 453–563.

McNiven, Ian J. and Liam M. Brady. 2012. Rock art and seascapes. *In*: Jo McDonald and Peter Veth (eds.), *A Companion to Rock Art*: 71-89. West Sussex: Blackwell Publishing Ltd.

Mellars, Paul. 2004. Neanderthals and the modern human colonization of Europe. *Nature*, 432: 461- 65.

___. 2006. Going east: new genetic and archaeological perspectives on the modern human colonization of Eurasia. *Science*, 313: 796–800.

Mellars *et al* 2013: Mellars, Paul, Kevin C. Goric, Martin Carre, Pedro A. Soaresg and Martin B. Richardse. 2013. Genetic and archaeological perspectives on the initial modern human colonization of . *Materials for a Tentative Reconstruction of the Religious and Cultural Stratigraphy of Ancient Swat*. Ph. D. Thesis. Universität Berlin.

Paterson, T.T. 1939. Prehistory of the Potwar and Indus regions. *In*: De Terra, H. and T.T. Paterson. *Studies on the Ice Age in India and Associated Human Cultures*: 310-12. Washington: Carnegie Institute Publication No. 493.

Petraglia *et al* 2009: Petraglia, Michael, Christopher Clarkson, Nicole Boivin, Michael Haslama, Ravi Korisettar, Gyaneshwer Chaubey, Peter Ditchfield, Dorian Fuller, Hannah James, Sacha Jones, Toomas Kivisild, Jinu Koshy, Marta Mirazón Lahr, Mait Metspalu, Richard Roberts, and Lee Arnold. 2009. Population increase and environmental deterioration correspond with microlithic innovations in South Asia ca. 35,000 years ago. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 106 (30): 12261-12266. www.pnas.org/cgi/content/short/1306043110.

Petraglia *et al* 2010: Petraglia, Michael D., Michael Haslam, Dorian Q. Fuller, Nicole Boivin and Chris Clarkson. 2010. Out of Africa: new hypotheses and evidence for the dispersal of Homo sapiens along the Indian Ocean rim. *Annals of Human Biology*, 37(3): 288–311.

Petru, Simona. 2008. Colour, form, animals and deception in the ice age. *Documenta Praehistorica*, XXXV: 227-35.

Phartiyal *et al* 2009: Phartiyal, Binita, Anupam Sharma, Pradeep Srivastava and Yogesh Ray. 2009. Chronology of relict lake deposits in the Spiti River, NW Trans Himalaya: Implications to Late Pleistocene–Holocene climate-tectonic perturbations. *Geomorphology*, 108: 264–72. DOI: 10.1016/j.geomorph.2009.02.018

Piazza, Alberto and Luigi Cavalli-Sforza.2006. Diffusion of genes and languages in human evolution. *In*: Angelo Cangelosy, Andrew D.M. Smith and Kenny Smith (eds.), *The Evolution of Language*: Proceedings of the 6th International Conference (EVOLANG6): 255-66. Singapore: World Scientific Publishing Co.

Pohle, Perdita. 2003. Petroglyphs and abandoned sites in Mustang. A unique source for research in cultural history and historical geography. *Ancient Nepal*, 153: 1-14.

Possehl, Gregory L. 2007. Thoughts on the evolution and history of human populations in South Asia. *In*: Petraglia, Michael D. and Bridget Allchin (eds.).2007. *The Evolution and History of Human Populations in South Asia*: *Inter-disciplinary Studies in Archaeology, Biological Anthropology, Linguistics and Genetics*: 447-59. Dordrecht: Springer.

Power, Camilla. 2004. Women in prehistoric art. *In*: G Berghaus (ed.), *New Perspectives on Prehistoric Art*: 75-103. Westport, CT/London: Praeger.

Rappaport, Roy A.1999. *Ritual and Religion in the Making of Humanity*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Rasmussen, Morten *et al* (57 co-authors). 2011. An aboriginal Australian genome reveals separate human dispersals into Asia. *Science*, 334: 94-98. www.sciencemag.org

Rastogi, Kavita. 2017. Raji: Challenges of preservation and revitalization. *In*: B.K. Joshi and Maheshwar P. Joshi (eds.), *Unfolding Central Himalaya*: *The Cradle of Culture*: 99-113. Dehradun: Doon Library and Research Centre and Almora: Almora Book Depot.

Rendell, Hellen M and R.D. Dennell. 1985. Dated Lower Palaeolithic artifacts from northern Pakistan. *Current Anthropology*, 26: 393.

Renfrew, Colin. 1987. *Archaeology and Language: The Puzzle of Indo-European Origins.* Jonathan Cape, London.

___.1992. Archaeology, genetics and linguistic diversity. *Man*, New Series, 27 (3): 445-478.

___.1994. World linguistic diversity. *Scientific American,* January 1994: 116-23.

___.2001. Symbol before concept: material engagement and the early development of society. *In*: Ian Hodder (ed.), *Archaeological Theory Today*: 122-40. Cambridge: Polity Press.

___.2008. *Prehistory*: *The Making of the Human Mind*. E-book. New York: The Modern Library.

Rivett-Carnac, J.H. 1877. Rough notes on some ancient sculpturing on rocks in Kumaon similar to those found in monoliths and rocks in Europe. *Journal of Asiatic Society of Bengal*, XLVI (1): 1-15.

Rozwadowski, Andrzej. 2012. Shamanism in indigenous context: understanding Siberian rock art. *In*: Jo McDonald and Peter Veth (eds.), *A Companion to Rock Art*: 455-71. West Sussex: Blackwell Publishing Ltd.

Sankalia, H.D. 1974. *The Prehistory and Protohistory of India and Pakistan*. Poona: Deccan College Postgraduate and Research Institute.

Sankhyan, Anek R. 2013. The Emergence of *Homosapiens* in South Asia: The Central Narmada Valley as witness. *Human Biology Review*, 2 (2): 136-152.

Sharma, A.K. 1996. *Early Man in Eastern Himalayas* (*North-East India and Nepal*). New Delhi: Agam Books International.

Sharma, T.C. 1974. Recent archaeological discoveries in North-Eastern India. *Puratattva*, 7: 17-19. 1974;

___. 1979. Prehistoric archaeology in North Eastern India – a review of progress. *In*: T. C. Sharma and D.N. Majumdar (eds.), *Eastern Himalayas* (*A Study on Anthropology and Tradition*): 102-35. New Delhi: Cosmo Publications.

Sharma, D.D. 1983. Preservation of Old Indo-Aryan dialects in the Mid-Himalayas. *Nepalese Linguistics*, 2: 45-51.

_____. 2003. *Munda*: *Sub-stratum of Tibeto-Himalayan Languages*. New Delhi: Mittal Publications.

Sidwell, Paul. 2015. The Austroasiatic language phylum: A typology of phonological restructuring. *In*: Claire Bowern and Bethwyn Evans (eds.), *The Routledge Handbook of Historical Linguistics*: 675-703. Oxon: Routledge.

Singh, Bhagwan. 1997. Birth of civilization: Indian viewpoint. *Purātattva*, 27: 74-84.

Southworth, Franklin C. 1997 [1995]. Reconstructing social context from language: Indo-Aryan and Dravidian prehistory. *In*: George Erdosy (ed.), *The Indo-Aryans of Ancient South Asia*: *Language, Material Culture and Ethnicity*: 258-77. New Delhi: MunshiramManoharlal Publishers.

___. 2005. *Linguistic Archaeology of South Asia*. London and New York: RoutledgeCurzon, Taylor & Francis Group.

Staal, J.F.1963. Sanskrit and sanskritization. *Journal of Asian Studies*, 22 (3): 261-75.

Stout, Dietrich. 2010. Possible relations between language and technology in human evolution. *In*: April Nowell and Iain Davidson

(eds.), *Stone Tools and the Evolution of Human Cognition*: 159-84. Boulder: University Press of Colorado.

Tewari *et al* (eds.) 2007-2008: Tewari, Rakesh, KripaShankerSaraswat and Girish Chandra Singh (eds.). 2007-2008. *Proceedings of the International Seminar*: '*First Farmers in Global Perspective*' (Lucknow 18-20 January, 2006). *Prāgdhārā*, 18. Lucknow: U.P. State Archaeology Department.

Tomasello, Michael. 2003. On the different origins of symbols and grammar. *In*: Morten H. Christiansen and Simon Kirby (eds.), *Language Evolution*: 94-110. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Turin, Mark and Bettina Zeisler (eds.). 2011. *Himalayan Languages and Linguistics*: *Studies in Phonology, Semantics, Morphology and Syntax*. Leiden: Brill.

van Driem, George. 2001. *Language of the Himalayas*: *An Ethnolinguistic Handbook of the Greater Himalayan Region Containing an Introdution to the Symbiotic Theory of Language*. Leiden: Brill.

___. 2008. Reflections on the ethnolinguistic prehistory of the Greater Himalayan Region. *In*: Brigitte Huber, Marianne Volkart and Paul Widmer (eds.), *Chomolangma, Demawend und Kasbek: Festschrift für Roland Bielmeierzuseinem 65: 39-59. Geburtstag (2 vols.).* Halle: International Institute for Tibetan and Buddhist Studies.

___. 2011. Lost in the sands of time somewhere north of the Bay of Bengal. *In*: Mark Turin and Bettina Zeisler (eds.), *Himalayan Languages and Linguistics: Studies in Phonology, Semantics, Morphology and Syntax*: 13-38. Leiden: Brill.

___. 2012. Glimpses of the ethnolinguistic prehistory of northeastern India. *In*: Toni Huber and Stuart Blackburn, (eds.), *Origins and Migrations in the Extended Eastern Himalayas*: 187-211. Leiden:Brill.

___. 2013. East Asian Ethnolinguistic Phylogeography. *Bulletin of Chinese Linguistics*, 7 (1): 135-188.

Vajda, Eduard J. 2012. *Yeniseian Peoples and Language. A History of Yeniseian Studies with an Annotated Bibliography and a SourceGuide*. New York: Routledge.

Verma, B.C. 1975. Occurrence of Lower Palaeolithic artefacts in the Pinjor member (Lower Pleistocene) of Himachal Pradesh. *Journal of Geological Society of India*, 16 (4): 518-521.

___. 1991. Siwalik Stone Age culture. *Current Science,* 61 (8): 496.

Verma, Niraj Kumar, Manoj Kumar Saxena, Maheshwar P. Joshi, Syed Jamal Hasan and D.N. Dimri. 2012. Newly discovered palaeoliths from Uttarakhand Himalaya, India. *Manimahesh: A Journal of Himalayan Studies,* 2: 39-44.

Vernier, Martin.2016. Zamthang, epicentre of Zanskar's rock art heritage. *Revue d'EtudesTibétaines*, no. 35, April 2016: 53-105.

Wadley, Lyn. 2010. Compound-adhesive manufacture as a behavioral proxy for complex cognitionin the Middle Stone Age. *Current Anthropology*, 51 (Supplement 1): S111- S119.

Watchman, Alan. 1997. Paleolithic marks: Archaeometric perspectives. *In*: Margaret W. Conkey, Olga Soffer, Deborah Stratmann and Nina G. Jablonski (eds.), *Beyond Art: Pleistocene Image and Symbol*: 21-36. Wattis Symposium Series in Anthropology, Memoirs of the California Academy of Sciences, Number 23. California, San Francisco.

Watters, David E. 2006. *Notes on Kusunda Grammar*: *A Language Isolate of Nepal. Himalayan Linguistics*: Archaive 3: 1-182.

Watts, Ian. 2009. Red ochre, body painting, and language: interpreting the Blombos ochre. *In*: Rudolf Botha andKnight, Chris (eds.), *The Cradle of Language*: 62-92. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

White, Randall. 1993. Introduction [to the first English translation of *Le Geste et la parole*]. *In*: André Leroi-Gourhan. 1993 (1964). *Gesture and Speech.* Translated from the French [*Le Geste et la parole*, 1964] by Anna Bostock Berger and introduced by Randall White. Cambridge, Massachusetts: An October Book, The MIT Press

Whitehouse *et al* 2004: Whitehouse, Paul, Timothy Usher, Merritt Ruhlen and William S.-Y. Wang. 2004. Kusunda: An Indo-Pacific language in Nepal. *PNAS*, 101 (No. 15): 5692-95. www.pnas.org/cgi/doi/10.1073/pnas.0400233101

Witzel, Michael. 1997 [1995]. Early Indian history: linguistic and textual parameters. *In*: George Erdosy (ed.), *The Indo-Aryans of Ancient South Asia*: *Language, Material Culture and Ethnicity*: 85-125. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal Publishers.

Wynn, Thomas. 1991. Tools, grammar and the archaeology of cognition. *Cambridge Archaeological Journal*, 1 (2): 191-206.

___. 2000. Symmetry and the evolution of the modular linguistic mind. *In*: Peter Carruthers and Andrew Chamberlain (eds.), *Evolution and the Human Mind: Modularity, Language and Metacognition*: 113-39. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Zegura, Stephen L. 2008. Current topics in human evolutionary genetics. *In*: John D. Bengtson (ed.), *In Hot Pursuit of Language in Prehistory: Essays in the four fields of anthropology. In honor of Harold Crane Fleming*: 343-57. Amsterdam / Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company.

Zilhão, João. 2007. The emergence of ornaments and art: an archaeological perspective on the origins of "behavioral modernity". *Journal of Archaeological Research*, 15 (1): 1 – 54.

Zoller, Claus Peter. 1988. Bericht über besondere Archaismenim Bangani, einer Western Pahari-Sprache. *Münchener Studien zur Sprachwissenschaft*, 49:173-200.

___. 1989. Bericht über grammatische Archaismenim Bangani. *Münchener Studien zur Sprachwissenschaft*, 50: 159-218.

___. 2007. Is Bangani a V2 Language? *European Bulletin of Himalayan Research*, 31: 83-141.

___.2008. Genitive marking of subjects in West Pahari. *ActaOrientalia*, 69: 121-151.

___. 2016. *Proto Indo-European – Indo-Aryan – Himalayan Aryan Languages: New Perspectives on Some Old Questions*. Dehradun: Doon Library and Research Centre & M/s Bishen Singh Mahendra Pal Singh.

❖
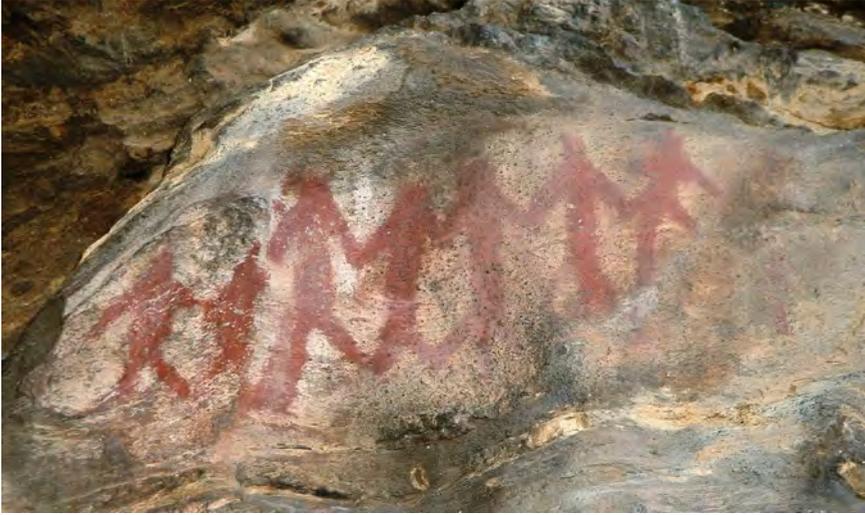
Pl. 1: Lakhu-udyar, horizontal orientation of human figures.

Pl. 2: Lwethap, horizontal orientation of human figures.

Pl. 3: Phalsima, horizontal orientation of human figures.
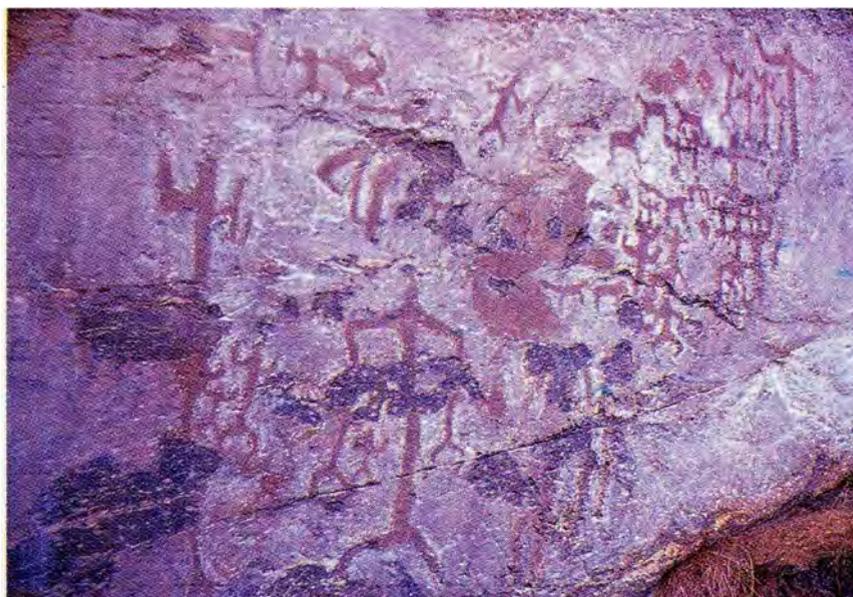
Pl. 4: Gvarkhyavadyar, human figures jumbled up in conglomeration.

Pl. 5. Ghatgarh rock shelter, human figures jumbled up in conglomeration.
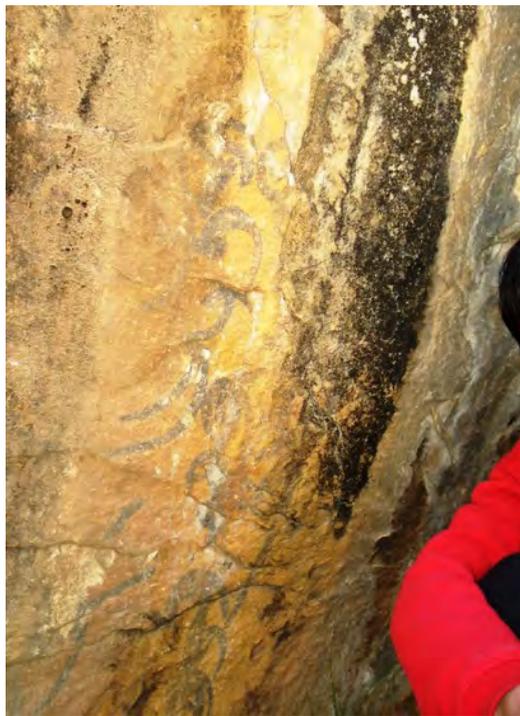
Pl. 6. Hudoli, perpendicular row of hieroglyph-like motifs.

Pl. 7: Phalsima, alignments of short lines.

Pl. 8. Lakhu-Udyar above Forest Checkpoint, vulvas.

Pl. 9. LakhuUdyar, imposing rock shelter above Forest Checkpoint, alignments of short lines.

Pl. 10: LakhuUdyar, imposing rock shelter above Forest Checkpoint, long wavering red line.
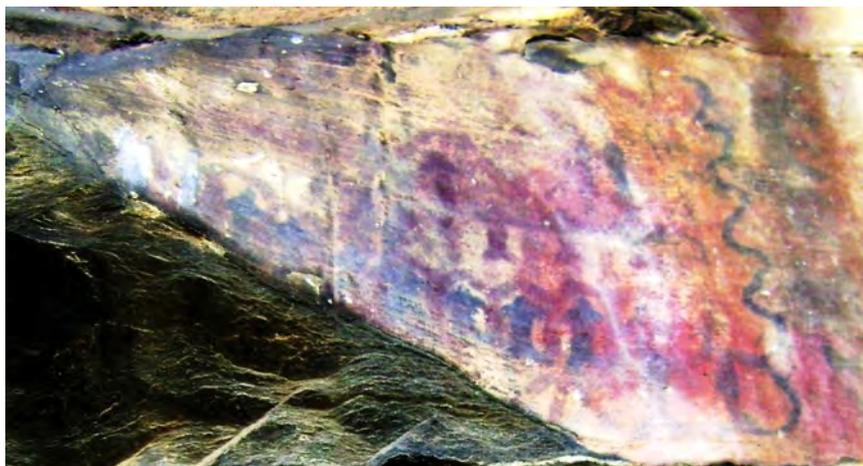
Pl. 11: Pethsal, conically roofed pyramidal motif.

Pl. 12. Phalsima, beheaded human figures in black.

Pl. 13. Lwethap, lower rock shelter, red lines associated with human figures.

.

Pl. 14: LakhuUdyar, red lines associated with human figures.

❖

The Hybridity of Buddhism — Contemporary Encounters between Tibetan and Chinese Traditions in Taiwan and the Mainland, edited by Fabienne Jagou, Etudes thématiques vol. 29, Ecole Française d'Extrême-Orient, 2018, 236 pages. ISBN 978-2-85539-149-6.

Compte-rendu par
Jean-Luc Achard
(CNRS, CRCAO)

Les études sino-tibétologiques ont depuis quelques années bénéficié de travaux extrêmement importants, en particulier dans le domaine du Bouddhisme, et plus précisément dans celui de l'influence exercée par le Bouddhisme Tibétain sur la société chinoise contemporaine. Le présent volume s'inscrit parfaitement dans cette perspective, en présentant un ensemble de travaux pertinents qui contribuent à l'approfondissement de notre compréhension de ce sujet en pleine évolution. Le thème n'est certes pas nouveau, mais son traitement sous la direction de F. Jagou (EFEO) permet d'aborder des thématiques particulières qui montrent que, en comparaison des études précédentes qui abordaient ce sujet d'une manière somme toute plus générale et plus synthétique à la fois, on est maintenant passé à une étape d'analyses plus détaillées sur des thèmes manifestement plus ciblés.

L'ouvrage s'ouvre sur une savante introduction de F. Jagou (p. 11-21) qui retrace la genèse du projet, à commencer par un intéressant rappel des contributions taïwanaises à l'histoire de la diffusion du Bouddhisme Tibétain à Taiwan même.

Le volume lui-même est divisé en deux parties principales (non mentionnées comme telles cependant) consacrées à l'influence et à la présence du Bouddhisme Tibétain 1. à Taiwan proprement dit, et 2. en Chine continentale, respectivement à proportion d'un tiers et de deux tiers de l'ensemble.

Le premier article (Cécile Campergue, p. 21-40) rappelle un certain nombre de fondamentaux relatifs à la nature à la fois laïque et religieuse de la société taïwanaise, et présente une série d'analyses de l'impact du Bouddhisme Tibétain sur le pays : impact religieux, mais également politique et économique. D'autres problématiques sont abordées dans le deuxième article (l'architecture et la distribution géographique des temples tibétains à Taïwan, Sarah E. Fraser, p. 41-65), ainsi que dans le troisième (Fabienne Jagou, p. 67-89), consacré à

la tradition des reliques. Les deux exemples discutés par Jagou sont celui de Changkya Qutuγtu (un important hiérarque dge lugs pa), et celui de Gongga Laoren dont il est également question dans l'article de Fraser (p. 53-54), ainsi que dans le quatrième (Cody R. Bahir [p. 91-108], p. 94-95, etc.) portant sur une forme syncrétique de Bouddhisme qui semble de toute évidence surfer sur une "mode" tibétaine n'ayant de tantrique d'un pâle vernis opportun.

Le cinquième article (E. Bianchi, p. 109–131) est consacré au système du Dayuanman (大圓滿) ou rDzogs chen en tibétain, tel qu'il a été enseigné par mKhan po 'Jigs phun ('Jigs med phun tshogs, 1933–2004), l'incarnation principale de Las rab gling pa (gTer ston bSod rgyal, 1856–1926). L'influence de ce maître sur tout le mouvement du Dayuanman dans le monde chinois contemporain n'est pas sans rappeler celle de Gangs dkar rin po che (1893–1957) dans la première partie du 20e siècle, même si le rôle joué par ce dernier est incontestablement sans commune mesure avec celui du mKhan po.

Les deux articles suivants (M.M. Turek, p. 133-158 ; et Y. Huang, p. 159-176) présentent des études sur deux traditions internes de l'école bKa' brgyud pa, l'une concernée par un *revival* de l'école Barom Kagyü au Khams proprement dit, et l'autre associée au phénomène de possession par des esprits, dans le contexte de la tradition Karma Kagyü à Taïwan. Le dernier article (C. Hsiao, p. 177-187) propose une passionnante biographie de Ouyang Wuwei Lama, le fondateur des études tibétologiques à Taïwan.

L'ouvrage bénéficie d'une seule bibliographie pour toutes les contributions, ainsi qu'un index thématique fort utile.

L'ensemble du volume est remarquablement équilibré et agrémenté d'illustrations en couleur de grande qualité. On ne peut que féliciter F. Jagou pour le professionnalisme de son travail d'éditrice qui est véritablement un modèle du genre. Aussi les remarques conclusives du présent compte-rendu ne doivent-elles pas apparaître comme dépréciatives relativement au volume lui-même, mais plutôt comme le pinaillage obligé d'un spécialiste du Bön et du Dzogchen.

En premier lieu, p. 28 n. 24, Fraser présente Lopön Tenzin Namdak comme le fondateur (lit. "le maître fondateur") de l'école du Yungdrung Bön. Ce n'est évidemment pas le cas. Les adeptes du Yungdrung Bön font remonter l'origine de leur tradition à des millénaires avant le Buddha Śākyamuni (*ca.* 5e s. BC). Cette affirmation n'engage évidemment qu'eux-mêmes. En revanche, Lopön Tenzin Namdak est effectivement le fondateur du monastère de Menri en Inde, ainsi que celui de Triten Norbutsé au Népal.

En second lieu, Bahir (p. 97) fait un parallèle intéressant entre les rêves visionnaires du maître Chesheng et le système des *gter ma* qui est dans sa présentation essentiellement limité aux écoles Nyingma et Kagyü. C'est oublier un peu rapidement que 99% de la littérature Bönpo est constituée de *gter ma* (alors que ce n'est ni le cas des Nyingmapas et encore moins celui des Kagyüpas) dont la révélation s'étale entre la fin du 10e et le début du 21e siècle. Certes, c'est un détail de présentation qui n'est probablement guère pertinent dans le contexte de ce livre, mais il aurait été judicieux de citer *inter alia* les travaux de A-M. Blondeau ou de J. Gyatso qui sont des sources incontournables pour le système des *gter ma* ("trésors") et qui, surtout, en donnent une image plus conforme à la réalité. Là où la présentation des *gter ma* s'avère erronée dans l'article de Bahir, c'est lorsque l'auteur les présente comme des textes prophétiques : "These texts are presented as prophecies that were hidden away...". Les textes prophétiques sont véritablement une minorité dans les collections de *gter ma*. Il y a certes des *lung bstan* (prophéties) qui sont associés à certains cycles, mais il y a des révélations entières (les plus fréquentes) dans lesquelles ne figure aucun texte prophétique *per se*, au mieux des *kha byang* ou "index" qui fournissent des éléments de localisation de *gter ma* (avec un éventuel rappel historique des conditions qui ont motivé la cache du "trésor") ou encore le contenu thématique, voire littéralement un "*listing*" des textes inclus dans la collection. Ce type de *listing* est très utile pour repérer les ajouts tardifs qui ne relèvent pas directement du *gter ma* original lui-même. La présentation des *gter ma* comme étant des textes prophétiques cadre mal avec le fait — mentionné par l'auteur malgré la contradiction évidente — que certains de ces "trésors" sont des objets, des substances, etc., pas uniquement des textes. A un niveau doctrinal beaucoup plus subtil, la révélation de *gter ma* "au sein de la conscience" dans la phrase indiquant que ces trésors peuvent être "...revealed to the predestined individual in their consciousness" ne correspond pas à la réalité du phénomène. Il est évident que l'auteur fait référence au système des *dgongs gter* souvent présentés comme des "trésors de l'esprit" dans la littérature secondaire, sous la plume d'auteurs peu au fait de la précision des termes employés dans les textes originaux. En effet, dans le Bouddhisme, la conscience (*rnam shes*) et l'esprit (*sems*) sont conçus comme conditionnés par les passions (*nyon mongs*) et affligés par l'ignorance (*ma rig pa*). Ce n'est bien évidemment au cœur de tels états intérieurs que des *gter ma* peuvent être découverts. Au contraire, ils sont révélés au sein de la Contemplation (*dgongs pa*), en fonction de certaines conditions. Ici, l'auteur aurait pu renvoyer au livre de T. Thondup, *Hidden Teachings of Tibet* pour plus de précisions et pour cerner le sujet de manière

plus avisée. Dans la même section de l'article, l'auteur dit : "The whereabouts of these texts are oftentimes delivered to the recipient in a dream or in a pre-existent text." Si un certain nombre de *gter ma* s'appuient en effet sur un texte antérieur, souvent appelé *kha byang* ou encore *yang byang* et autres variantes composées avec *byang*, ce n'est pas le cas de manière systématique. Par ailleurs, les transmissions par le biais des rêves ne sont pas considérées comme des *gter ma* — même si certaines en adoptent la ponctuation avec les *gter shad* — mais comme des *mnal chos*, c'est-à-dire des "enseignements" (*chos*) reçus en "rêve" (*mnal*). Les enseignements de ce type ne sont pas — comme le sont les *gter ma* eux-mêmes — nécessairement rattachés à une figure du 8e siècle (Padmasambhava, Vimalamitra, Vairocana, Dran pa nam mkha', etc.) et ne forment pas forcément un cycle cohérent s'appuyant éventuellement sur un *kha byang*. Le rattachement des *gter ma* par l'auteur à "un" *ādhibuddha* est par ailleurs un raccourci malvenu puisque l'*ādhibuddha* (il n'y en a qu'un, à savoir le Buddha primordial Samantabhadra) n'a jamais rien caché comme *gter ma* selon les conceptions trans-historiques des écoles s'appuyant sur le système de la littérature révélée. De ce fait, la mise en parallèle des rêves du maître Chesheng avec le système des *gter ma* est une intuition fondée sur une relative méconnaissance de la nature de la littérature tibétaine révélée.

Enfin, pour conclure ces remarques, Bianchi (p. 111) présente le *curriculum* en usage à Larung Gar comme s'appuyant essentiellement sur le Dzogchen, et plus précisément sur le système des *sNying thig*. La note 8 qui accompagne la fin de ce paragraphe, en référence au composé *sNying thig*, semble limiter ce dernier au seul *Klong chen snying thig*. C'est une erreur. Il y a toutes sortes de *sNying thig* qui ne sont pas rattachés au *Klong chen snying thig*, lequel date du 18e siècle, alors que le premier corpus explicitement qualifié de *snying thig* est à n'en pas douter le *Bi ma snying thig* (*ca.* fin du 10e siècle) qui n'a aucun lien direct avec le *Klong chen snying thig*.

J'insiste ici encore sur le fait que ces remarques n'enlèvent strictement rien à la qualité de ce volume ni au travail minutieux de l'éditrice de ce collectif. L'ouvrage lui-même foisonne d'informations souvent inédites qui méritent l'attention des chercheurs.

❖